

**OLLENDORFF'S**  
**GERMAN GRAMMAR**  
**PART SECOND**



Campbell 1. f. 26

J. F. Campbell

Frankfort. Sept 27<sup>th</sup>

1853.



Carl Zügel's Verlag in Frankfurt a. M.  
empfehl't hiermit die bei ihm erschienenen

**Lehrbücher nach**  
**H. G. Ollendorff's**  
**Neuer Methode,**  
in sechs Monaten  
eine Sprache lesen, schreiben und sprechen zu lernen.

---

Die Ollendorff'sche Unterrichts-Methode feiert in ihrer sich fortwährend steigenden Ausbreitung, so wie in ihrer Anwendung auf nun fast alle Sprachen europäischer Civilisation einen Triumph, dem bis daher keine ähnliche Anerkennung zur Seite steht. — Sie liefert den thatsächlichsten Beweis ihrer Tüchtigkeit in einer Weise, wie noch keine ihres Gleichen, denn sie verbreitete ihre Lehrbücher, in der kurzen Zeit seit ihrem ersten Auftreten, bereits über alle Nationen, die befähigt sind, ein competentes Urtheil darüber abzugeben, und hilft ihnen, sich gegenseitig ihre Sprachen und ihre Literatur anzueignen. Ueberall, in Deutschland wie in England, in Frankreich wie in Italien, in Amerika, in Spanien und in Rußland läßt man ihr die Gerechtigkeit widerfahren, daß sie am leichtesten und schnellsten zum Ziele führt; denn in dem Lehrbuche der einen Sprache findet auch der Schüler bei ihrer Erlernung zugleich schon wieder den Schlüssel zu einer anderen.

Auch die sich so rasch aufeinander folgenden neuen Auflagen der verschiedenen Lehrbücher geben nicht minder das vollgültigste Zeugniß ihrer Brauchbarkeit. Von der französischen Grammatik erschien so eben schon die **Sechste Auflage**; von der englischen die **Vierte** und von der italienischen die **Zweite Auflage**. Der Gesamt-Cyclus derselben wurde ferner durch eine Grammatica della lingua tedesca so wie durch eine neue holländische Grammatik und einen Cours de Littérature Française, adapté à la Méthode d'Ollendorff vermehrt, welchen demnächst die Grammatica francese für Italiener und eine russische Grammatik für Deutsche folgen werden, und je mehr sich in dieser Weise die neue Methode allen Bedürfnissen des Unterrichts anpaßt, je mehr müssen die nach einem übereinstimmen-

den System bearbeiteten Lehrbücher derselben die Erlernung der verschiedenen Sprachen erleichtern, da keine neuen Theorien mehr dabei zu überwinden sind, sondern stets der dem Schüler einmal bekannt gewordene Lehrgang zu befolgen ist. Diese Uebereinstimmung des Unterrichts ist in öffentlichen Schulen und Lehranstalten vom entschiedensten Nutzen; sie erspart dem Lehrer wie dem Schüler Zeit und Mühe und verbürgt, wie es die Erfahrung überall bewiesen hat, den sichersten Erfolg.

Folgende Lehrbücher sind nach dieser Methode bis jetzt erschienen:

### a) Lehrbücher für Deutsche,

um Französisch, Italienisch, Englisch, Holländisch und Spanisch zu lernen.

**Neue und praktische Methode** in kürzester Zeit das **Französische** richtig aussprechen und lesen zu lernen. Nebst einer faßlichen Erklärung der grammatischen Hauptregeln etc. Als Einleitung in die Ollendorff'sche Methode. Für Elementarschulen bearbeitet von J. M. Versaint. 8°. Cartonirt 36 fr. od. 10 Sgr.

Um die Einführung dieses höchst praktischen Elementarbuchs für den ersten Unterricht in Schulen zu erleichtern, erlasse ich dasselbe bei Bestellung von 25 Exemplaren auf einmal zu 27 fr. od. 7½ Sgr. Ladenpreis.

**Ollendorff, S. G.**, Neue Methode zur Erlernung der **französischen Sprache** für den deutschen Schul- und Privatunterricht eingerichtet von P. Gands. **Sechste** vermehrte und verbesserte Aufl. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonirt. fl. 1. 48 fr. oder 1 Thlr.

— — Schlüssel zu dieser Methode, die Uebersetzung der darin vorkomm. Aufgaben enthaltend, v. P. Gands. 8°. Cart. 36 fr. od. 10 Sgr.

— — derselben Methode **zweiter oder theoretisch-praktischer Cursus**; für höhere Classen bearbeitet von J. M. Versaint. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonirt. fl. 1. 30 fr. oder 26 Sgr.

— — Schlüssel zu diesem **zweiten Cursus** und den darin vorkommenden Aufgaben in 8°. Cartonirt. 36 fr. oder 10 Sgr.

— — **Cours de Littérature Française adapté à la Méthode d'Ollendorff**; eine stufenweise geordnete Auswahl von Meisterstücken französischer Prosa und Poesie des 17., 18. u. 19. Jahrhunderts. Als Lesebuch beim Unterricht in der franz. Sprache, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der franz. Grammatik nach Ollendorff's Methode; für den Schul- und Privat-Gebrauch eingerichtet von Versaint. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonirt. fl. 1. 30 fr. od. 26 Sgr.

— — Neue Methode zur Erlernung der **italienischen Sprache** für den deutschen Schul- und Privatunterricht eingerichtet von Prof. Frühauß. **Zweite** vermehrte u. verbesserte Aufl. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonirt. fl. 2. 12 fr. od. Thlr. 1. 7½ Sgr.

- Ollendorff.** Schlüssel zu dieser Methode. 8°. Cart. 54 kr. od. 15 Sgr.
- — **Italienisches Lesebuch**; eine Auswahl von Lesebüchern aus den besten älteren und neueren Werken ital. Klassiker, mit Rücksicht auf die Ollendorff'sche Methode bearbeitet und mit grammatischen Noten versehen von Professor Fröhlich. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonnirt. fl. 1. 21 kr. oder 22½ Sgr.
- — Neue Methode. Anleitung zur Erlernung der **englischen Sprache** für den deutschen Schul- und Privatunterricht, verfaßt von P. Gands. **Vierte** verbesserte Aufl. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonnirt. fl. 2. 24 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 10 Sgr.
- — Schlüssel zu dieser Methode. 8°. Cart. fl. 1. 12 kr. od. 20 Sgr.
- — Neue Methode zur Erlernung der **spanischen Sprache** für den deutschen Schul- und Privatunterricht eingerichtet und bearbeitet von Fr. Funck. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonnirt. fl. 3. 18 kr. od. Rthlr. 1. 27 Sgr.
- — Schlüssel zu dieser Methode. 8°. Cart. fl. 1. 12 kr. od. 20 Sgr.
- — **El nuevo lector español.** Neues spanisches Lesebuch, enthaltend ausgewählte Stücke aus spanischen Musterschriftstellern. Zusammengestellt von Mariano Velasquez de la Cadena, mit Rücksicht auf die Ollendorff'sche Methode bearbeitet und mit einem spanischen Wörterbuch versehen von Fr. Funck. 8°. Dauerhaft cartonnirt. fl. 2. 12 kr. oder Thlr. 1. 7½ Sgr.
- — Neue Methode zur Erlernung der **holländischen Sprache.** Nach einem neuen und vollständigeren Plane und mit Berücksichtigung des Blämischen für den Schul- und Privatunterricht von J. Gams. 8°. Cartonnirt. fl. 1. 48 kr. od. Thlr. 1.
- — Schlüssel zu dieser Methode. 8°. Cart. 36 kr. od. 10 Sgr.

## b) Lehrbücher für Engländer,

um Deutsch, Französisch und Italienisch zu lernen.

- Ollendorff.** — *New Method of learning the German language* in six months. Part 1 and 2. To which is added: "The German declensions on established rules etc." **First part** fl. 2. 24 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 10 Sgr. **Second part** with the Declensions. fl. 2. 24 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 10 Sgr.
- — **A Key to the Exercises in this Method of learning the German language,** by P. Gands. in-8. eleg. bound in cloth. Price fl. 1. 36 kr. oder 27 Sgr.
- — **The German Declensions on established Rules,** from the French of Ollendorff's "La déclinaison allemande déterminée" adapted to the use of English by P. Gands. in-8. In boards 36 kr. od. 10 Sgr.
- Ollendorff.** — *New Method of learning the French language* for the use of schools and private teachers. in-8. Bound in cloth fl. 2. 42 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 15 Sgr.

- Ollendorff.** — *A Key to the Exercises* in this Method of learning the **French language.** in-8. In cloth fl. 1. 36 kr. oder 27 Sgr.
- — *A Complete Treatise on the Gender of French Substantives.* in-8. In boards 36 kr. oder 10 Sgr.
- — *New Method of learning the Italian language* for the use of schools and private teachers. in-8. Bound in cloth fl. 2. 42 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 15 Sgr.
- — *A Key to the Exercises in this Method of learning the Italian language.* in-8. In cloth fl. 1. 36 kr. oder 27 Sgr.

### c) Lehrbücher für Franzosen, um Deutsch, Englisch und Italienisch zu lernen.

- Ollendorff.** — *Nouvelle Méthode pour apprendre la langue allemande en six mois.* fl. 2. 24 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 10 Sgr.
- — *la même, seconde partie, augmentée d'un traité complet des Déclinaisons, d'un appendice des Verbes irréguliers et d'un Dictionnaire des Verbes composés etc.* in-8. élégamment relié fl. 2. 24 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 10 Sgr.
- — *Clef de cette Méthode ou corrigé des thèmes.* in-8. élégamment relié. fl. 1. 36 kr. oder 27 Sgr.
- — *Traité complet des Déclinaisons allemandes déterminées avec un appendice des Verbes irréguliers et d'un Dictionnaire des Verbes composés etc.* in-8. broché. fl. 1. 12 kr. od. 20 Sgr.
- — *Nouvelle Méthode pour apprendre la langue anglaise, Nouvelle édition considérablement augmentée. Ouvrage complet.* in-8. cartonnée. fl. 1. 48 kr. oder Rthlr. 1.
- — *Clef de cette Méthode ou corrigé des thèmes.* in 8<sup>o</sup>. cart. 42 kr. oder 12½ Sgr.
- — *Nouvelle Méthode pour apprendre la langue italienne.* ouvrage arrangée à l'usage de tous les établissements d'instruction publics et particuliers par G. Simler. in-8. élégamment relié. fl. 2. 42 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 15 Sgr.
- — *Clef de cette Méthode ou corrigé des thèmes.* in-8. élégamment relié. fl. 1. 36 kr. oder 27 Sgr.

### d) Lehrbücher für Italiener, um Deutsch und Französisch zu lernen.

- Ollendorff.** — *Nuovo Metodo di H. G. Ollendorff, per imparare a leggere, scrivere e parlare una lingua in Sei Mesi; ammastramento per imparare la lingua tedesca, si ad uso privato che ad instruzione in Scuole italiane pubbliche, accomodato e provveduto d'una aggiunta sistematica dal Professore Gius. Frühauf.* 8<sup>o</sup>. Dauerhaft cartonnirt. fl. 2. 6 kr. oder Rthlr. 1. 5 Sgr.
- — *Chiave del Metodo di Ollendorff o traduzione corretta dei temi della Gramatica applicata all' tedesca.* in-8. cart. 54 kr. od. 15 Sgr.

**OLLENDORFF'S**  
**GERMAN GRAMMAR.**

---

**PART SECOND.**



# **A NEW METHOD**

OF LEARNING

**TO READ, WRITE, AND SPEAK**

**THE GERMAN LANGUAGE**

**IN SIX MONTHS.**

---

BY

**H. G. Ollendorff,**

PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE.



PART SECOND.

---

**FRANKFORT o. M.**

PRINTED FOR CHARLES JUGEL, PUBLISHER.

1852.

WILHELM WILHELM

IN DER UNIVERSITÄT

DEUTSCHLAND

1870

1870



---

Printed by Aug. OSTERRIETH,  
Frankfort o. M.

---

IN DER UNIVERSITÄT

DEUTSCHLAND

## INTRODUCTION.

---

SOME parts of the grammar, such as the parts of speech, the formation and derivation of words, we have, in the first part of our Method, for the sake of the systematically arranged questions and answers, often been prevented from treating theoretically; others, such as the verbs with their different conjugations and the cases which they govern, the prepositions, the adverbs, the conjunctions, the interjections, and the grammatical figures, have therein, for the same reason, only been touched upon. But as it is indispensable for the learner to be thoroughly acquainted with all these parts, we have, in this volume, treated them in a most complete manner: for, whilst he continues the study of the lessons and of the exercises, he must, until he is completely master of the mechanism of the German language, exercise himself in conjugating by degrees: 1. the auxiliary verbs, 2. the active verbs, 3. the passive verbs, 4. the neuter verbs, 5. the reflective verbs, 6. the impersonal verbs, 7. the compound verbs, separable and inseparable, 8. the verbs that take the verb *seyn*, *to be*.

for auxiliary, and 9. all the irregular verbs. Once master of the mechanism of conjugations, the learner need no longer conjugate each particular tense, but only the four principal tenses, viz. the present, the imperfect, the perfect, or the pluperfect, and one of the futures. He may then commence to read some of the German authors, still, however, without discontinuing the study of the Method.

It will be necessary for the learner to bear in mind that the addition or omission of the smallest particle entirely alters the signification of the verb. As he reads he will not only have to seek the signification of the simple verb in the list of the irregular verbs, but also that of the compound verb in the dictionary. When he meets with a new word, he must proceed as follows: find out the word in the dictionary, and then adapt the sense to the other words of the sentence. If the word is not found in the dictionary, he must conclude that it is one of the irregular verbs, and consequently it must be sought for in the alphabetical table of the irregular verbs. If the word be a compound verb, as *versprache*, for instance, the learner must not look for it in the letter, *v*, but *ſ* in the irregular verbs: he will find *sprache*, imperfect of the subjunctive of the verb *sprechen*, *to speak*; to this infinitive he must add the particle *ver-* which will give *versprechen*, the meaning of which will be found in the dictionary. When the meaning of such words as: *ſing an*, *goß voll*, *warf um*, is wanted, the separable particles of which are often placed at the end

of the sentence, they must not be sought for either in the letters a, v, u, of the table of the irregular verbs, but amongst the letters f, g, w. The learner will find there, that *fing*, *goß*, *warf*, are the imperfects of the verbs: *fangen*, *gießen*, *werfen*, to which he will add the particles: *an*, *voll*, *um*, which will give: *anfängen*, *vollgießen*, *umwerfen*, of which the signification will be found in the dictionary.

The learner should further prescribe to himself a daily task to learn by heart of all the adverbs, prepositions, and the numerous examples by which they are illustrated, all the conjunctions and their examples, the interjections, the examples on punctuation and on the grammatical figures, as well as the supplementary dialogues contained in this volume.

Those persons who have not sufficiently studied the grammar of their native tongue will find a few simple explanations on general grammar. We would therefore advise them always to consult this volume, either to learn the reason of the formation of a word or of a part of speech, or for the conjugation of the verbs, and to learn by heart the prepositions and other words, the knowledge of which is indispensable to the study of a language, or to their progress in reading the selections in "the Literary Companion or Guide to German Literature, by P. Gands, published by C. Jügel."

We have adopted the alphabetical order in the list of words belonging to the different parts of speech, in order to facilitate the learner's progress. Lastly, the

Index has been arranged in such a manner as also to simplify his researches.

To prove indisputably the excellence and superiority of our system, we give in this volume, as exercises to be rendered into German, extracts which we have ourselves translated from some of our most celebrated authors, such as Schiller, Gessner, Pfeffel &c. (see pages 238, 240, 262, 263 &c.), and which our pupils, when they regularly study as far as these extracts, and follow our advice, retranslate, if not always exactly in the words of those great authors, at least in language as correct, and very often as elegant. This fact, in order to overcome any doubt that might still exist on the superiority of our system above any other hitherto practised for the study of languages, we thought advisable to mention, and of the correctness of which the pupils may easily convince themselves by comparing their translations with the compositions of the original authors.

We are confident that when the pupil has made himself thoroughly acquainted with our two volumes, and has regularly followed our often-repeated advice with respect to declensions, he will have as good a theoretical knowledge of the German language as any well-educated German could desire to possess.

## HUNDRED AND SIXTH LESSON.—Hundert und sechste Lektion.

### RECAPITULATION OF THE DIFFERENT PARTS OF SPEECH.

THERE are in German nine parts of speech, of which five are variable, and four invariable.

*The variable are:*

1. The article, das Geschlechts-  
wort.
2. The noun or substantive, das  
Hauptwort.
3. *a)* The adjective properly so  
called, das Bei- oder Eigen-  
schaftswort; *b)* the participle,  
das Mittelwort; *c)* the num-  
eral adjective, das Zahl-  
wort.
4. The pronoun, das Fürwort.
5. The verb, das Zeitwort.

*The invariable are:*

6. The adverb, das Nebenwort.
7. The preposition, das Vor- oder  
Verhältnißwort.
8. The conjunction, das Binde-  
wort.
9. The interjection, das Empfin-  
dungswort.

#### 1. THE ARTICLE, das Geschlechtswort.

The article is generally placed before the noun to show its gender. A noun is either masculine (männlich), feminine (weiblich), or neuter (sächlich), according to the article that can stand before it. Ex. der Mann, the man; die Frau, the woman; das Kind, the child.

There are two articles, the definite (der bestimmte Artikel): der, die, das, plur. die; and the indefinite (der unbestimmte Artikel): ein, eine, ein. (See Declension of the first, Lessons IV. and LXXX., and of the second, Lessons XX. and LXXX.) Ex. der Bruder, the brother; die Schwester, the sister; das Buch, the book; plur. die Brüder, the brothers; die Schwestern, the sisters; die Bücher,

the books; ein Geist, a spirit; eine Wahrheit, a truth; ein Licht, a light.

## 2. THE NOUN OR SUBSTANTIVE, das Hauptwort.

The noun or substantive represents a being or a thing, either real or imaginary. The Germans begin all substantives with a capital letter; *e. g.* Baum, tree; Feder, pen; Glück, happiness.

A noun is either common or proper. It is common, when it serves to name beings or things of the same kind, as: Mann, man; Frau, woman; Dorf, village; Fisch, fish. It is proper, when it represents only one being or thing, as: Karl, Charles; London, London <sup>1</sup>.

There are in German three genders, viz. the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

A noun stands in the singular (in der Einheit) when it represents one being or thing only: Mann, man; Frau, woman; Kind, child; Buch, book. It is in the plural (Mehr- oder Vielheit) when it represents several beings or things: Männer, men; Frauen, women; Kinder, children; Bücher, books.

### THE FORMATION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

German substantives are divided into primitive and derivative substantives. They are primitive, when they derive from no other word, as:

der Mann, the man;	das Haus, the house;
der Freund, the friend;	das Schaf, the sheep.

They are derivative, when they draw their origin from another word, as:

der Künstler, the artist;	from die Kunst, the art;
die Freundschaft, the friendship,	„ der Freund, the friend.

Derivative substantives are formed:

<sup>1</sup> Nouns may be divided also into collective or plural nouns, and abstract nouns. Collective or plural nouns are those which are the result of several homogenous parts, or which designate the matter of a thing, as: Milch, milk; Wasser, water; Sand, sand; Gold, gold; Holz, wood; Stein, stone. Abstract nouns are those which express what we can neither see, nor hear, nor touch, as: Tugend, virtue; Laster, vice; Tapferkeit, valour.

1. From an infinitive, an adjective, or any other word taken substantively. All the words of this class are neuter. Ex.

das Gehen, the going,	from gehen, to go;
das Essen, the eating,	„ essen, to eat;
das Schöne, the beautiful,	„ schön, beautiful;
das Aber, the but,	„ aber, but;
das Nein, the no,	„ nein, no.

2. From an infinitive of which the termination en is suppressed. In the formation of such substantives the radical syllable is often changed. Ex.

der Schlag, the blow,	from schlagen, to beat;
die Schrift, the writing,	„ schreiben, to write;
die Gabe, the gift,	„ geben, to give;
der Satz, the sentence, proposition,	„ setzen, to set, place.

3. From an adjective of which the radical vowel is softened, and to which the letter e is joined. All substantives thus formed are feminine. Ex.

die Stärke, strength,	from stark, strong;
die Größe, grandeur,	„ groß, great;
die Güte, goodness,	„ gut, good;
die Tiefe, depth,	„ tief, deep.

4. From a primitive word and one of the terminations, el, en, er, then or sein, icht, ling, ei, in, heit, feit, schaft, ung, niß, sal and sel, thum.

Substantives terminating in el. — They express the thing with which the action expressed by the verb is performed. Most of these substantives are masculine.

(See the English version, by P. Gands, of my treatise „*La déclinaison allemande déterminée*” published with this volume.) Ex.

der Hebel, the lever,	from heben, to lift;
der Riegel, the bolt,	„ riegeln, to bolt;
der Schlüssel, the key,	„ schließen, to shut;
der Tadel, the blame,	„ tadeln, to blame.

*Obs.* In fractional numbers *tel* is a contraction of *der Theil*, the part. Ex. *das Viertel* or *Viertheil*, the fourth part. The syllable *el* is of foreign origin in words derived from Latin or Greek. Ex.

der Engel, the angel,	from the Greek ἄγγελος, in Latin <i>angelus</i> ;
der Apostel, the apostle,	„ the Greek ἀπόστολος, in Latin <i>apostolus</i> .

Substantives in en. — This termination only adds a kind of euphony to the primitive word. They are almost all masculine, except the diminutives in *chen*, the infinitives taken substantively, and a few others. Ex.

der Graben, the ditch;	der Faden, the thread;
der Laden, the shop;	der Boden, the bottom, the soil.

Substantives in er. — This is the characteristic termination of masculine nouns, and designates the person who makes or is busy about the thing expressed by the primitive substantive or verb. It answers to the same termination in English. In joining it to the name of a town or country it designates the man born in it, and corresponds with the English syllables *man*, *ian*, or *an*; and the French terminations *eur*, *ier*, *ais*, *ois*. (See *Obs. A. Lesson LXVIII.*) Ex.

der Gärtner, the gardener,	from der Garten, the garden;
der Sattler, the saddler,	„ der Sattel, the saddle;
der Bäcker, the baker,	„ backen, to bake;
der Jäger, the hunter,	„ jagen, to hunt;
der Esser, the eater,	„ essen, to eat;
der Schäfer, the shepherd,	„ das Schaf, the sheep;
der Engländer, the Englishman,	„ England, England;
der Holländer, the Dutchman,	„ Holland, Holland;
der Italiener, the Italian,	„ Italien, Italy;
der Pariser, the Parisian,	„ Paris, Paris;
der Europäer, the European,	„ Europa, Europe.

*Obs.* In some substantives this termination is a contraction of another word, and in others it is of a primitive or foreign origin: *e. g.*

der Junfer, the country squire,	from junger Herr, young gentleman;
die Jungfer, the maid,	„ junge Frau, young woman;
der Adler, the eagle, for Adelaar,	„ der Adel, nobility, and der Aar, the bird of prey;
die Ader, the vein,	a primitive word;
das Wasser, the water,	a primitive word;

der Körper, the body,	from the Latin <i>corpus</i> ;
der Priester, the priest,	„ „ „ <i>presbyter</i> ;
das Fenster, the window,	„ „ „ <i>fenestra</i> ;
das Fieber, the fever,	„ „ „ <i>febris</i> .

Substantives in *chen* or *lein*. — With these terminations diminutives are formed from German substantives. (See *Rule 2. Lesson LV.*)

Substantives in *icht*. — Ex.

das Dicht, the thicket,	from <i>dick</i> , thick;
das Rehricht, the sweepings,	„ <i>kehren</i> , to sweep.

Substantives in *ling*. — This ending joined to a noun, an adjective, or a verb, forms substantives designating the state, nature, or origin of some one or something, and often answers to the same termination in English. They are all masculine. Ex.

der Flüchtling, the fugitive,	from <i>die Flucht</i> , the flight, escape;
der Fremdling, the stranger,	„ <i>fremd</i> , strange, foreign;
der Hänfling, the linnet,	„ <i>der Hanf</i> , hemp;
der Jüngling, the youth,	„ <i>jung</i> , young;
der Lehrling, the apprentice,	„ <i>lehren</i> , to teach;
der Zwilling, the twin,	„ <i>zwei</i> , two;
der Liebling, the darling,	„ <i>lieb</i> , dear;
der Säugling, the suckling,	„ <i>saugen</i> , to suck.

Substantives in *ei*. — This termination designates the manner of acting, and often answers to the English termination *y* and the French *ie*. Substantives formed from it are all feminine. Ex.

die Fischerei, the fishery,	from <i>der Fischer</i> , the fisher;
die Schmeichelei, flattery,	„ <i>schmeicheln</i> , to flatter;
die Tyrannei, tyranny,	„ <i>der Tyrann</i> , the tyrant;
die Türkei, Turkey,	„ <i>der Türke</i> , the Turk;
die Heuchelei, hypocrisy,	„ <i>heucheln</i> , to play the hypocrite.

*Obs.* This termination of derived substantives is the only one that has the tonic accent.

Substantives in *in*. — This termination joined to a masculine substantive makes it feminine. It often answers to the English termination *ess*. Ex. *der Graf*, the count; *die Gräfin*, the countess. (See *Obs. A. Lesson LXXXI.*)

Substantives in *heit*. — They are formed either from a substantive or an adjective, and are all feminine. The termination *heit* often answers to the French syllable *té*, and the English terminations *dom*, *head*, *hood*, *ness*, *ty*, and, when combined with a substantive, conveys generally an idea of abundance of the thing expressed by the primitive noun. Ex.

die Christenheit, Christendom,	from die Christen, Christians;
die Gottheit, divinity (God-head),	„ Gott, God, derived from gut, good;
die Schönheit, beauty,	„ schön, beautiful;
die Freiheit, liberty (freedom),	„ frei, free;
die Menschheit, humanity,	„ der Mensch, man;
die Weisheit, wisdom,	„ weise, wise;
die Schüchternheit, timidity,	„ schüchtern, timid;
die Kindheit, childhood,	„ das Kind, the child;
die Falschheit, falsehood,	„ falsch, false;
die Nacktheit, nakedness,	„ nackt, naked;
die Schlaubeit, slyness,	„ schlau, sly;
die Taubheit, deafness,	„ taub, deaf.

Substantives in *feit*. — This termination has the same signification as *heit*, is often combined with adjectives terminating in *bar*, *er*, *ig*, *lich*, *sam*, and answers to the English endings *ty*, *ness*, *ance*. The substantives formed from it are all feminine. Ex.

die Ehrlichkeit, honesty,	from ehrlich, honest;
die Heiterkeit, serenity,	„ heiter, serene;
die Fruchtbarkeit, fertility,	„ fruchtbar, fertile;
die Dankbarkeit, thankfulness,	„ dankbar, thankful;
die Ewigkeit, eternity,	„ ewig, eternal;
die Gütigkeit, kindness,	„ gütig, kind;
die Höflichkeit, politeness,	„ höflich, polite;
die Bitterkeit, bitterness,	„ bitter, bitter;
die Langsamkeit, slowness,	„ langsam, slow;
die Gefälligkeit, complaisance,	„ gefällig, complaisant;
die Wachsamkeit, vigilance,	„ wachsam, vigilant.

*Obs.* In combining the termination *feit* with adjectives of another termination than those mentioned, it must be preceded by the syllable *ig*, so that *ig* always precedes the termination *feit* in substantives formed from adjectives terminating in *haft* and *loß*. Ex.

die Geschwindigkeit, swiftness,	from	geschwind, swift;
die Frömmigkeit, piety,	„	fromm, pious;
die Herzhaftigkeit, courageous- ness,	„	herzhaft, courageous;
die Standhaftigkeit, firmness,	„	standhaft, firm;
die Gottlosigkeit, impiety,	„	gottlos, impious.

Substantives in *schaft*. — This termination is very likely derived from *schaffen*, to create. It conveys a collective idea of the primitive noun, and often answers to the English terminations, *ship, scape, ty, head, hood*. Nouns ending in *schaft* are feminine. Ex.

die Freundschaft, friendship,	from	der Freund, the friend;
die Brüderschaft, brotherhood,	„	der Bruder, the brother;
die Feindschaft, enmity,	„	der Feind, the enemy;
die Jungferschaft, maidenhood,	„	die Jungfer, the virgin, the maiden;
die Bürgerschaft, burghership,	„	der Bürger, the burgher;
die Nachbarschaft, the neigh- bourhood,	„	der Nachbar, the neighbour;
die Grafschaft, the county,	„	der Graf, the count;
die Landschaft, the landscape.	„	das Land, the land.

*Obs.* By adding the syllable *er* to a substantive terminating in *schaft*, another substantive, designating a man of the character expressed by the primitive, is formed. Ex.

der Gesellschafter, the compa- nion,	from	die Gesellschaft, society;
der Botschafter, the messen- ger,	„	die Botschaft, the message.

Substantives in *ung*. — Most of them are formed from verbs, of which they express the action. Combined with a noun, this termination designates a place where the thing expressed by the primitive is found in quantity; combined with an adjective, it represents a thing or state expressed by the adjective. Ex.

die Hoffnung, hope,	from	hoffen, to hope;
die Bewunderung, admiration,	„	bewundern, to admire;
die Achtung, esteem,	„	achten, to esteem;
die Drohung, threat,	„	drohen, to threat;
die Krönung, the coronation,	„	krönen, to crown;
die Waldung, the woodland,	„	der Wald, the wood;

die Holzung, a great space covered with wood,	from das Holz, the wood;
die Festung, the fortress,	„ fest, strong, fortified;
die Quittung, the receipt,	„ quitt, free, quit;
die Theuerung, dearness, scarcity.	„ theuer, dear.

*Obs.* All substantives of this termination are feminine, except: der Hornung, the month of February, and der Sprung, the jump, derived from springen, to spring, to jump (which belongs to the formation of substantives from verbs, page 3).

Substantives in niß. — Most of them are neuter, and have e in the plural like the feminine substantives of the same termination, which often answers to the English termination *ness*. Ex.

das Gedächtniß, memory,	from gedacht, thought;
das Bildniß, the effigy,	„ das Bild, the image;
das Hinderniß, the obstacle,	„ hindern, to hinder;
die Wildniß, the wilderness,	„ wild, wild;
die Finsterniß, the darkness,	„ finster, dark.

Substantives in sal or sel. — Sel is only a modification of sal. Both these terminations derive their origin from the ancient noun Sahl, meaning assemblage. They are formed from adjectives and verbs, and are all neuter. Ex.

das Trübsal, affliction,	from trüb, sad, afflicted;
das Labfal, the refreshment,	„ laben, to refresh;
das Räthsfel, the enigma,	„ rathen, to guess.

Substantives in thum. — They are all neuter except the two following, which however follow the declension of neuter nouns: der Reichthum, riches, and der Irrthum, the error. This termination often answers to the English termination *dom*. Ex.

das Alterthum, antiquity,	from das Alter, old age;
das Fürstenthum, the principality,	„ der Fürst, the prince;
das Christenthum, Christianity (Christendom),	„ der Christ, the Christian;
das Heidenthum, paganism,	„ der Heide, the pagan;
das Märtyrthum, martyrdom,	„ der Märtyrer, the martyr;
das Papstthum, popedom,	„ der Papst, the pope.

5. From a substantive preceded by one of the particles: *ant*, *aber*, *after*, *erz*, *ge*, *miß*, *un*, *ur*.

*Ant*, compounded from the preposition *an*, to, near, at, and the letter *t* is only found in the words:

die Antwort, the answer,	from	das Wort, the word;
das Antlitz, the countenance,	„	liß, sight, still used in some northern languages.

*Aber*, means false, too much, and is used only in:

der Aberglauben, superstition,	from	der Glauben, belief;
der Aberwitz, false wit,	„	der Witz, wit.

*After* is not much used, and has the signification of the English word *after*, but means also false. Ex.

die Aferrede, calumny,	from	die Rede, the speech;
der Aferkönig, the pretended king.	„	der König, the king;
das Aferlehen, the under-tenure,	„	das Lehen, the feudal tenure.

*Erz* means excellence, superiority, and answers to the English *arch*. Ex.

der Erzbiſchof, the archbishop,	from	der Biſchof, the bishop;
der Erzherzog, the archduke,	„	der Herzog, the duke;
der Erzengel, the archangel,	„	der Engel, the angel;
der Erzdieb, the arrant thief,	„	der Dieb, the thief.

*Obs*. In its bad signification, this particle is used only in familiar or trivial style.

*Ge*. This particle before a noun means multitude or repetition of what the noun expresses. Many substantives beginning with this particle are formed from verbs. They are almost all neuter.

(See the English version, by P. Gands, of my treatise "*La Déclinaison allemande déterminée*" published with this volume.) Ex.

das Gewölk, clouds,	from	die Wolke, the cloud;
das Gebirge, the chain of mountains,	„	der Berg, the mountain;
das Geſchrei, repeated cries, clamour,	„	der Schrei, the cry;
das Gericht, judgment,	„	richten, to judge;
das Gewiſſen, conscience,	„	wiſſen, to know;

das Gedicht, the poem, from dichten, to invent, to compose;  
 das Gefühl, feeling, sensibility, „ fühlen, to feel.

Miß signifies bad, false, in vain, and answers to the English particles *mis* and *dis*. Ex.

das Mißverständniß, misunderstanding, from das Verständniß, understanding;  
 die Mißhandlung, misdemeanour, „ die Handlung, the action;  
 der Mißmuth, displeasure, „ der Muth, courage;  
 das Mißtrauen, distrust, „ trauen, to trust.

Un, which is a contraction of ohne, without, answers to the Latin *in*, and the English *in* or *un*. Ex.

die Unbeständigkeit, inconstancy, from die Beständigkeit, constancy;  
 das Unglück, unhappiness, „ das Glück, the happiness;  
 der Undank, ingratitude, „ der Dank, gratitude.

Ur means primitive, ancient. Ex.

der Urstoff, primitive matter, from der Stoff, the matter,  
 die Ursache, the cause, the motive, „ die Sache, the thing;  
 der Urgroßvater, the great grandfather, „ der Großvater, the grandfather.

### THE COMPOSITION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

A substantive is compounded, when it consists of two or more words, each of which, taken separately, has a particular signification.

Substantives may be compounded:

1. Of two or more substantives. — The one which expresses the principal idea, is always placed the last, and the others by which it is determined or defined, precede it. The gender of compound substantives is determined by the gender of the word which represents the principal idea, and which is generally the last. Ex.

Der Hausherr, the father of the house, from Haus, house, and Herr, master,  
 Die Sommernacht, the summer-night, „ Sommer, summer, and Nacht, night.

Das Weinglas, the wine-glass, from Wein, wine, and Glas glass.

*Obs. A.* It is essential to place the word representing the principal idea last, and that by which it is determined, before it: for, if transposed, the same words would have quite a different signification. *Ex.*

Der Hauēvater, the father of the house,	from Haus, house, and Vater, father.
Das Vaterhaus, the paternal habitation,	„ Vater, father, and Haus, house.
Der Kirchhof, the churchyard,	„ Kirche, church, and Hof, yard.
Die Hofkirche, the court-church,	„ Hof, court, and Kirche, church.
Der Briefwechsel, the correspondence,	„ Brief, letter, and Wechsel, change.
Der Wechselbrief, the bill of exchange,	„ Wechsel, exchange, and Brief, letter.
Die Hausarbeit, domestic toil,	„ Haus, house, and Arbeit, toil.
Das Arbeitshaus, the workhouse,	„ Arbeit, work, and Haus, house.

2. Of a substantive preceded by an adjective which determines it. *Ex.*

Der Großvater, the grandfather,	from groß, grand, and Vater, father.
Die Bittererde, magnesia,	„ bitter, bitter, and Erde, earth.
Das Neujahr, the new-year,	„ neu, new, and Jahr, year.

3. Of a substantive preceded by a verb. *Ex.*

Der Singvogel, the singing-bird,	from singen, to sing, and Vogel, bird.
Die Schreibfeder, the pen,	„ schreiben, to write, and Feder, feather, quill.
Das Waschbecken, the wash hand-bason,	„ waschen, to wash, and Becken, bason.

4. Of a substantive, and a preposition or an adverb. *Ex.*

Der Vortheil, the advantage,	from vor, before, and Theil, part.
------------------------------	------------------------------------

Die Fürsprache, the intercession, from für, for, and Sprache, language.

Das Gegentheil, the contrary, „ gegen, against, and Theil, part.

Der Vollmond, the full moon, „ voll, full, and Mond, moon.

Der Oberrhein, the Upper-Rhine, „ ober, upper, and Rhein, Rhine.

5. Of all sorts of words. Ex.

Die Feldbaukunst, the art of cultivating the ground, from das Feld, the field, bauen, to cultivate, and Kunst, art.

Die Eigenliebe, self-love. „ eigen, own, and Liebe, love.

Das Selbstgefühl, feeling of one's self, „ selbst, self, and Gefühl, feeling.

Das Dreieck, the triangle, „ drei, three, and Eck, angle.

Der Schadenstroh, the plotter of mischief, „ Schaden, damage, and stroh, joyful.

Der Nimmersatt, the greedy person, the glutton, „ nimmer, never, and satt, satiate.

Das Einmaleins, the multiplication-table, „ ein, one, mal, time, and eins, one (neuter).

*Obs. B.* In the composition of two substantives, the first often takes an *s*, which is even the case with nouns terminating in *e*, *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *ung*, though they are feminine. Ex.

Der Donnerstag, Thursday, from der Donner, the thunder, and der Tag, the day.

Der Neujahrstag, new-year's-day, „ das Neujahr, the new-year, and der Tag, the day.

Der Rechtsgelehrte, the lawyer, „ das Recht, the right, and der Gelehrte, the learned man, scholar.

Die Feuersbrunst, the conflagration, „ das Feuer, the fire, and die Brunst, burning.

Die Liebeserklärung, the declaration of love, „ die Liebe, love, and die Erklärung, the declaration.

Die Gesundheitslehre, the science of health, „ die Gesundheit, health, and die Lehre, the doctrine.

Die Höflichkeitsregel, the rule of politeness, „ die Höflichkeit, politeness, and die Regel, the rule.

Die Freundschaftsbezeigung, the demonstration of friendship, „ die Freundschaft, friendship, and die Bezeigung, the demonstration.

Der Vereinigungspunkt, the centre of union, „ die Vereinigung, the union, and der Punkt, the point.

*Obs. C.* There is no composition as soon as the article belongs to the first word, as in English. Ex.

Des Landes Vater,	the country's father.
Der Mutter Herz,	the mother's heart.
Des Herzens Angst,	the heart's anxiety.

Vor dem Thatenglanz der Heldenzeit  
Schwebt die Wolke der Vergessenheit.

(Matthiſſon.)

The cloud of forgetfulness floats before the splendour of heroic times.

Freundschaft mit den Guten  
Wächset, wie der Abendſchatten,  
Bis des Lebens Sonne ſinkt.

(Herder.)

Friendship with the good, like the shadows of evening, increases, until the sun of life sets.

*Obs. D.* If the composition is too long, or if there is a mixture of foreign and German words, they are divided by a German hyphen (≡) for the sake of perspicuity. Ex.

Der Reichs-General- ſchall,	the field-marshal-general of the empire.
Ober-Italien,	Upper-Italy.
Das Conversations- Lexicon,	the dictionary of conversation.

*Obs. E.* When two or more compounds terminate in the same component word, this is joined only to the last, and a hyphen is placed after the others. (See *Note 3, Lesson LXXI.*) Ex.

Der Ein- und Ausgang,	the entrance and exit
Der Schreib-, Zeichen- und Musiklehrer,	the master of writing, drawing, and music.

*Obs. F.* When the signification of the word is more considered than its grammatical nature, the gender is deviated from. Ex.

Wie befindet ſich Ihre Fräulein Schwester?  
How is your sister?

Sie befindet ſich wohl. She is well.

Er liebt ſein Weib nicht, weil ſie nicht haushälterisch iſt.  
He does not love his wife, because she is not economical.

In einem Thal bei armen Hirten	In a vale of poor shepherds
Erschien mit jedem jungen Jahr,	Every spring there appeared,
Sobald die ersten Lerchen schwir-	As soon as the first larks chirped,
ten,	
Ein Mädchen schön und wunder-	A maiden beautiful and marvel-
bar.	lous.

Sie war nicht in dem Thal ge-	She was not born in the valley,
boren,	
Man wußte nicht, woher sie kam;	No one knew whence she came;
Doch schnell war ihre Spur ver-	But no sooner had the maiden
loren,	taken leave,
Sobald das Mädchen Abschied	Than no trace of her was left.
nahm.	

(Schiller.)

Here the personal and possessive pronouns: *sie*, *she*; *ihr*, *her*, do not agree with the grammatical gender of *Fräulein*, *Weib*, *Mädchen*, which are neuter.

*Obs. G.* In some instances, the singular number is used in German collectively in reference to more than one noun, where the English are particular in employing the plural. Ex.

Uebersetzen Sie die erste und zweite	Translate the first and second
Erzählung.	<i>tales.</i>
Die grüne, rothe und blaue Farbe.	The green, red and blue <i>colours.</i>
Die deutsche und englische Spra-	The German and English <i>lan-</i>
che.	<i>guages.</i>

## A T A B L E

OF

THE PRINCIPAL PROPER NAMES OF MEN AND WOMEN,  
WHICH ARE SPELT DIFFERENTLY IN THE TWO  
LANGUAGES.

*Preliminary Observation.* — In German, as in English, Greek and Latin proper names do not generally change

their primitive terminations; but those that end in *us* and *ius*, in German either keep their primitive endings or suppress them. Ex. *Pycurgus* or *Pycurg*, *Polybius* or *Polyb*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Aaron, Aron.   | Bridget, Briget, or Brigit (Bidly),<br>Brigitta.       |
| Adolphus, Adolf.   | Caroline, Karoline.                                    |
| Agatha, Agathe.  | Cassandra (Cass), Cassandra.                           |
| Agnes, Agnese.   | Catherine, Katherine (Kitty),<br>Katherine.            |
| Alaric, Alarich.   | Cecily (Cis, Sis), Cäcilie.                            |
| Alban, Albanus.  | Charles, Charley, Karl.                                |
| Alexander (Sander, Sandy,<br>Sanny, Scander), Alexander. | Charlotte, Charlot, Lotte, Char-<br>lotte.             |
| Alfred, Alfried.   | Christian (Chris), Christian, Chri-<br>stel.           |
| Alice (Assy), Alexia, Else, Ilse,<br>Adelheid.           | Christina, Christine, Linchen, Line.                   |
| Alison, Alce, Elisabethchen, Els-<br>chen.               | Christopher, Christoph.                                |
| Allen, Alan.   | Chrysostom (Chrys), Chrysosto-<br>mus.                 |
| Alphonsus, Alphonso, Alfons.                             | Clare, Klara.  |
| Ambrose (Nam), Ambrosius.                                | Clement (Clem), Clemens.                               |
| Anaraut, Ehrenfried, Ehrenreich.                         | Clementina, Clementine.                                |
| Andrew, Andreas.   | Conrade, Conrad, Rourad, Kunz,<br>Kurt.                |
| Ann, Anne, Anna, Hanna.                                  | Constance (Conny), Constantia.                         |
| Anthony (Tony), Anton.                                   | Constantine, Constantin.                               |
| Arabella (Bell), Arabelle.                               | Cyril, Cyrillus.                                       |
| Aubrey, Alberich.  |  |
| Augustus, August.  |  |
| Augustin, }<br>Austin, } Augustin.<br>Austen, }          |  |
|  | Daniel (Dan), Daniel.                                  |
| Baldwin, Balduin.  | David (Davy), David.                                   |
| Baptist, Baptista.                                       | Deborah (Deb, Debby), Debora.                          |
| Barbara, Barbara, Bärbel.                                | Denis, Dionys, Dionysius, Dio-<br>nysius, Dionys.      |
| Barnaby, Barnabas.                                       | Dennis, Denys, Dionysia.                               |
| Bartholomew (Bat), Bartholo-<br>mäus.                    | Derrick, Derick, Dieterich, Diet-<br>rich, Theodorich. |
| Basil, Basilius.   | Diana (Dy), Diana.                                     |
| Beatrice, Beatrix.                                       | Dominick, Dominic, Dominicus.                          |
| Benjamin (Ben), Benjamin.                                | Dorothy, Dorothea (Doll, Dolly),<br>Dorothea.          |
| Benedict, Bennet, Benedict.                              | Dunly, Anton.  |
| Bernard, Bernhard.                                       |  |
| Blanch, Blanca.  |  |
| Blase, Blasius.  |  |
| Boniface, Bonifacius.                                    | Ead, Eed, Uda, Ida.                                    |

- Edward (Ned, Neddy, Ted, Teddy), Eduard.  
 Eleanor, Nel, Eleonore, Leonore.  
 Elisa, Eliza, Elisa.  
 Elisabeth, Elizabeth, (Bess, Bet, Betsey, Betty), Elisabeth.  
 Ellen, see Helen.  
 Emery, Americh.  
 Emmerick, Emmerich.  
 Enee, Eneas, Aeneas.  
 Ernest, Ernst.  
 Esaias, Esay, Jesaias.  
 Ethelbert, Adalbert.  
 Eugene, Eugen, Eugenius.  
 Eustace, Eustachius.  
 Evan, Johann.  
 Eve, Eva.  
 Everard, Eberhard, Ebert.
- Fanny, Fränzchen.  
 Felicity, Felicitas.  
 Ferdinando, Ferdinand.  
 Florence, Florentius, Florenz, fem. Florentia.  
 Frances, Francisca.  
 Frank, Franz, Fränzchen.  
 Frederick, Friedrich, Fritz.
- Geoffrey, Geffry, Gef, Geff (Jef), Gottfried.  
 George, Georgy, Georg.  
 Gerard, Gerhard.  
 German, Germanus.  
 Gervas, Gervasius.  
 Gilbert (Gib, Gil), Guilbert, Gilbert.  
 Giles, Aegidius, Julius.  
 Gillian, Gilian, Juliane.  
 Gillet, Juliette, Aegidia.  
 Godard, Gotthard.  
 Godfrey, Geff, Gottfried.  
 Grace, Gratia.  
 Gregory, Gregorius.  
 Griffith, Griff, Grifit, Rufin.  
 Griselda, Grissel, Grishild, Grishild.  
 Guy, Gui, Guido.
- Hal, Heinz.  
 Hannah, Hanna, Anna.  
 Harold, Herold.  
 Helen, Hellen, Helena (Nell), Selena.  
 Henrietta, Harriet, Henriette.  
 Henry, Harry (Hall, Hally), Heinrich, Henrich.  
 Hesiod, Hesiodus.  
 Hierom, Jerome, Hieronymus.  
 Hilary, Hilarius, Hilarich.  
 Horace, Horatio, Horaz.  
 Hosea, Hoseas.  
 Hubert, Hubert.  
 Hugh, Hugo.  
 Humphrey, Humfrey, Hunfried.
- Isaac, Isaaf.  
 Isabel (Ib), Isabelle.
- Jack, Jacky, Johann, Hans, Hänchen.  
 Jacob, Jakob.  
 James, Jakob.  
 Jane, Johanna, Hannchen.  
 Jaquet, Jafoba.  
 Jasper, Kaspar.  
 Jemmy, Jaköbchen.  
 Jennet, Jenny, Jinny, Hannchen.  
 Jeremy (Jerry), Seremias.  
 Joan, Jin, Johanna.  
 Job, Hiob, Job.  
 Jo, Joe, Jof, Joseph.  
 Jocelin, Jost, Just.  
 John, Johnny, Johann, Hans.  
 Joshua, Josua.  
 Josiah, Josy, Josias.  
 Julia, Julie.  
 Justina, Justine.
- Kate, Kätchen.  
 Kester, Kit, Christoph, Christelchen, Köffel.
- Lætitia, Lettice, Lätitia.  
 Laurence, Laurentius, Lorenz.  
 Lewis, Ludwig.  
 Livy, Livius.

- Loo, Lieschen.  
 Lotty, Lottchen.  
 Louisa, Lodovica, Luise.  
 Lucy, Luce, Lucia.  
 Luke, Lukas.  
 Lyeurgus, Lyeurg.
- Magdalen, Madgy, Magdalena.  
 Margaret, Margery, Peggy, Margaretha, Grete.  
 Marget, Meg, Mer, Gretchen.  
 Mark, Markus.  
 Martha (Mat), Pat, Patty, Marthe.  
 Mary, Maria.  
 Matilda (Maud, Mawd), Mathilde.  
 Matthew (Mat), Matthäus.  
 Maudlin, Lenchen.  
 Maurice, Mauritius, Moriz.  
 Mawkes, Mawkin, Malkin, Marichen.
- Merand, Miranda.  
 Mick, Michael, Michael, Michel.  
 Moll, Molly, Mariechen.  
 Mun, Edmund.
- Nathaniel, Nat, Natty, Nathanael.  
 Nehemiah, Nehemias.  
 Nest, Agnes.  
 Nib, Nibb, Isabella.  
 Nicholas, Nikolaus.  
 Nicol, Nick, Nickel, Niklas.  
 Nickin, Isaaf.  
 Noah, Noa.
- Oliver (Noll), Oser.  
 Olivia, Olivvy (Livy), Ollivia.  
 Origen, Origenes.  
 Otho, Otto.  
 Ovid, Ovidius, Ovid.
- Pal, Pally, Pol, Polly, Maria.  
 Pall, Poli, Poly, Mariechen.  
 Patrick, Paddy, Patrick.  
 Patty, Patricius.  
 Peg, Peggy, Gretchen.  
 Peregrine, Pel, Peregrinus.  
 Pernel, Petronilla.  
 Peter, Pietre, Petrus, Peter.
- Philip, Philipp.  
 Philippa, Philippine.  
 Phil, Philly, Phyllis.  
 Pliny, Plinius.  
 Pompey, Pompejus.  
 Prudence, Pru, Prudentia.
- Rachel, Rahel, Rachel.  
 Ralph, Radolf.  
 Rebecca (Beck), Rebecca.  
 Reynold, Reinhold.  
 Richard (Dick, Dickin, Dicky, Hick), Reichhard, Richard, Reinhard.  
 Robert, Robin (Bob, Bobby, Dobe, Hob, Hobe), Robert, Ruprecht.  
 Rose, Rodulf.  
 Rolph, Rudolf.  
 Roger (Hodg, Hodge, Hodgekin, Hody), Rüdiger.  
 Rosamond, Rosamunde.  
 Rose, Rosa, Rosine, Röschen.
- Sabina, Sabin, Sabine.  
 Samson, Simson.  
 Samuel (Sam, Sammy), Samuel.  
 Sarah, Sal, Sally, Sarah.  
 Sawny, Andreas.  
 Sigfridus, Siegfried.  
 Sigismund, Siegmund.  
 Silvester, Sil, Sylvester.  
 Simon, Sim, Simy, Simon.  
 Solomon, Salomo.  
 Sophia, Sophy, Sophie.  
 Stephen, Steen, Stepby, Stephan.  
 Sukey, Su, Suschen.  
 Susanna, Susy, Susanne.  
 Sybilla, Sib, Sybilla.
- Telemachus, Telemach.  
 Terentius, Terenz.  
 Theobald, Tibald, Tibby (Thib, Thibby), Theobald.  
 Theodore (Tid, Tit), Theodor.  
 Theophilus (Taff), Gottlieb.  
 Theresa (Tracy), Therese.  
 Thomas (Tom, Tommy), Thomas

Thomasina, Thomafina.	Walter (Wat, Watty), Walthër.
Timothy (Tim, Timmy), Timo- thens.	Wilhelmina, Wilhelmine.
Tobias, Tobit, Toby, Tobias.	William (Bill, Billy, Wick, Wic- kin, Will, Willy, Wilkin), Wilhelm.
Tully, Tullius.	Winifred (Win, Winny), Win- fried.
Urban, Urbanus, Urban.	Wischard, Guiscard.
Ursula (Ure, Urgly, Ursly, Usly), Ursula, Ursel.	Zacharias, Zachary (Zach), Zack, Zacky, Zacharias.
Valentine, Val, Vally, Vol, Va- lentin, Velten.	(See the Declension of the names of persons, Lesson LXXXVI.)
Vincent (Vin), Vincenz, Vinz.	

## A T A B L E

OF THE PRINCIPAL COUNTRIES, TOWNS, NATIONS,  
RIVERS, &c. WHICH FOLLOW A DIFFERENT ORTHO-  
GRAPHY IN THE TWO LANGUAGES.

*Preliminary Observations.*—*A.* In giving the names of countries and towns we have taken care to add the names of the inhabitants, which we designate by their terminations, the names derived from towns being formed by the addition of the syllable *er*. (See *Obs. A.* Lesson LXVIII.) We distinguish in German by the termination *isch* the adjectives formed from the names of countries and nations. (See Lesson XXXVIII.) As for the adjectives formed from the names of towns, custom varies between the terminations *isch* and *er*, but the latter is most in use. (See *Obs. B.* Lesson LXIX.) Ex. *Italien*, Italy; *der Italien-er*, the Italian; *die Italien-erin*, the Italian lady; *italien-isch*, Italian; *Berlin*, Berlin; *der Berlin-er*, *fem.* *die Berlin-erin*, the native of Berlin.

*B.* When the proper names of countries end in *e*, *n*, *en*, *ien*, *ei*, or *ig*, these terminations are generally suppressed to form the adjectives in *isch*. Ex. *Span-ien*, Spain; *span-isch*, Spanish; *die Türk-ei*, Turkey; *der Türk-e*, the Turk; *die Türk-in*, the Turkish lady; *türk-isch*, Turkish.

C. The names of countries and towns which in German terminate in *au*, have in English *aw* or *ow*; those in *burg*, have *burgh*; and the names of countries which in English terminate in *ia*, change this termination in German into *ien*. Ex. Breslau, Breslaw; Mecklenburg, Mecklenburgh; Hamburg, Hamburgh; Arabien, Arabia; Sardinien, Sardinia, &c. We have therefore dispensed with assigning to most of those names a place in the following table.

D. The names of towns are all neuter, and those of countries being almost all neuter, we have only marked those which deviate from this rule. (See *Rule*, Lesson LI.)

Abyssinia, Abyssinien; ier, isch.	Barbary, die Barbar- <i>ei</i> ; Barbar, isch.
Adriatic Sea, das adriatisch-e Meer.	
Egean Sea, das ägäisch-e Meer.	Barceith, Bairreuth; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> .
Africa, Afrika; <i>ner</i> , <i>nisch</i> .	
Aix-la-Chapelle, Nach= <i>en</i> ; <i>ner</i> .	Basil, Basel; <i>er</i> <i>er</i> .
Albania, Albanien; <i>er</i> <i>er</i> oder <i>ier</i> , isch.	Bavaria, Baiern; Baier, isch.
Albigensis, Albigeois, der Albigenjer.	Belgrade, Belgrad; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> ; Griechisch-Weissenburg.
Al Cairo, Cairo.	Biscay, Biscaya; <i>er</i> oder <i>Baske</i> , isch oder <i>baschisch</i> .
Algiers, Algier; <i>er</i> , isch.	Bohemia, Böhmen; <i>er</i> , isch.
Alps, die Alpen.	Brabant, Brabant; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> oder isch.
Alsace, Elsaß, <i>sässer</i> , <i>säussisch</i> .	Brandenburgh, Brandenburg; <i>er</i> , isch.
America, Amerika; <i>ner</i> , <i>nisch</i> .	Brasil, Brasilien; <i>ianer</i> , <i>ianisch</i> .
Antwerp, Antwerpen; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> .	Bremen, Bremen; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> oder isch.
Appennines, die Appennin= <i>en</i> .	Breslaw, Breslau; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> oder isch.
Arabia, Arabien; <i>er</i> , isch.	Brigaw, Breisgau.
Armenia, Armenien, <i>er</i> , isch.	Britanny, Bretagne; <i>ner</i> , <i>nisch</i> .
Asia, Asien; <i>iate</i> , <i>iatisch</i> .	Britain, Britannien; Britte, britisch.
Asia Minor, Anatolia, Kleinasien, Natolien.	Brunswick, Braunschweig; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> .
Asturias, Asturien; <i>ier</i> , isch.	Brussels, Brüssel.
Athens, Athen; <i>er</i> oder <i>ienjer</i> , isch oder <i>ienisch</i> .	Buda, Ofen.
Atlantic, das atlantische Meer.	Burgundy, Burgund; <i>er</i> , <i>er</i> oder isch.
Augsburgh, Augsburg; <i>er</i> , isch.	Bursia, Bulgaria, Bulgarien; <i>er</i> , isch.
Austria, Oesterreich, Oestreich; <i>er</i> , isch.	
Babylon, Babylon; <i>ier</i> , isch.	
Baltic, das baltische Meer, die Ostsee.	

- Cadiz, Cadix, Cadix.  
 Calabria, Calabr=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Canary Islands, die canarisch=eu Inseln.  
 Cape of Good Hope, das Vorgebirge der guten Hoffnung.  
 Carinthia, Kaernten.  
 Carniola, Krain.  
 Carthage, Carthag=0; =inenser oder =er, =inensisch oder =isch.  
 Caspian Sea, das kaspische Meer.  
 Castilia, Castille, Castil=ien; =ier oder =laner, =lanisch.  
 Catalonia, Catalon=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Ceylon, die Insel Ceylon.  
 Champagne, die Champagne.  
 China, Chin=a; =ese, =essisch.  
 Cleves, Cleve.  
 Coblentz, Coblenz; =er, =er.  
 Cologne, Köln; =er, =isch.  
 Constance, Konstanz.  
 Constance, Lake of, der Bodensee.  
 Constantinople, Constantino=pel; =politiner, =politinisch.  
 Corinth, Corinth; =er, =isch.  
 Cornwall, Cornwall.  
 Corsica, Kors=ika; =e, =isch.  
 Courland, Kur=land; =länder, =ländisch.  
 Cracow, Krakau.  
 Crimea, die Krimm.  
 Croatia, Croat=ien; =e, =isch.  
 Cyprus, Cypren.  
 Damascus, Damas=cus; =ener.  
 Dantzic, Danzig; =er, =er.  
 Danube, die Donau.  
 Dardanelles, die Dardanellen.  
 Darmstadt, Darm=stadt; =städter, =städtisch.  
 Denmark, Dänemark; Däne, dän=isch.  
 Deux-Ponts, Zweibrücken.  
 Doesburgh, Duisburg.  
 Dort, Dortrecht.  
 Dresden, Dresd=en; =ner.  
 Dunkirk, Düntirchen.  
 Dutch, see Holland.  
 East-Indies, Ost=Indien.  
 Edinburgh, Edinburg.  
 Egypt, Aegypt=en; =er, =isch.  
 England, Eng=land; =länder, =lisch.  
 Erfurt, Erfurt; =er.  
 Ethiopia, Aethiop=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Euphrates, der Euphrat.  
 Europe, Europ=a; =äer, =äisch.  
 Fejervar, Weissenburg in Siebenbürgen.  
 Finland, Finn=land; =länder, länd=isch.  
 Flanders, Flandern; Flämänder, flämändisch oder flämisch.  
 Florence, Floren=z; =tiner, =tinisch.  
 France, Frankreich; Franzose, französisch.  
 Franche-Comté, Hochburgund; =er, =er oder =isch.  
 Franconia, Franken oder Franken=land; Franke, fränkisch.  
 Frankfort, Frankfurt; =er, =er.  
 Friburg, Freiburg.  
 Friesland, Friesland; =länder oder Frieze, =isch oder =ländisch.  
 Friuli, Friaul.  
 Galicia (a province of Spain), Galicien.  
 Galilee, Galilä=a; =er, =isch.  
 Gallicia (in Austria), Galizien.  
 Gaul, Gall=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Gant, see Ghent.  
 Garonne, die Garonne.  
 Gascony, Gaskon=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Geneva, Genf; =er, =er.  
 Genoa, Genu=a; =eser, =essisch.  
 Germany, Deutschland; der Deutsche, ein Deutscher, deutsch.  
 Ghent, Gent; =er, =er.  
 Glaris, Glarus.  
 Glogaw, Glogau; =er, =er.  
 Gothia, Gothland, Goth=land, =e, =isch.

- Göttingen, Göttingen; =er, =er.  
 Gravelines, Greveltingen.  
 Great Britain, Großbritannien.  
 Greece, Griech=enland; =e, =isch.  
 Greenland, Grön=land; =länder, =ländisch.  
 Gripswald, Greifswalde.  
 Grisons (country of the), Grau=bünd=en; =ner.  
 Guelderland, Geldern.
- Hadria, see Adriatic Sea.  
 Hague, Haag.  
 Hailbron, Heilbronn.  
 Hainault, Hennegau.  
 Hamburgh, Hambrough, Ham=burg; =er, =er oder =isch.  
 Hanover, Hann=over; =overaner, =överisch.  
 Hebrew, der Hebrä=er; =isch.  
 Hesse, Hessen, Hessia, Hess=en; =e, =isch.  
 Holland, Hol=land; =länder, =ländisch.  
 Holstein, Holstein; =er, =isch.  
 Hungary, Ungar=n; Ungar, =isch.
- India, Ind=ien; =ianer oder =ier, =ianisch oder =isch.  
 Ingria, Ingermannland.  
 Ireland, Ir=land; =länder, =ländisch.  
 Italy, Italien; =er, =isch; Wälsch=land od. Welschland; =er, wälsch.
- Japan, Japan; =er oder =eser, =isch.  
 Judea, Jud=ää; =e, jüdisch.  
 Juliers, Jülich.
- Lacedæmon. Lacedämon; =ier, =isch.  
 Ladrone Islands, die Diebsinseln.  
 Lapland, Lapp=land; =länder, =ländisch.  
 Leghorn, Livorn=o; =er, =er.  
 Leipsic, Leipzig; =er, =er.  
 Liefland, see Livonia.
- Liege, Lüttich; =er, =er.  
 Lisbon, Lisboa, Lissabon.  
 Lisle, Ryssel, Lille.  
 Lithuania, Lithau=en; =er, =isch.  
 Livonia, Lief=land; =länder, =läu=disch.  
 Loeven, Lovain, Louvain, Löwen.  
 Lombardy, die Lombard=ei; =e, =isch.  
 London, London; =er, =er.  
 Lorrain, Lorraine, Lothringen; =er, =isch.  
 Low-Countries, die Nieder=lande; =länder, =ländisch.  
 Lucca, Luc=ca; =scheier, =chesisch.  
 Lucerne, Lucern od. Luzern; =er, =er.  
 Lusace, Lusatia, die Lausitz.  
 Luxemburg, Lügelburg oder Lu=gemburg; =er, =er oder =isch.  
 Lyons, Lyon; =er.
- Macedonia, Macedon=ten; =ier, =isch.  
 Maas, Meuse, die Maas.  
 Magdeburgh, Maidenburgh, Mag=deburg; =er, =isch.  
 Malta, Malt=a; =eser, =eser.  
 Manheim, Mannheim; =er.  
 March, die Mark.  
 Mauritania, Mohr=enland; Mohr, =isch.  
 Mecklenburgh, Mecklenburg; =er, =isch.  
 Mentz, Mayence, Mainz; =er, =er.  
 Messina, Messin=a; =er, =isch.  
 Middleburgh, Middelburg; =er.  
 Milan, Mat=land; =länder, =läu=disch.  
 Misnia, Meiß=en; =ner, =ner.  
 Moldavia, die Moldau.  
 Moluccas, die Molukken, die mo=lukischen Inseln.  
 Mons, Bergen.  
 Moravia, Mähren; =er, =isch.  
 Moscovy, { Mosk=au; =aner oder  
 Moscow, { =owite, =owitisch.  
 Moselle, die Mosel.  
 Mulhausen, Mühlhausen.

Munich, Münch=eu; =ener, =ner.  
Muscovy, see Moscovy.

Naples, Nea=apel; =politaneer, =poli=tanisch.

Natolia, Kleinasien.

Netherlands, die Nieder=lande; =länder, =ländisch.

Neufchatel, Wälschneuburg, Neuf=chatel.

Nice, Nizza.

Nieper, der Dnieper.

Niester, der Dniester.

Nile, der Nil.

Nimeguen, Nimwegen.

Normandy, die Nor=mandie; =mann, =männisch.

Norway, Norweg=eu; =er, =isch.

Nova Scotia, Neuschottland.

Nubia, Nub=ien; =ier, =isch.

Numidia, Numidien.

Nuremberg, Nürnberg; =er, oder =isch.

Nyon, Newis.

Ocean, Atlantic, das atlantische Meer.

Ocean, Frozen, das Eismeer.

Ocean, Pacific, das stille Meer, die Südsee.

Orange, Oran=ien; =ier, =isch.

Orkneys, die orkadisch=eu Inseln.

Osnaburgh, Osnabrück.

Ostrogoths, die Ostgothen.

Padua, Padua; =ner.

Palatinate, die Pfalz; Pfälzer, pfälzisch.

Palestine, Palästina.

Paris, Paris; =er, =er und =isch.

Parthia, Parth=erland; =er, =isch.

Passaw, Passau.

Pavia, Pav=ia; =esaneer.

Persia, Pers=ien; =er, =isch.

Peru, Peru; =vianer, =vianisch.

Petersburgh, Petersburg.

Philipsburgh, Philippsburg.

Phœnicia, Phönici=ien; =ier, =isch.

Phrygia, Phryg=ien; =ier, =isch.

Picardy, die Picard=ie; =ier, =isch.

Piedmont, Piemont; =eser, =esisch.

Placentia, Piacenza.

Poland, Pol=eu; =e oder =ack, =nisch.

Pomerania, Pommer=eu; Pommer, =isch.

Pont-Euxine (Black Sea), der Euxinus, das schwarze Meer.

Portugal, Portug=al; =iese, =iesisch.

Prague, Prag; =er.

Presburgh, Presburg; =er.

Prussia, Preuß=eu; =e, =isch.

Puglia, Apulia, Apulien.

Pyrenean Mountains, die Pyre=näen.

Ratisbon, Regensburg; =er, =er.

Red Sea, das rothe Meer.

Rhetia, Rhätien.

Rhine, der Rhein.

Rhodes, Rhod=us; =iser oder =ier.

Rome, Rom; Römer, römisch.

Rouen, Rouen.

Russia, Rußland; Russe, =isch.

Saltzburg, Salzburg.

Samaritan, der Samariter.

Samoïd, der Samojede.

Saracen, der Saracene.

Sardinia, Sardin=ien; =ier, =isch.

Savoy, Savon=eu; =er oder =ard, =isch.

Saxony, Sachs=eu; =e, sächsisch.

Saxony, Lower, Niedersachsen.

Scheld, die Schelde.

Slavonia, Slavon=ien; =ier, =isch.

Scotland, Schott=land; =e oder =länder, =isch oder =ländisch.

Scythia, Scyth=ien; =e, =isch.

Siberia, Sibir=ien; =ier, =isch.

Sicily, Stiel=ien; =ianer, =ianisch.

Silesia, Schles=ien; =ier, =isch.

Sleswic, Schleswig.

Sound, der Sund.

South-Indies, Südindien.

South-Sea, Pacific Ocean, die Südsee, das stille Meer.

Spain, Span=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Sparta, Sparta; =ner, =nisch.  
 Spire, Speier.  
 Strasburg, Straßburg; =er, =er  
 oder =isch.  
 Styria, Steyer=mark; =märker.  
 Suabia, Schwab=en; =e, =schwä=  
 bisch.  
 Sweden, Schwed=en; =e, =isch.  
 Switzerland, die Schweiz; =er,  
 =er oder =erisch.  
 Syracuse, Syrakus; =aner.  
 Syria, Syr=ien; =er, =isch.

Tarentum, Tarent; =iner.  
 Tartary, die Tartar=ei od. Tatar=  
 ei, Tartar oder Tatar, =isch.  
 Tees, die Etsch.  
 Teneriff, die Insel Teneriffa.  
 Terra del Fuego, das Feuerland.  
 Thames, die Themse.  
 Thebes, Theb=en; =aner, =anisch.  
 Thessalonica, Theßalon=ich; =ier,  
 =isch.  
 Thessaly, Theßal=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Thionville, Diedenhofen.  
 Thrabesunda, Trapezunt.  
 Thracia, Thraz=ien; =ier, =isch.  
 Thurgaw, Thurgau.  
 Thuringia, Thüring=en; =er.  
 Tiber, die Liber.  
 Tabago, die Insel Tabago.  
 Tournay, Doornick.  
 Transylvania, Siebenbürg=en; =e,  
 =isch.  
 Trent, Trident oder Trient; =iner,  
 =nisch.  
 Triers, Trier.  
 Tripoli, Tripoli=ß; =taner, =ta=  
 nisch.  
 Troy, Troja; =ner, =nisch.  
 Tunis, Tun=is; =eser, =essisch.  
 Turkey, die Türk=ei; =e, =isch.  
 Tuscany, Toskan=a; =er, =isch.  
 Tyrol, Tyrol; =er.

United Provinces, die vereinigten  
 Provinzen (der Niederlande).  
 United States, die vereinigten Sta=  
 ten (von Nordamerika).  
 Upper Bavaria, Oberbaiern.  
 Upper Burgundy, Hochburgund;  
 =er, =er oder =isch.  
 Upper Germany, Oberdeutschland.  
 Upper Saxony, Obersachsen.

Valencia, Valencia; =ner, =nisch.  
 Venice, Venedig; Venetianer, ve=  
 netianisch.  
 Vesuvius, der Vesuv.  
 Vienna, Wien; =er, =er.  
 Virginia, Virginy, Birginien.  
 Vistula, die Weichsel.  
 Vogese mountains, Vosges, die  
 Vogesen, der Wasgau.

Walachia, die Walach=ei; Wal=  
 lach, =isch.  
 Wales, Wallis od. Walliser=Land;  
 =er, =er.  
 Warsaw, Warschau; =er, =isch.  
 Weser, die Weser.  
 West-Indies, West=Indien.  
 Westphalia, West=falen; =fale  
 oder =fälinger, =fälisch.  
 Weteraw, die Wetterau.

Xa, der Oryx.  
 Ypres, Ypern.  
 Zante, die Insel Zante.  
 Zealand, See=land; =länder, =län=  
 dlich.  
 Zell, Cesse.  
 Zurich, Zürich.  
 Zwickaw, Zwickau.

(See Declension of the names of  
 countries, towns. and villages,  
 Rule, page 155, Vol. I.)

EXERCISES. 250.

Frederick, do you know your lesson of geography?—Yes, Sir.—What is the name of the five principal parts of the earth?—Europe, Asia, Africa, America, and Australia.—In which part do we live?—In Europe, which is the smallest.—In how many states is Europe divided?—In fourteen.—Can you tell me which these fourteen states are?—Yes, Sir: Great Britain, Denmark, Sweden and Norway, Russia, France, Germany, Hungary, Prussia, Galicia, Switzerland, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and European Turkey.—How many empires (das Kaiserthum) are there in Europe?—Three: Austria (das Oesterreichische), Russia, and Turkey.—And how many kingdoms?—Nineteen: France, Portugal, Spain, England, Scotland, Ireland, Denmark, &c.—Enough; I see that you know it.—How many kings reign over these nineteen kingdoms?—Thirteen; several possess more than one kingdom: England, Scotland, and Ireland belong to the king of Great Britain; Sweden and Norway to the king of Sweden; Hungary, Bohemia, and (nebst) Galicia to the Emperor of Austria.—How many republics (der freie Staat, plur. en) are there in Europe?—There are two: Switzerland and the seven Greek islands or the Ionian (ionisch) republic.—Which is the capital of France?—Paris.—Which is that of Austria?—Vienna.—Which is that of Saxony?—Dresden.—Which is that of Prussia?—Berlin.—Which is that of England?—London.—Which are the most remarkable towns in Germany?—Vienna in Austria, Dresden in Saxony, Berlin in Prussia, Breslaw in Silesia, &c.—What rivers are there in Germany?—There are six principal rivers: The Danube, the Rhine, the Weser, the Elbe, the Oder and the Main.

251.

CLEVERNESS (geschneider Einfall) OF AESOP.

The father of fables, the deformed (mißgestaltet) Aesop, had been sold to a slave-dealer (der Sclavenhändler), who went shortly after (bald darauf) to Ephesus there to sell his slaves. As they all had to carry some bur-

den (eine Last), Aesop requested (bitten\*) that some consideration should be had (Rücksicht nehmen\*) for his feeble body (der Körperbau), adding at the same time that he was a new-comer (der Neuling), and ought to be gently treated (gelinde behandelt werden\*). His companions answered: "Thou shalt carry nothing, if thou likest." Aesop, unwilling to be outdone, insisted upon carrying his burden like the others. He was consequently allowed to choose what he would carry. He took the bread-basket (der Brodforb); it was the heaviest burden.—Every one thought he had done it through stupidity (aus Dummheit); but at (gleich bei) the first dinner the contents of the basket were cut into (angreifen\*), and the Phrygian's burden by so much (um eben so viel) lightened (erleichtern). This occurred (so ging es) that evening and the following day, so that at the end of two days, he walked on disencumbered (leer), and made every one admire his discernment (die verständige Wahl).

252.

It is an age (eine Ewigkeit) since I saw you; where have you been all this time?—I have travelled a great deal: I have been in Egypt, in Barbary, to (auf with dative) the Cape of Good Hope, to (auf with dat.) the Ladrone islands, in Kamschatka, &c.—What is your opinion of the inhabitants (der Bewohner) of these countries? —There are good and bad in Egypt, as with (bei) us; I found many barbarians in Barbary; my hopes were frustrated (täuschen) at the Cape of Good Hope; I was robbed (bestehlen\*) by the inhabitants of the Ladrone islands, but I escaped this (es nicht werden\*) in Kamschatka, because I had nothing left. The Kamschadales (die Kamtschadalen) are the dirtiest of all people in the world (Jemanden an Unreinlichkeit übertreffen\*). They never wash their hands nor their face; they never cut their nails; they eat with their dogs off the same plate (aus einer Schüssel), and this plate is not better washed than those who eat off it. These people are very superstitious (abergläubisch); the women especially (namentlich) pretend

(rühmen sich) to a little witchcraft (hexen können), to foretell (vorhersagen) future events (die Zukunft), and to cure (heilen) the sick. There is a certain tribe (das Volk) in Africa, called the Azanaghis (Azanaghier), that wear round their head a handkerchief that covers their nose and mouth. The reason of this is, that, as they consider the nose and mouth as unclean ducts (die Ableitung), they feel obliged (sich verpflichtet halten\*) to conceal them as carefully as we do some parts of the body. They only uncover (entblößen) their mouths to eat and drink.

253.

ADVANTAGE OF BEING THE FIRST OF ANY (in irgend einem) STATION (der Stand).

Lewis the Eleventh, king of France, who was always anxious to acquire knowledge (Etwas zu lernen wünschen), was in the habit of inviting to his table (zu seiner Tafel einladen\*) strangers from whom he hoped to derive (erlangen) useful knowledge (die Kenntniß).—He invited even merchants, who gave him information on commerce (Aufschlüsse über den Handel), and used to profit by the liberty of the repast (sich der Freiheit der Mahlzeit bedienen) to engage them in unreserved conversation (Jemanden zutraulich machen).—A merchant, of the name of John, emboldened by the good-nature (welchen die Güte—allzu dreist gemacht hatte) of the king who often made him dine with him, bethought himself (sich einfallen lassen\*) to ask for a patent of nobility (der Adelsbrief).—The king gave it him (bewilligen), but when the new noble (der Neugeabelte) appeared before him, he affected not to look at him (Jemanden geflissentlich nicht ansehen\*). John, surprised (sich wundern) at experiencing so different a reception (nicht mehr eben dieselbe Aufnahme zu finden), complained of it.—The king said: “Sir noble (Herr Edelmann), when I asked you to sit at my table (zur Tafel ziehen\*), I considered (betrachten) you as the first of your station; but now that you are the last of your present station, I should injure others (Jemanden beleidigen), if I were

to extend (erweisen\*) the same favour (die Gnade) to you now, that I used."

---

## HUNDRED AND SEVENTH LESSON. — Hundert und siebente Lektion.

### 3. THE ADJECTIVE, das Bei- oder Eigenschaftswort.

*A.* The adjective gives the substantive, to which it always relates, a good or bad quality; hence its name, Eigenschaftswort, word of quality. Ex. prächtiger Palast, magnificent palace; zärtliche Mutter, tender mother; folgsames Kind, dutiful child.

*Obs.* The adjective in its natural state, such as it is found in the dictionary, is invariable when it forms the predicate of a proposition. (See Lesson XX.) Ex. Dieser Apfel ist gut, this apple is good; diese Birne ist gut, this pear is good; dieses Brod ist gut, this bread is good; diese Äpfel sind gut, these apples are good; diese Birnen sind gut, these pears are good, &c.

### *B. The Participle, das Mittelwort.*

We have shown (Lessons XX., XC. and XCV.) that participles, when used in an attributive sense, are declined exactly like adjectives. Ex. Der geliebte Vater, the beloved father; die liebende Mutter, the loving mother; das gestrafte Kind, the punished child.

## THE FORMATION OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives are, like substantives, primitive, derivative, or compounded.

1. The following adjectives, for instance, are primitive: jung, young; alt, old; groß, great; klein, little; gut, good; arm, poor; reich, rich, &c. Almost all primitive adjectives are monosyllables.

2. Derivative adjectives are formed:

a) By the addition of certain terminations to substantives, to other adjectives, or to an infinitive of which the termination *en* has been suppressed.

These terminations are:

**Bar**, derived from the ancient word *baren* or *bären*, to bear. Ex.

danfbar, thankful, grateful;	derived from	der Danf, thanks.
fruchtbar, fruitful, fertile;	„ „	die Frucht, fruit.
ehrbar, honourable;	„ „	die Ehre, honour.
brauchbar, useful;	„ „	brauchen, to use.
loftbar, precious, costly;	„ „	loften, to cost.

**En** or **ern** are added to substantives which denote the materials of any thing. The termination *en* very often answers to the same termination in English. (See *Obs. Lesson VI.*) Ex.

golden, golden or of gold;	derived from	das Gold, gold.
meffingen, made of brass;	„ „	das Meffing, brass.

*Obs. A.* When the substantive ends in *e* or *r*, the letter *n* only is added to form the adjective. Ex.

feiden, of silk;	derived from	die Seide, silk.
wollen, woollen, worsted;	„ „	die Wolle, wool,
filbern, silver, of silver;	„ „	das Silber, silver.
kupfern, made of copper;	„ „	das Kupfer, copper.

*Obs. B.* To some substantives *ern* must be added to form the adjectives, as:

bleiern, leaden;	derived from	das Blei, lead.
hölzern, wooden;	„ „	das Holz, wood.
fteinern, of stone;	„ „	der Stein, stone.

**Haft**, derived from *haften*, is joined to substantives and verbs, and signifies to stick fast, to adhere, to hold constantly to the idea of the primitive word. Ex.

tugendhaft, virtuous;	derived from	die Tugend, virtue.
lasterhaft, vicious;	„ „	das Laster, vice.
gewiffenhaft, conscien- tious;	„ „	das Gewiffen, conscience.
mangelhaft, deficient;	„ „	der Mangel, want.

**Icht** is derived from the next termination (*ig*).—It is joined to substantives, and signifies that which contains

in great quantity the thing designated by the primitive substantives. Ex.

bergicht, mountainous;	derived from	der Berg, the mountain.
steinicht, full of stones;	„ „	der Stein, the stone.
weinicht, winy;	„ „	der Wein, wine.

*Obs.* When substantives have this termination, they generally derive from verbs or adjectives. (See page 5.)

*Ig* is derived from *eigen*, own.—It signifies equally that which contains the thing designated by the primitive, and is joined to substantives, adjectives, adverbs and verbs. It very often answers to the English termination *y*. Ex.

muthig, courageous;	derived from	der Muth, courage.
selig, happy;	„ „	die Seele, the soul.
zukünftig, future;	„ „	die Zukunft, futurity.
gütig, bounteous;	„ „	gut, good.
niedrig, low, inferior;	„ „	nieder, down.
heutig, of this day, present ( <i>hodiernus</i> in Latin),	„ „	heute, to-day.
hiesig, of this place, of this country;	„ „	hier, here.
gehörig, appertaining; right;	„ „	gehören, to appertain.

*Obs.* From adjectives terminating in *ig* substantives in *feit* may be formed. (See page 6.)

*Ish* denotes the species of anything.—Adjectives that have this termination are derived from substantives or verbs. It often answers to the English termination *ish*. Ex.

kindisch, childish;	derived from	das Kind, the child.
malerisch, picturesque;	„ „	der Maler, the painter.
närrisch, foolish;	„ „	der Narr, the fool.
zänfisch, quarrelsome;	„ „	zanken, to quarrel.

*Obs.* This ending serves to form adjectives from the names of nations. (See Lesson XXXVIII.) It is also joined to the proper name of a person, as:

die Cotta'sche Buchhandlung,	the library of Cotta.
die Campe'schen (for Campe'schen) Schriften.	the works of Campe.

**ſich** is derived from **gleich**, equal, like, and consequently denotes likeness. It is joined to substantives, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. **Ex.**

<b>göttlich</b> , godlike;	derived from	<b>Gott</b> , God.
<b>brüderlich</b> , brotherly;	„ „	<b>der Bruder</b> , the brother.
<b>glücklich</b> , happy;	„ „	<b>das Glück</b> , happiness.
<b>röthlich</b> , reddish;	„ „	<b>roth</b> , red.
<b>ſterblich</b> , mortal;	„ „	<b>ſterben</b> , to die.
<b>dienlich</b> , expedient, fit;	„ „	<b>dienen</b> , to serve.

**Obs.** Most adjectives terminating in **lich**, form feminine substantives in **ſeit**. (See page 6.)

**ſam** denotes disposition, inclination.—Adjectives which have this termination are derived from substantives and verbs. **Ex.**

<b>arbeitsam</b> , laborious;	derived from	<b>die Arbeit</b> , labour.
<b>furchtsam</b> , fearful;	„ „	<b>die Furcht</b> , fear.
<b>gewaltſam</b> , forcible;	„ „	<b>die Gewalt</b> , power.
<b>ſparſam</b> , economical;	„ „	<b>ſparen</b> , to spare.

**Obs.** From adjectives terminating in **ſam**, feminine substantives in **ſeit** are formed. (See page 6.)

**Selig** (anciently **fällig**), is derived from the termination of substantives **ſal** or **ſel**, and from **ig**, and signifies that which contains in a high degree the primitive. Adjectives of this termination are formed from substantives or other adjectives **Ex.**

<b>mühselig</b> , toilsome;	derived from	<b>die Mühe</b> , pains, toil.
<b>feindſelig</b> , hostile;	„ „	<b>der Feind</b> , the enemy.
<b>glücklichſelig</b> , happy;	„ „	<b>das Glück</b> , happiness.
<b>armſelig</b> , miserable, wretched;	„ „	<b>arm</b> , poor.
<b>holdſelig</b> , beloved, gracious;	„ „	<b>hold</b> , kind, graceful.

**Obs.** From adjectives terminating in **ſelig**, feminine substantives are formed by the addition of the termination **ſeit**. **Ex.**

**die Mühseligkeit**, laboriousness, hardship.  
**die Glückſeligkeit**, happiness, blessedness. (See page 6.)

*b)* Or by certain determinating particles which precede other words. Their signification has been explained

in the formation of substantives. (See pages 9, 10.) These particles are :

Un—unböflich, impolite ;	derived from	höflich, polite.
unglücklich, unhappy ;	„ „	glücklich, happy.
unzufrieden, discontented ;	„ „	zufrieden, contented.
Miß—mißvergnügt, displeased ;	„ „	vergnügt, pleased.
mißmuthig, discouraged ;	„ „	muthig, courageous.
Erz—erzböfe, very wicked ;	„ „	böfe, bad, wicked.

Urr } are used only in the words uralt, very ancient ;  
 and } abergläubig, or abergläubifch, superstitious ; aber=  
 Ueber } wißig, foolish, crazy.

### 3. Compounded adjectives are formed

a) from a substantive and an adjective. Ex.

volfreich, populous ;	from	das Volk, the people, and reich, rich.
engel mild, mild as an angel ;	„	der Engel, the angel, and mild, mild.
lieb reich, amiable ;	„	die Liebe, and reich, rich.
fchneeweiß, as white as snow ;	„	der Schnee, the snow, and weiß, white.
gottloß, impious, godless ;	„	Gott, God, and loß, loose, slack.
fruchtloß, fruitless, useless ;	„	die Frucht, the fruit and loß, loose.

*Obs. A.* When the adjective governs the genitive, the substantive generally takes the letter *s*, which denotes this case ; as do even those substantives which end in *ung*, though they are feminine. Ex.

achtungsvoll, full of esteem ;	from	die Achtung, esteem, and voll, full.
hoffnungsloß, hopeless ;	„	die Hoffnung, hope, and loß, less, loose.
liebenswürdig, lovely ;	„	die Liebe, love, and würdig, worthy.

*Obs. B.* Sometimes the substantive stands in the genitive plural. Ex.

kinderloß, childless ;	from	die Kinder, the children, and loß, less.
------------------------	------	--

gnadenreich, gracious, merci- from die Gnaden, graces, and  
ful; reich, rich.  
grenzenlos, boundless; „ die Grenzen, the limits, and  
los, less.

*b) From two adjectives. Ex.*

hellblau, light-blue; from hell, light, clear, and blau, blue;  
treuherzig, cordial; „ treu, true, and herzig, heart-dear.

*c) From a verb and an adjective, from an adverb or a preposition and an adjective, and from all sorts of words. Ex.*

eßbegierig, greedy, desir- from essen, to eat, and gierig, desir-  
ous to eat; ous, eager.  
hochgeboren, right hon- „ hoch, high, and the part. past  
ourable; geboren, born.  
volljährig, of full age; „ voll, full, and jährig, of years.  
oberländisch, belonging to „ ober, upper, and ländisch, of  
the upper country; country.  
niederländisch, Nether- „ nieder, low, and ländisch, of  
landish; country.  
hochgeschätzt, highly es- „ hoch, high, and the part. past  
teemed; geschätzt, esteemed.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES, OR CASES WHICH  
THE ADJECTIVES GOVERN.

**I. The following adjectives govern the Genitive:**

Bedürftig or benöthigt, wanting.—Ich bin seiner Hilfe benöthigt, I am in want of his aid; er ist seines Geldes bedürftig, he wants his money; ich bin dessen benöthigt, I am in want of it. (See Lesson XXXV.)

Beraubt, deprived.—Ich bin Ihrer angenehmen Gesellschaft beraubt, I am deprived of your agreeable society.

Bewußt, conscious of, knowing.—Ich war mir dieser Sache bewußt, I knew this affair.

Eingedenk, mindful.—Ich werde meines Versprechens eingedenk seyn, I shall remember my promise.

Fähig, capable, and unfähig, incapable.—Er ist dieser Bosheit unfähig, he is incapable of such a wickedness.

Froh, glad, rejoiced.—Er ist seines Lebens froh, he enjoys his life.

Gewiß, sure.—Er war seiner Sache gewiß, he was sure of that. (See Lesson LXXXVI.)

Gewärtig, aware.—Ich war der Sache gewärtig, I expected that.

Gewohnt, accustomed.—Sie ist des Zankens gewohnt, she is accustomed to quarrelling.

Kundig, acquainted with, skilled in, and unfundig, unacquainted with.—Er ist dieses Geschäftes unfundig, he does not understand this business.

Loß, released, rid.—Ich bin seiner loß, I have rid myself of him.

Mächtig, strong, master of.—Sie ist dieser Sprache mächtig, she is mistress of that language, *i. e.* she understands it perfectly.

Müde, tired, fatigued.—Ich bin des Zankens müde, I am tired of quarrelling.

Quitt, quit, free.—Er ist aller Sorgen quitt, he is free from all cares.

Satt, satiated, weary.—Ich bin seines Umganges satt, I have had enough of his society.

Schuldig, guilty.—Er ist des Hochverrathes schuldig, he is guilty of high treason.

Theilhaft (not so good theilhaftig), partaking, sharing.—Sie soll meines Glückes theilhaftig werden, she shall share my happiness.

Ueberdrüssig, wearied, tired.—Ich bin des vielen Klagens endlich überdrüssig, I am tired at last of so much lamentation.

Verdächtig, suspected.—Er ist dieses Diebstahls verdächtig, he is suspected to have committed the theft.

Verlustig, losing.—Er hat sich meiner Freundschaft verlustig gemacht, he has lost my friendship.

Voll, full.—Voll dieser süßen Hoffnung, full of that sweet hope.

Werth, worthy, deserving, and unwerth, unworthy.—Er ist dieser Ehre werth, he deserves that honour. Es

ist nicht der Mühe werth, it is not worth while. (See Lesson LXXV.)

— **Würdig**, worthy, and unwürdig, unworthy.—Er ist dieser Belohnung würdig, he deserves (is worthy of) such a reward; sie ist Ihrer Freundschaft unwürdig, she is unworthy of your friendship.

II. The following adjectives govern the Dative, and answer the question wem? to whom?

Abhold, disinclined, disaffectionate;  
ähnlich, resembling, like, similar;  
angeboren, angeerbt, innate, inborn;  
angemessen, agreeable to, according with;  
angenehm, agreeable;  
anständig, proper, becoming.

And all adjectives denoting resemblance, utility, pleasure, propriety, fear, obedience, affection, and duty. Ex.

**Ähnlich**, resembling.—Er ist seiner Schwester ähnlich, he resembles his sister. (See Lesson LXXXVIII).

**Nützlich**, useful.—Er ist mir sehr nützlich, he is very useful to me.

**Nöthig**, necessary.—Die Bewegung ist mir nöthig, exercise is necessary to me.

**Angenehm**, agreeable.—Es ist ihr sehr angenehm, daß Sie hier sind, she is very glad that you are here.

**Lieb**, dear.—Es ist ihm lieb, he is glad of it. Wenn Ihnen Ihre Ehre lieb ist, if you make account of your honour. Wenn Ihnen Ihr Leben lieb ist, as you value your life.

**Angemessen**, agreeable to, proportioned to.—Dieses Benehmen ist seinem Charakter angemessen, this conduct accords with his character.

**Bange**, anxious, alarmed.—Es ist mir bange, I am anxious.

**Gehorsam**, obedient.—Er ist seinen Lehrern gehorsam, he obeys his masters.

**Hold**, kind, affectionate.—Er ist Ihnen hold, he is devoted to you.

Schuldig, bound duty, obliged.—Ich bin Ihnen vielen Dank schuldig, I am much obliged to you.

Verbunden, obliged.—Ich bin Ihnen für Ihre Güte sehr verbunden, I am much obliged to you for your goodness.

The same may be said of the following :

Anstößig, offensive;	gut, good, pleasant;
ärgerlich, vexatious;	heilsam, salutary;
angst, anxious;	heiß, hot;
bezeiçlich, comprehensible;	hinderlich, impeding;
behalig, agreeable;	kalt <sup>1</sup> , cold;
behülflieh, helpful;	klar, clear;
bekannt, known;	koßbar, costly, precious;
bequem, convenient;	lästigh, burdensome;
beschwerlich, troublesome;	leicht, easy;
dankbar, grateful;	leid, unpleasant;
deutlich, clear;	möglich, possible;
dienlich, serviceable;	nachtheiligh, disadvantageous, pre-
dienstbar, tributary;	judicial;
dunkel, obscure;	nahe, near;
eigen, proper, peculiar;	rathsam, advisable;
einleuchtend, evident, clear;	rühmlich, glorious;
einträglich, productive;	schädlich, injurious;
ekelhaft, disgusting, loathsome;	schwer, difficult, heavy;
empfindlich, sensible;	treu, faithful; untreu, faithless;
ergeben, devoted;	übel, not well, indisposed;
erinnerlich, remembered;	unbeschadet, without prejudice;
erspriesslich, conducive;	unerwartet, unexpected;
erwünscht, desirable;	unvermuthet, inopinate;
feil, destined for sale;	verantwortlich, responsible;
fühlbar, perceptible, palpable;	verhaßt, odious;
furchtbar, formidable;	verständlich, intelligible;
fürchterlich, terrible;	verwandt, related;
gefährlich, dangerous;	vortheilhaft, advantageous;
gefällig, pleasing;	wahrscheinlich, likely, probable;
geläufig, familiar, conversant;	warm, warm;
gemäß, conforme, asuitable;	wohl, well ( <i>ex.</i> Mir ist wohl, I
geneigt, inclined, disposed to,	am well);
subject to;	zugänglich, accessible;
gewogen, favourable;	zugehörigh, belonging;
gleich, like, alike;	zugethan, attached;
günstig, favourable;	zuträglich, conducive, good.

1 Say: mir ist kalt, or es ist mir kalt, I am cold; Dir ist warm, or es ist Dir warm, thou warm; ihm ist heiß, or es ist ihm heiß he is hot; but never ich bin, &c., nor ich habe, &c.

*Obs. A.* Some adjectives govern one of the prepositions: *aus*, out; *mit*, with; *von*, of, from, with the Dative; others the preposition *auf*, upon, with the Accusative. Ex.

*Verwiesen*, banished, exiled, outlawed.—*Sie sind aus ihrem Vaterlande verwiesen*, they are banished from their country.

*Rein*, pure, clear.—*Rein von aller Schuld*, pure from all guilt, guiltless.

*Entfernt*, at a distance.—*Ich bin von den Meinigen entfernt*, I am away from my relations.

*Zufrieden*, contented, satisfied.—*Er ist mit seinen Schülern zufrieden*, he is contented with his pupils.

*Eifersüchtig*, jealous.—*Er ist eifersüchtig auf seinen Schatten*, he is jealous of his shadow.

*Obs. B.* Past participles, when employed as adjectives, govern the same case as the verbs to which they belong. Ex.

*Zugedacht*, designed, intended, past participle of the verb: *Jemanden Etwas zudenken*, to intend something for some one.—*Das war Ihnen zugedacht*, that was destined for you.

III. Adjectives which imply measure, weight, age, or value, with a numeral preceding, require the Accusative, and are always placed after it. Ex.

*Schwer*, heavy.—*Einem Zentner schwer*, weighing a quintal.

*Hoch*, high; *breit*, broad.—*Einem Zoll hoch*, an inch high; *eine Elle breit*, an ell broad.

*Alt*, old.—*Er ist zwölf Jahre und einen Monat alt*, he is twelve years and one month old.

*Werth*, worth.—*Es ist nicht mehr als einen Thaler werth*, it is not worth more than a crown.

#### THE ADJECTIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

Sometimes the adjective is followed by an infinitive preceded by the particle *zu*, to. Ex.

Ich bin begierig zu erfahren,	I am anxious to be informed.
Das ist leicht zu erlangen,	that is easily obtained.
Das ist schwer zu erzählen,	that is difficult to be told.
Ich war froh, ihn zu sehen,	I was glad to see him.
Ich bin bereit, es zu thun,	I am ready to do it.

*Obs. A.* The adjective relating to an infinitive, taken in an absolute sense, is employed without zu. Hier ist gut wohnen, it is good living here. Wenig, aber gut arbeiten, ist großen Künstlern eigen, to work little, but well, is peculiar to great artists. (See *Obs. B.* Lesson XLII.)

*Obs. B.* The adjective which accompanies the substantive must agree with it in gender, number, and case. Say therefore: mein seliger Vater, my deceased father; drei rheinländische Fuß, three Rhenish feet; es ist schönes Wetter, it is fine weather; and never: mein Vater selig, drei Fuß rheinländisch, es ist schön Wetter, nor, es macht schön Wetter.

### C. THE NUMBER, das Zahlwort.

The adjective serves also to determine the signification of the noun by adding to it an idea of number; hence das Zahlwort, the numerical word. Ex.

Zehn Bäume, ten trees; acht Birnen, eight pears; sechs Häuser, six houses; den zweiten Buchstaben, the second letter; dritter Aufzug, third act; vierter Auftritt, fourth scene.

The numbers are divided into six classes, viz.

- |                                   |                          |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Cardinal or primitive numbers, | Haupt- oder Grundzahlen. |
| 2. Ordinal numbers,               | Ordnungszahlen.          |
| 3. Distributive numbers,          | Vertheilungszahlen.      |
| 4. Augmentative numbers,          | Vermehrungszahlen.       |
| 5. Fractional numbers,            | Bruchzahlen.             |
| 6. Collective numbers,            | Sammelnzahlen.           |

#### 1. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

They are indeclinable, and are used to answer the question wie viele? how many? (See Lesson XXI.)

- |               |                 |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. eins, one. | 3. drei, three. |
| 2. zwei, two. | 4. vier, four.  |

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 5. fünf, five.                                      | 72. zwei und siebenzig, seventy-two, &c.                                 |
| 6. sechs, six.                                      | 80. achtzig, eighty.   |
| 7. sieben, seven.                                   | 81. einundachtzig, eighty-one, &c.                                       |
| 8. acht, eight.                                     | 90. neunzig, ninety.   |
| 9. neun, nine.                                      | 91. ein und neunzig, ninety-one.   |
| 10. zehn <sup>2</sup> , ten.                        | 92. zwei und neunzig, ninety-two, &c.                                    |
| 11. elf (better than eilf), eleven.                 | 100. hundert, a or one hundred.  |
| 12. zwölf, twelve.                                  | 101. hundert und eins, a or one hundred and one. (See Note I, Lesson L.) |
| 13. dreizehn, thirteen.                             | 102. hundert und zwei, a or one hundred and two.                         |
| 14. vierzehn, fourteen.                             | 159. hundert neun und fünfzig, a or one hundred and fifty-nine.          |
| 15. fünfzehn (better than funfzehn), fifteen.       | 200. zwei hundert, two hundred.  |
| 16. sechzehn (or sechszehn), sixteen.               | 991. neun hundert ein und neunzig, nine hundred and ninety-one.          |
| 17. siebenzehn (or siebenzehn), seventeen.          | 1000. tausend, a or one thousand.  |
| 18. achtzehn, eighteen.                             | 10,000. zehn tausend, ten thousand.                                      |
| 19. neunzehn, nineteen.                             | 100,000. hundert tausend <sup>5</sup> , a or one hundred thousand.       |
| 20. zwanzig <sup>3</sup> , twenty.                  | 1,000,000. eine Million, a million.                                      |
| 21. ein und zwanzig, twenty-one.                    | 2,000,000. zwei Millionen, two millions, &c.                             |
| 22. zwei und zwanzig, twenty-two <sup>4</sup> , &c. |  |
| 30. dreißig, thirty.                                |  |
| 40. vierzig, forty.                                 |  |
| 50. fünfzig (better than funfzig), fifty.           |  |
| 60. sechzig (or sechszig), sixty.                   |  |
| 70. siebenzig (or siebenzig), seventy.              |  |
| 71. ein und siebenzig, seventy-one.                 |  |

*Obs. A.* Zwei, two, and drei, three, are declined, in taking in the Genitive er and in the Dative en; but when they are preceded or followed by a word determining the case, these terminations are useless. Ex.

One cannot serve two masters    Man kann nicht zweien Herren  
at the same time.                    zugleich dienen.

**2** From the first ten numbers are formed all the others up to ninety-nine.

**3** The tens from twenty to ninety are formed by the addition of zig to the units, except dreißig, thirty, where ßig is added.

**4** The units always precede the tens: zwei und zwanzig, not zwanzig zwei.

**5** Often the word mal, time, is added after the units of hundreds of thousands. Ex. 600,000, sechs mal hundert tausend, instead of sechs hundert tausend.

By means of three letters.      Mittelft dreier Briefe.  
He told these three gentlemen.      Er hat diesen drei Herren gesagt.

*Obs. B.* Uncertainty with respect to two cardinal numbers, is expressed by *bis*, *to*, and *oder*, *or*.      Ex.

Five or six weeks.      Fünf bis sechs Wochen.  
From four to five feet long.      Vier bis fünf Fuß lang.  
During two or three days.      Zwei oder drei Tage lang.

*Obs. C.* By the addition of *er* to a cardinal number a masculine substantive is formed.      Ex.

A man forty years old.      Ein Vierziger.  
A sexagenarian.      Ein Sechziger.  
A man seventy years of age.      Ein Siebziger.

*Obs. D.* Some words, denoting weight, measure, or quantity, do not admit of the plural after a cardinal number (See *Obs. D.* Lesson LXVII.), as the following:

The man (meaning a soldier).	Der Mann.
A quire (of paper).	Das Buch.
The dozen.	Das Duzend.
The foot (measure).	Der Fuß (Schuh).
Half an ounce.	Das Loth.
The pot or quart (measure).	Die Maß.
A ream (of paper).	Das Ries.
The pound.	Das Pfund.
The pair.	Das Paar.
The piece.	Das Stück.
An inch.	Der Zoll.

Exceptions are :

1. Feminine words terminating in *e*, as :

The ell, the minute.	Die Elle, die Minute.
The hour, the week.	Die Stunde, die Woche.

2. The following words :

The day, the century, the head.	Der Tag, das Jahrhundert, der Kopf.
---------------------------------	-------------------------------------

3. All the names of coins, as :

Twelve deniers make a grosh.	Zwölf Pfennige machen einen Groschen.
------------------------------	---------------------------------------

*Obs. E.* The fractions of an hour are always joined to the hour that follows. (See Lesson XXXIV. and XXXV.) **Ex.**

It is a quarter past one.	Es ist ein Viertel auf zwei.
It is half past twelve.	Es ist halb eins.
It wants a quarter to one.	Es ist drei Viertel auf eins.
It is ten minutes past one.	Es ist zehn Minuten auf zwei.

## 2. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

They are used to answer the question *der, die, das wievielte?* which, in numerical order (in Latin *quotus?*). They are declined like adjectives. (See Lesson XXIII.) **Ex.**

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
Erster,	erste,	erstes.	First.
der	die,	das erste.	The first.
ein erster,	eine erste,	ein erstes.	A first.

### *Plural for all genders.*

Die Ersten, the first.

Der Zweite, the second;	der Zwei und zwanzigste, the
der Dritte, the third;	twenty-second;
der Vierte, the fourth;	der Drei und zwanzigste, the
der Fünfte, the fifth;	twenty-third;
der Sechste, the sixth;	der Dreißigste, the thirtieth;
der Zehnte, the tenth;	der Hundertste, the hundredth;
der Elfte, the eleventh;	der Hundert und erste, the hun-
der Neunzehnte, the nineteenth;	dred and first;
der Zwanzigste, the twentieth;	der Tausendste, the thousandth;
der Ein und zwanzigste, the twenty-	&c.
first;	

*Obs.* Ordinal numbers are employed:

### 1. To mark the date. **Ex.**

We have to-day the first of June. Wir haben heute den ersten Juni.  
London, June the first. London 6, den ersten Juni.

In marking the date from the birth of Christ, however, cardinal numbers are employed. **Ex.**

In the year one thousand eight hundred and thirty-nine. Im Jahre ein tausend, acht hundert neun und dreißig. (See Lesson XXIII.)

### 2. After proper names, as in English. **Ex.**

6 Understood: wir haben, or: wir schreiben.

Henry the fourth.  
Lewis the fourteenth.  
Charles the first.

Heinrich der Vierte.  
Ludwig der Vierzehnte.  
Karl der Erste.

### 3. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

These numbers are real adverbs, and are therefore indeclinable.

Erstens (better than erstlich), firstly;  
zweitens, secondly;  
drittens, thirdly;  
viertens, fourthly, &c.

*Obs. A.* To these numbers belong those which we may call *variatives*. They are formed from the genitive of cardinal numbers and *lei*, an ancient word meaning kind, species. They are employed to answer the question *wie vielerlei?* how many kinds? Ex.

Einerlei, of one kind;	allerlei (or allerhand), of all kinds;
zweierlei, of two kinds;	keinerlei, of no kind;
dreierlei, of three kinds;	mancherlei, of various kinds;
hunderterlei, of a hundred kinds;	vielerlei, of many kinds.
tausenderlei, of a thousand kinds;	

*Obs. B.* To these numbers also belong those which we may name *partitive* numbers. They are used to answer the question *wieviel jedes Mal?* how many each time? Ex.

Je <sup>7</sup> eins und eins,	} one	zu dreien, three together;
or simply: eins und eins,		zu hundertern, by hundreds;
or: einzeln,	} at a time;	zu tausenden, by thousands;
je zwei und zwei,		paarweise <sup>8</sup> , by pairs, in couples;
or: zwei und zwei,	} two at a time;	dußendweise, by dozens, &c.
zu zweien, two together;		

### 4. AUGMENTATIVE NUMBERS.

They are formed by compounding cardinal numbers with the syllables, *fach*, *fältig*, *mal*. *Fach* is a substantive signifying division, compartment, and *fältig* is derived from *die Falte*, the fold; *mal* means time. These numbers

<sup>7</sup> Je is an adverb, signifying *ever*, *at a time*.

<sup>8</sup> Weise is a substantive meaning *manner*, joined to collective numbers. (See 6th class hereafter,

are used to answer the questions: wie vielfach? wie vielfältig? wie vielmal? Ex.

Einfach, einfältig <sup>9</sup> , simple;	vielfach, vielfältig, fourfold;
zweifach, zweifältig (doppelt), two-fold (double);	hundertfach, hundertfältig, a hundredfold;
dreifach, dreifältig, threefold (treble);	tausendfach, or fältig, a thousandfold; &c.
Einmal, once,	hundertmal, a hundred times;
zweimal, twice;	tausendmal, a thousand times; &c.
dreimal, thrice or three times;	

### 5. FRACTIONAL NUMBERS.

They are formed from ordinal numbers and the termination *tel*, which is derived from the substantive *der Theil*, the part. They are all neuter substantives with the exception of *die Hälfte*, derived from the word *halb*, half. Ex.

Die Hälfte, the half;	das Fünftel, the fifth part;
das Drittel, the third part;	das Sechstel, the sixth part; &c.
das Viertel, the fourth part (a quarter);	

*Obs. A.* The English numbers accompanied by the word *half* are formed in German from the ordinal numbers combined with the word *halb*. They are not declined, and require the substantive which follows them in the plural. (See *Obs. C.* Lesson LXVII.) Ex.

One hour and a half.	Underthalf Stunden.
Two crowns and a half.	Dritthalf Thaler (zwei und ein halber Thaler).
One pound and a half.	Underthalf Pfund <sup>10</sup> , ein und ein halbes Pfund.

*Obs. B.* The following also belong to the fractional numbers:

Three pounds and three quarters.	Drei und drei viertel Pfund.
Six months.	Ein halbes Jahr.
Three months (a quarter).	Ein Vierteljahr.

<sup>9</sup> Einfältig is generally used in the signification of silly, stupid.

<sup>10</sup> See *Obs. D.* of cardinal numbers.

A quarter of a yard.	Eine Viertelelle.
Nine months (three quarters).	Drei Vierteljahr.
Eighteen months.	Unerthhalb Jahr <sup>11</sup> .

### 6. COLLECTIVE NUMBERS.

They are substantives denoting a fixed number, as :

The pair, das Paar;	the number of sixty, das Schoß;
the dozen, das Duzend,	the hundred, das Hundert;
the number of fifteen, das Mandel.	the thousand, das Tausend.

### EXERCISES. 254.

Does your little brother know his lesson?—I think he knows it; if you will hear him, he will say (*hersagen*) it to you.—I will ask him questions (*fragen*), let him answer me.—Listen to me, my little man (*Kleiner*); who discovered (*entdecken*) America?—Christopher Columbus (*Colombo*).—In what year did he discover it?—In the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two.—Where was gunpowder (*das Schießpulver*) invented (*erfinden*\*)?—It was invented at Cologne by a monk (*der Mönch*), called (*Namens*) Barthold Swartz, in the year one thousand three hundred and eighty-two.—Where was printing (*die Buchdruckerkunst*) invented?—At Mentz by John Gutenberg, in the year one thousand four hundred and forty.—By whom was the compass (*der Seecompaß*) invented?—By John Goya, a Neapolitan (See Lesson LXXXVIII.) in the year one thousand three hundred and three.—Where were watches invented?—At Nuremberg by a citizen, named Peter Hele, in the year one thousand five hundred.—Who invented air-balloons (*der Luftballon*)?—They were invented by Messieurs Mongolfier, in the year seventeen hundred and eighty-three.—What is (*wieviel Meilen hat*) the circumference (*im Umfange*) of the earth?—Nine thousand (French) leagues<sup>12</sup>.—How many is it (*wie viel hat sie deren*) in diameter (*im Durchmesser*)?—Two thousand eight hundred and forty-two.—How many inhabitants are there (*leben*) in the (*auf der*)

<sup>11</sup> See *Obs. D.* of cardinal numbers.

<sup>12</sup> Five French leagues make three German miles.

world?—About a thousand millions.—How many are there in Europe?—About a hundred and thirty millions.—How many in Germany?—About twenty-eight millions.—How many towns are there in Germany?—Two thousand three hundred.—And how many boroughs (der Flecken) and villages?—About eighty thousand.

255.

How many leagues is (hat) Paris in circumference?—With its twelve suburbs (die Vorstadt), it is five leagues in circumference.—How many inhabitants does it contain (zählt man daselbst)?—They reckon (man zählt) eight hundred thousand inhabitants, a thousand streets, fifty thousand houses, four hundred churches, twenty-six hospitals (das Spital), twenty bridges (die Brücke), and four thousand lamps (die Straßenlaterne).—Seventy-seven thousand oxen, a hundred and twenty thousand calves, five hundred and forty thousand sheep, and thirty-two thousand pigs (das Schwein, *pl. =e*) are annually (jährlich) consumed (verzehren) there.—How much brain (das Gehirn) has a man?—A man who weighs (wiegen\*) a hundred pounds generally has four pounds of brain: no animal has so much. An ox that weighs from eight to nine hundred weight (der Zentner), has only one pound. They reckon (man zählt) in the human body (der menschliche Körper) two hundred and forty-nine bones (der Knochen), namely (nämlich): fourteen in the forehead, forty-six in the other parts of the head and throat (der Hals), sixty-seven in the trunk (der Rumpf), sixty-two in the arms and hands, and sixty in the legs and feet. The bones (die Gebeine) of the human body are (betragen) the third part of its weight (die Schwere). A full-grown (ausgewachsen) man has from twenty to twenty-five pounds of blood, which pass from eighteen to twenty times in an hour through the heart.

256.

What do the astronomers say?—They say that the sun is a million times bigger than the earth, and that a cannon ball (die Kanonenkugel), sent from the latter to the sun (die von der Erde nach der Sonne abginge), would

take (brauchen) five and twenty years to reach it (bis sie dahin käme), if it retained its original rapidity (die erste Geschwindigkeit). This cannon ball (diese Kugel nun), moving at the rate of (welche—durchläuft) one hundred fathoms in one second (die Sekunde), would traverse (zurücklegen) one hundred and eighty leagues in one hour. Consequently (folglich, demnach) it would go thirty-nine millions, four hundred and twenty thousand leagues ere it reached (kommen\*) the sun—which is the distance between it and the earth. The sun revolves through (durchläuft) the twelve signs (das Zeichen) of the Zodiac (der Thierkreis), in three hundred and sixty-five days and six hours all but (weniger) eleven minutes; this makes a common year (welches ein gemeines Jahr ausmacht). To bring in these six hours, a day is added to every fourth year, which has then three hundred and sixty-six days, and is called leap-year (das Schaltjahr). This addition (der Zusatz oder die Hinzufügung) is made (geschehen\*) in the month (of) February. As, however (da indessen), at the end of (nach Verlauf von) four hundred years the eleven minutes wanting (See  Lesson XCV.) would make three days, three leap-years are omitted (entziehen\*, übergehen\*) in the course (während) of three hundred years (das Jahrhundert). This is done by adding no bissextile day (der Schalttag) to the first year in three successive centuries (die auf einander folgenden Jahrhunderte).

257.

Have you still the twenty thousand francs you won in the lottery (die Lotterie)?—I have still the half.—Did you give none of it to your poor friend?—I gave him fifty crowns.—How many children has your friend?—I think he has more than ten.—How many wives then has he had?—He has already had two, and has now a third, who is very accomplished (Talente besitzen\*), but not a good housewife (die Haushälterin).—How many wives have you had?—This is my first, and I hope never to have another.

The Greenlanders are generally (überhaupt) short (klein), and thick-set (untersetzt); their height (die Größe) does not exceed (nicht mehr betragen\* als) four feet. Their face is broad and flat, their nose turned up (stumpf) and squat (eingedrückt), a very wide mouth, thick lips (die Lippe), and their skin (die Haut) of a dark olive colour (dunkel-olivengrün). They never wash themselves (sich waschen); they have neither linen, nor bread, nor wine, nor money. Their clothes are made of (von) seal-skins (das Seehundsfell, *pl. =e*). They live on (von) meat and fish (in the plur.) only, and bear (ertragen\*) hunger with wonderful (unglaublich) fortitude (die Standhaftigkeit). They eat their meat sometimes cooked (gekocht), sometimes raw (roh), dried (gedörret), or half rotten (halb verfault), as (je nachdem) hunger prompts (dazu antreiben\*) them. They have neither doctors nor surgeons (der Wundarzt); they are seldom ill, and attain to (erreichen) a fair old age (das ziemlich hohe Alter). The Greenlanders have no other occupation (die Beschäftigung) but fishing (die Fischerei, der Fischfang) and hunting (die Jagd). The women keep their houses in order (besorgen die Häuser), make the clothes, and cook (die Küche besorgen); when they have nothing to do in doors (zu Hause), they go out hunting (auf die Jagd) or fishing with their husbands. Envy (der Neid), hatred (der Haß), robbery (der Diebstahl), treachery (die Verrätherei) are unknown (unbekannt) amongst them. These people consider (schätzen) themselves happier than any other nation that does not possess sea-dogs (der Seehund).

258.

Four swindlers (der Abenteurer) having feasted (sich gütlich thun\*) at an inn (das Wirthshaus) asked for the bill (die Zechen); the waiter (der Kellner) brought it them. One of the four pretended to put his hand in his pocket, another stopped (abhalten\*) him, and said he would pay; the third did the same (sich ebenso anstellen); the fourth at last said to the waiter: "I forbid (verbieten\*) your taking the money from these gentlemen; I will pay." As none were willing to give in (nachgeben\*)

one of them exclaimed (ausrufen\*): "I know a way of settling it between us (sich vereinigen); the waiter shall allow us to blindfold (verbinden\*) his eyes, and the one of us that he catches (ergreifen\*), shall pay the reckoning (die Zeché)." This proposal (der Vorschlag) met with general approbation (allgemein angenommen werden\*); the waiter willingly acceded to it (dazu bereit seyn\*), he even offered (hergeben\*) his handkerchief and allowed himself to be blindfolded. The four pick-pockets (der Schelm) took advantage of the moment (den Augenblick benutzen) whilst he hunted for them, by feeling all about the room (in dem ganzen Zimmer nach Jemandem herumtappen), and escaped (sich davon machen) as soon as they could (schleunig). The inn-keeper (der Wirth) came up stairs, suspecting all was not quite right (Etwas merken); the blind man caught hold of (ergreifen\*) him, and said: "Faith (meiner Treue), it is you shall pay me the reckoning."

---

## HUNDRED AND EIGHTH LESSON. — Hundert und achte Section.

### 4. THE PRONOUN, das Fürwort.

The Latin word *pro*, meaning for, explains sufficiently that the pronoun stands in the place of a noun or substantive, to recall the idea of it, and to avoid repetitions sometimes disagreeable. Ex. der Vater befiehlt seinen Kindern, daß sie den Befehlen gehorchen sollen, die er ihnen gibt; denn er weiß, daß dieselben ihr Glück befördern, the father recommends *his* children to obey the injunctions *which he gives them*, for *he* knows that *those* injunctions will promote *their* happiness.

Pronouns are either substantive-pronouns or adjective-pronouns.

1. Those that may stand alone are called substantive or absolute pronouns (alleinstehende Fürwörter). Ex. ich, I;

Sie, you; der Meinige, mine; der Ihrige, yours; wer, who; &c.

2. Those that generally precede a substantive are termed adjective-pronouns (*adjectivische Fürwörter*). Ex. dieser Mann, this man; jene Frau, that woman; dasselbe Kind, the same child; &c.

All pronouns, with the exception of personal and interrogative pronouns, may be considered as adjective-pronouns.

The pronouns are divided into six classes, viz.

1 *Personal pronouns* (*persönliche Fürwörter oder Personwörter*) are those pronouns by which the relation of the person speaking, spoken to, or spoken of, is expressed: *e. g.* ich, I; Du, thou; er, he; sie, she; es, it; wir, we; Ihr (Sie), you; sie, they; sich, himself, herself, itself, themselves<sup>1</sup>. See *Table of the declension of personal pronouns*, Lesson XXX., Note 1 Lesson XXXIII., *Obs.* Lesson LXXXII., and  *B. C.* Lesson LXXXVIII.

2. *Possessive pronouns* (*zueignende Fürwörter*) recall to mind the substantive by adding to it an idea of possession. They are formed from the genitive cases singular and plural of personal pronouns, and are *a*) either *substantive pronouns*, as: meiner, meine, meines; plur. meine; der Meinige, die Meinige, das Meinige; plur. die Meinigen, mine<sup>2</sup> (See *Obs.* Lesson IX. Lesson XVII. and LXXXI); *b*) or *adjective pronouns*, as: mein Bruder, my brother; meine Schwester, my sister; mein Buch, my book; meine Brüder, my brothers; meine Schwestern, my sisters; meine Bücher, my books<sup>3</sup>. (See Lessons IV. XII. XVII. XXI. and LXXX.)

<sup>1</sup> *Sich* is employed in the third person singular and plural, whether the verb governs the dative or accusative, to express the objective case of the agent referring to the same person as the nominative. (See *reflective verbs*, Lesson LXXII.)

<sup>2</sup> As well as: der, die, das Deinige, Seinige, Ihrige, Unsrige, Eurige, Ihrige, die Deinigen, &c.

<sup>3</sup> And consequently also: Dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer (Ihr), hr, &c.

3. *Demonstrative pronouns* (hinweisende oder zeigende Fürwörter) are of two kinds: *a*) either *demonstrative pronouns* expressing a relation of place, with respect to the person who speaks, as: dieser, diese, dieses, this; jener, jene, jenes, that, and their substitute der, die, das (See Lessons VIII. XIII. XVI. LXII. and LXXX.); *b*) or *determinative pronouns* (bestimmende Fürwörter) designating beforehand the person or thing to which the relative pronoun, which always follows them, relates, as: derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, that or the one, and their substitute der, die, das; derselbe (anciently derselbige), dieselbe, dasselbe, the same; solcher, solche, solches, such. (See Lessons XIV. XVI. XXXVIII. LXII. and LXXXIV.)

4. *Relative pronouns* (bezügliche Fürwörter) which relate to a person or thing previously designated, *e. g.* welcher, welche, welches, and its substitute der, die, das, that or which; wer (for derjenige, welcher), he who; was (for dasjenige, welches) that which. (See Lessons XIV. XVI. and LXII.)

5. *Interrogative pronouns* (fragende Fürwörter) serve to ask questions about persons or things, *e. g.* wer? who? was? what? (Lesson XXXI.) welcher? welche? welches? which? (Lessons V. XVI. LXXX.) was für ein? what? (Lessons XXI. and LXXXV.—See also Lessons LXII. and LXVI.)

6. *Indefinite pronouns* (unbestimmte Fürwörter) express persons or things in an indefinite manner. Some of them are substantive pronouns, others are substantive and adjective pronouns at the same time. The following are always substantive pronouns:

Man, one, people, they, or any one. (Lesson L.)	Jemand, somebody or anybody, some one or any one. (Lesson XII.)
Es, it. (Lesson XLV.)	
Etwas, any thing, something, some. (Lessons VII. and LIII.)	Niemand, no one, nobody, or not anybody. (Lesson XII.)
Nichts, not any thing, nothing. (Lesson VII.)	Jedermann, every one, every body. (Lesson LXX.)

The following are substantive and adjective pronouns at the same time:

Ein, eine, ein, a or an (one); plur. die einen, the one. (Lessons XX. XXV. and LXXX.)

Kein, keine, kein, no, none, not a, or not any; plur. keine, no, none, or not any. (Lessons XIX. and LXXX.)

Einige, } a few. (Lessons XXIII. and LXXX.)  
 Etliche, }

Mehre or mehrere, many. } (Lessons XXV. and LXXX.)  
 Verschiedene, several. }

Mancher, manche, manches, plur. manche, many a one, some. (Lesson LXXX.)

Ander, other. (Lessons XXIII. and LXXX.)

All, all, every. (Lessons XXXIV. LI. and LXXX.)

Jeder, jede, jedes, each, or each one. (Lesson LXXII.)

Beide, both. (Lessons XXIV. and LXXI.)

Einander, each other. (Lesson LXXXVIII.)

Selbst or selber, self, selves, (Lesson XCI.) } are indeclin-  
 Allein, alone, (Lesson LXX.) } able.

### OBSERVATIONS.

A. When the possessive adjective pronouns are employed as predicates after the verb *seyn*\*, to be, and simply signify possession, they are like adjectives not declined. Ex.

This garden is mine.	Dieser Garten ist mein.
The rose is thine.	Die Rose ist Dein.
The house is his, ours, yours.	Das Haus ist sein, unser, euer.

B. In the third person plural however the possessive pronoun must not be employed; we then make use of *ihnen*, dative case of the personal pronouns, but with another verb<sup>4</sup>. Ex.

To whom does this book belong?	Wem gehört dieses Buch?
It belongs to them.	Es gehört ihnen.

<sup>4</sup> Do not say: *dieser Garten ist ihnen*, but: *dieser Garten gehört ihnen*; not: *sind diese Bücher Ihren Brüdern?* Ja, sie sind ihnen, but: *gehören diese Bücher Ihren Brüdern?* Ja, sie gehören ihnen. Do these books belong to your brothers? Yes, they belong to them.

*C.* In familiar discourse the dative cases: *mir, to me; Dir, to thee, &c.* are made use of merely as expletives<sup>5</sup>; a mode of expression which is quite contrary to the genius of the English language<sup>6</sup>. Ex.

Thou wilt become a clever fellow one day.	† Du wirst mir einmal ein feiner Gast werden.
It was a splendid thing!	† Das war Dir eine Pracht!
They were real heroes.	† Das waren Ihnen wahre Helden.

*D.* The possessive pronouns of the third person: *sein, his; ihr, her,* may be employed whenever the English pronoun *its* stands for the possessive. Ex.

The town of Hanau is regularly built, and <i>its</i> position is beautiful.	Die Stadt Hanau ist regelmäßig gebaut, und ihre Lage ist schön.
The Schwalbach water is good, and <i>its</i> efficacy is known.	Das Schwalbacher Wasser ist gut, und seine Wirkung ist bekannt.

*E.* The genitives *dessen, deren,* however, are often preferred to the possessive pronoun, particularly when confusion is to be avoided. Ex.

The consul applied to the senate, because he trusted to <i>its</i> courage.	Der Consul wendete sich an den Senat, weil er auf dessen <sup>7</sup> Muth traute.
They conquered the town and chastised <i>its</i> inhabitants.	Sie eroberten die Stadt und züchtigten deren Einwohner.
The human body and <i>its</i> functions.	Der menschliche Körper und dessen Verrichtungen.
I read your letter and admired <i>its</i> style.	Ich habe Ihren Brief gelesen und dessen Styl (oder den Styl desselben) bewundert.

*F.* The English possessive pronoun is often translated into German by a personal pronoun. Ex.

5 A good author generally avoids those kinds of expression.

6 Even the dative of man is sometimes used in a similar way. Ex. *D, das* schmeckte so süß, und zerschmilzt Einem im Munde. Oh, that was so sweet, and it melts in one's mouth (See die Pflirsche, the Peach, a tale by Krummacher, in the first section of the Literary Companion by Mr. Gands.)

7 *Dessen* stands here for *seinen*, which if used would make it uncertain whether the courage of the senate or that of the consul was meant.

He fell round <i>my</i> neck.	† Er fiel mir um den Hals.
I fell down at <i>his</i> feet.	† Ich fiel ihm zu Füßen.
Come to <i>my</i> help.	† Kommen Sie mir zu Hilfe.
We fell down at <i>their</i> knees.	† Wir fielen vor ihnen auf die Kniee.
It is <i>my</i> turn and not <i>yours</i> .	† Die Reihe ist an mir und nicht an Ihnen.
He is <i>my</i> good friend.	† Er ist ein guter Freund von mir <sup>s</sup> .
One can see that <i>his</i> leg is swelling.	† Man sieht, daß ihm das Bein schwillt.

**G.** The definite article sometimes takes the place of the possessive pronoun, when the sense of the sentence cannot be mistaken. Ex.

He is always upon <i>his</i> legs.	† Er ist immer auf den Beinen.
He thinks he has a mist before <i>his</i> eyes.	† Er glaubt einen Nebel vor den Augen zu haben.
<i>My</i> father has told it me.	† Der Vater hat es mir gesagt.
I gave it to <i>my</i> mother.	† Ich habe es der Mutter gegeben.
He put it into <i>his</i> pocket.	† Er steckte es in die Tasche.
I have sprained <i>my</i> leg.	† Ich habe mir das Bein verrenkt.
He has cut <i>his</i> throat.	† Er hat sich den Hals abgeschnitten.

**H.** The English substantive possessive pronouns, *mine, thine, &c.*, are often translated into German by the adjective possessive pronouns either in the genitive or in the dative with *von*. (See Lesson LV.) Ex.

A friend of mine.	{ Einer meiner Freunde, or Einer von meinen Freunden.
An acquaintance of ours.	{ Einer unserer Bekannten, or Einer von unsern Bekannten.
A book of his.	{ Eins seiner Bücher, or Eins von seinen Büchern.

**I.** Sometimes the possessive pronoun is used in English when it is not used in German. *E. g.*

I love him with all <i>my</i> heart.	† Ich liebe ihn von ganzem Herzen.
She loves God with all <i>her</i> soul.	† Sie liebt Gott von ganzer Seele.

<sup>s</sup> Er ist mein guter Freund, may equally be said.

She does good with all *her* power. † Sie thut das Gute aus allen Kräften.  
 He does *his* best. † Er thut, was er kann.  
 I shall be grateful to you all † Ich werde Ihnen lebenslang  
*my* life. dankbar seyn.

**J.** We sometimes repeat the article or the substantive when the English use the demonstrative pronoun *that*, or *one*. Ex.

The most important newspapers † Die wichtigsten Zeitungen sind  
 are not *those* of to-day, but nicht die heutigen, sondern die  
*those* of yesterday. gestrigen.  
 The pewter-dish is smaller than † Die zinnerne Schüssel ist kleiner  
 the silver *one*. als die silberne.  
 Have you the gold or silver † Haben Sie den goldenen oder  
 stick? I have the gold *one*. den silbernen Stoc? Ich habe  
 den goldenen.  
 The beauty of the soul heightens † Die Schönheit der Seele erhö-  
*that* of the body. het die Schönheit des Körpers.  
 We must refuse the presents of † Wir müssen die Geschenke der  
 flatterers and *those* of our ene- Schmeichler und unserer Feinde  
 mies. anschlagen.

**K.** When the pronouns Jemand, some one, any one; Niemand, no one, not any one; Etwas, anything, something; Nichts, not anything, nothing, are followed by an adjective, it is put in the neuter gender. *E. g.*

That is something new. Das ist etwas Neues.  
 Do you not know anything new? Wissen Sie nichts Neues?  
 Come in, there is no stranger Kommen Sie herein, es ist Nie-  
 here. mand Fremdes da.  
 Do you not know the foreigners Kennen Sie die Fremden nicht, die  
 who lodge at the Roman Em- im Römischen Kaiser logiren?  
 peror? No, but I think they Nein, aber ich glaube doch, daß  
 are people of distinction (peo- sie etwas Rechtes (etwas Bor-  
 ple of rank or note.) nehmes, oder nichts Geringes)  
 sind.  
 The man whom we saw, must Der Mann, den wir gesehen ha-  
 be a person of note (of no ben, muß Jemand Rechtes (Nie-  
 distinction). mand Bornehmes) seyn.  
 Somebody else must have said it. Jemand Anders wird es gesagt  
 haben.  
 None of us had the presence of Keins von uns war so klug, daß  
 mind to open the window. es das Fenster aufgemacht hätte.

OF TITLES AND POLITE FORMS,  
WHICH THE GERMANS OBSERVE IN THEIR CONVERSATION,  
AND PARTICULARLY IN THEIR EPISTOLARY STYLE.

In speaking to a person whom we do not know well, and when no title or proper name is added, the word *Herr*, sir, or *Fräulein*, lady, must be preceded by the possessive pronoun *mein*. Ex.

Allow me, sir.	Erlauben Sie, mein Herr.
Pardon me, my lady.	Verzeihen Sie, mein Fräulein.

But when these words are preceded by an adjective, as, *gnädig*, gracious, which designates respect, and which is employed in speaking to persons of rank, or when the title or the family name of the person spoken to is added, as politeness requires it, the possessive pronoun *mein* is omitted. Ex.

Permit me, my lord (gracious sir).	Erlauben Sie, gnädiger Herr.
How do you do, my lady (gracious lady)?	Wie befinden Sie sich, gnädiges Fräulein?
Count. Baron.	Herr Graf. Herr Baron.
Mr. de G. Counsellor.	Herr von G. Herr Rath.
Mr. Wolf.	Herr Wolf.

The word *Frau* is employed in speaking to ladies of rank. Sometimes it is followed by the preposition *von*, sometimes it is added to the title of the person spoken to. It is also employed before the proper name of a woman in the inferior classes of society, or added to a name designating the profession of the husband. Ex.

How do you do, my lady (gracious lady)?	Wie befinden Sie sich, gnädige Frau?
Mrs. de Stahl. Lady counsellor (meaning the lady of a counsellor).	Frau von Stahl. Frau Rätin.
Mrs. Wolf. Landlady.	Frau Wolf. Frau Wirthin.
The wife of a baker.	Bäckersfrau.

*Obs. A.* In the greatest part of Germany the words *Madam* and *Mamsell*, abridged from the French words *Madame* and *Mademoiselle*, are now substituted for the titles *Frau* and *Jungfer*, which are still sometimes used in the inferior classes of society.

We generally range the epistolary ceremonial forms in three divisions, viz.

1. *Inscription*, *Anrede*, which is the way of addressing any one.
2. *Subscription*, *Schluß*, which is the way of finishing a letter.
3. *Address*, *Aufschrift*, which is put outside or upon the letter.

### I. INSCRIPTION, *Anrede*.

We use in the German epistolary style certain epithets which designate the rank of, as well as the respect and affection we profess for, the person to whom we write. These epithets are adjectives expressing *excellence, power, clemency, birth, &c.*; e. g. *durchlauchtig, serene; mächtig, powerful; gnädig, gracious; geboren, born.* These adjectives are modified according to the difference of conditions, in combining them with one of the adverbs, *aller, hoch, höchst, wohl, edel, viel, insonders* or *besonders, freundlich, herzlich, &c.* By the combination of these adjectives and adverbs, which are sometimes put in the positive, sometimes in the superlative, the following epithets are formed, which are employed according to the degree of politeness we wish to observe.

<i>Durchlauchtig, durchlauchtigst, al-</i>	born, most high born, right
<i>lerdurchlauchtigst, serene, most</i>	honourable, &c.
<i>serene.</i>	<i>Edler, wohlledler, hochwohlledler,</i>
<i>Großmächtigst, allergroßmächtigst,</i>	<i>hochedler, noble, very noble,</i>
<i>most powerful.</i>	<i>most noble.</i>
<i>Unüberwindlichst, most invincible.</i>	<i>Würdig, ehrwürdig, wohllehrwür-</i>
<i>Gnädig, gnädigst, allergnädigst,</i>	<i>dig, hochwohllehrwürdig, hoch-</i>
<i>gracious, most gracious.</i>	<i>ehrwürdig, hochwürdig, hoch-</i>
<i>Edelgeboren, wohlledelgeboren,</i>	<i>würdigst, reverend, very re-</i>
<i>hochwohlledelgeboren, hochedel-</i>	<i>verend, right reverend, &amp;c.</i>
<i>geboren, wohlgeboren, hochwohl-</i>	<i>Hochgebietend, höchstgebietend<sup>10</sup> &amp;c.</i>
<i>geboren<sup>9</sup>, high born, very high</i>	<i>dread, powerful, most powerful.</i>

<sup>9</sup> All these words relate to birth, and are compounded of *geboren, born.*

<sup>10</sup> These words are derived from *gebieten\**, to command, and denote subordination.

Gelehrt, wohlgelehrt, hochwohlgelehrt, hochgelehrt, learned, very learned, most learned.	Geliebt, vielgeliebt, herzlichgeliebt, beloved, very beloved, most beloved.
Geehrt, insonders geehrt, hochgeehrt, hochgeehrtet, hochzuehrend, honoured, highly honoured, most honoured.	Werth, sehr werth, werthbest, hochwerthbest, dear, worthy, very worthy, most worthy.
Geneigt, hochgeneigt, favourable, propitions.	Geschätzt, werthgeschätzt, hoch- und werthgeschätzt, hochgeschätzt, esteemed, very esteemed, most esteemed, &c.

The difference of rank and condition of persons writing to each other, produces great alterations in these titles. The epithet of gnädig, for instance, is given to a nobleman only by those who are not themselves of rank, or invested with an office which puts them on an equal footing with people of rank. Dukes and princes receive the title of Durchlaucht; princes of royal blood that of Hoheit. The title of Excellenz is given to ministers; that of Hochgeboren to counts and barons; that of Hochwohlgeboren to noblemen; and that of Hochedelgeboren to merchants<sup>11</sup>. Hochwürden is the title of bishops and other personages of high ecclesiastical dignity; Hochwohlehrwürden that of doctors and professors of theology and clergymen; Wohlehrwürden that of country-clergymen.

In writing to personages of high titles, such as: Majestät, majesty; Durchlaucht, serene highness; Hoheit, highness, &c., these titles must be preceded by the possessive pronoun of the second person Eure, your, which then is abridged into Ew.; for anciently it was Ewere. Ex.

Ew. Majestät,	Your Majesty.
„ Kaiserliche Majestät,	„ Imperial Majesty.
„ Königliche Majestät,	„ Royal Majesty.
„ Hoheit,	„ Highness.
„ Königliche Hoheit,	„ Royal Highness.
„ Durchlaucht,	„ Serene Highness.
„ Kurfürstliche Durchlaucht,	„ Electoral Highness.
„ Hochfürstliche Durchlaucht,	„ Most Serene Highness.
„ Excellenz,	„ Excellency.

<sup>11</sup> Amongst themselves merchants make use of no title whatsoever in their correspondence.

Er. Hochgräfliche Excellenz (to a reigning count),	Your Most Illustrious Excellency.
" Freiherrliche Excellenz (to an ancient baron, possessing immediate property),	" Most Illustrious Excellency.
" Gnaden (to noblemen),	" Grace.
" Freiherrliche Gnaden (to barons),	" Grace.
" Hochgräfliche Gnaden (to counts),	" Grace.
" Heiligkeit,	" Holiness.
" Eminenz,	" Eminence.
" Hochwürden, Hohehrwürden, Hochwohlehrwürden, Wohl- ehrwürden (from hochwürdig, hohehrwürdig, &c.),	" Reverence, &c.
" Hochgeboren, Hochwohlgebo- ren, Wohlgeboren, Hochedel- geboren, Hochwohledelgeboren (from hochgeboren, hochwohl- geboren, wohlgeboren, &c.)	" illustrious, noble, very no- ble, right honourable, most noble, &c.
" Hochedeln, Hochwohledeln, &c. (from hochedel, hochwohledel, &c.).	" Noble, most noble.

*Obs. B.* In conversation Ihre (third person plural) is almost always employed instead of Eure (Er.). Ex.

Your Excellency will permit me. Ihre Excellenz werden mir er-  
lauben.

*Obs. C.* In speaking of those personages the pronouns of the third person are employed which, out of respect, are then written with capital initial letters. Ex.

His Imperial Majesty.	{ Seine Majestät der Kaiser.
	{ Seine Kaiserliche Majestät.
His Royal Majesty.	{ Seine Majestät der König.
	{ Seine Königliche Majestät.
Her Royal Majesty.	Ihre Majestät die Königin.
Her Highness the Duchess.	Ihre Durchlaucht die Frau Herz- zogin.
Their Majesties.	Ihre Majestäten.

## II. SUBSCRIPTION, Schluß.

The formulas of submission are the following:

Untertänig, untertänigst, aller- untertänigst,	humble or humbly, most humble or most humbly, submissive, most submissive.
Gehorsam, gehorsamst, ganz ge- horsamst, treugehorsamst,	obedient, most obedient, &c.
Ergeben, ergebenst, ganz ergebenst,	devoted, most devoted.
Geneigt,	affectionate.
Dienstwillig or dienstbereitwillig, dienstwilligst or dienstbereitwil- ligst,	ready to serve, most ready to serve, &c.

Allerunterthänigst or untertänigst is employed towards sovereigns; untertänig, untertänigst, and gehorsamst towards our superiors; treugehorsamst towards our tutors and parents; gehorsam, gehorsamst, ergeben, ergebenst, towards our equals; dienstergebenst, dienstbereitwilligst, and dienstwilligst, towards our inferiors.

These formulas go with the qualifications: Allergnädigst, gnädig, höchst- or hochgeneigt or geneigtest, gütigst, &c., according to the different degrees of politeness one wishes to observe. We write, *e. g.*

*To an Emperor.*

(Inscription, Anrede.)

Allergnädigster, Großmächtigster und Unüberwindlichster  
Kaiser, Allergnädigster Kaiser und Herr.

(In the middle of the letter, im Kontext, im Briefe selbst.)

Ew. Kaiserliche Majestät (or Allerhöchstdieselben) erlau-  
ben allergnädigst, daß, u. s. w.

(Subscription, Schluß.)

Der ich in tiefster Unterwürfigkeit verharre  
Eurer Kaiserlichen Majestät  
allerunterthänigster gehorsamster Knecht.

*Obs.* For a King the formula is quite the same, only that König and Königlich is every where substituted to Kaiser and Kaiserlich.

*To a Duke or Prince.*

Durchlauchtigster Herzog (or Fürst, Prinz, Kronprinz, Erbprinz),  
Gnädigster Herr (or Gnädigster Prinz und Herr).

Eu. Hochfürstliche Durchlaucht (or Eu. Königliche Hoheit or Höchstdieselben) erlauben gnädigst, daß, u. s. w.

Der ich mit tiefster Ehrfurcht verharre  
Eurer Hochfürstlichen Durchlaucht  
unterthänigster und gehorsamster Diener.

*To a Count.*

Hochgeborner Graf,  
Gnädiger Graf und Herr.

Eu. Hochgräfliche Excellenz (or Gnaden) werden mir gütigst erlauben, daß, u. s. w.

Der ich mit tiefster Ehrfurcht verbleibe  
Eurer Hochgräflichen Excellenz (or Gnaden)  
unterthänigster und gehorsamster Diener.

*To a Counsellor.*

Wohlgeborner Herr,  
Hochgeneigter und hochzuehrender Herr Rath.

Eu. Wohlgeboren erlauben gütig (or hochgeneigt), daß, u. s. w.

Der ich mit Verehrung (or mit vollkommenster Hochachtung) die Ehre habe stets zu seyn  
Euer Wohlgeboren  
ganz gehorsamster und ergebenster Diener.

III. ADDRESSES, Aufschriften.

They are made in the following manner:

*To an Emperor.*

Seiner (abridged Sr.) Mäjestät dem Kaiser (An Se. Majestät den Kaiser), &c.  
or: An Se. Kaiserliche Majestät, &c.

*To a King.*

Sr. Majestät (An Se. Majestät) dem (den) König von N.  
in N.

*To a Queen.*

Ihrer Majestät der Königin von, &c.

*To a Prince.*

Sr. Durchlaucht dem Fürsten N. zu N.

*Obs. D.* To a Grand-Duke, or Duke, Großherzog or Herzog is put instead of Fürst.

*To a Princess.*

Ihrer Durchlaucht der Fürstin N. zu N.

*Obs. E.* To a Duchess, Herzogin is put instead of Fürstin.

*To a Count.*

Dem Hochgebornen Grafen und Herrn, Herrn N.,  
Grafen zu N.

or else:

Meinem gnädigen Grafen und Herrn, or:  
Seiner Hochgräflichen Gnaden, &c.

*To a Countess.*

Der Hochgebornen Gräfin und Frau, Frau N.,  
geborenen —

or: Ihrer Erlaucht der Frau Gräfin N. N.

*To a Baron.*

Dem Hochwohlgebornen Herrn, Herrn N., Freiherrn von N.  
or: Seiner Hochfreiherrlichen Gnaden, &c.

*To a Field-Marshal.*

An Se. Excellenz den Wohlgebornen Herrn von N., Seiner  
Kaiserlich (Königlichen) Majestät General-Feldmarschall.  
or: Sr. Hochwohlgebornen dem Herrn Feldmarschall von N.  
zu —

*To a Colonel.*

Dem Hochwohlgebornen Herrn, Herrn N. von N., Kaiserl.  
(Königl.) Obristen (or Obersten), &c.  
or: Seiner Hochwohlgebornen dem Herrn Obersten von N. N.  
in N.  
or: An den Herrn Obersten von N. N.  
zu N.

*To a Merchant.*

Herrn  
Herrn N. N.  
Handelsmann  
in N.

*Obs. F.* Ladies receive the titles of their husbands, and the qualification of their primitive condition is added when their husbands are of an inferior rank. We say, *e. g.*: Hochwohlgeborne Frau Pfarrerin, when the wife of a clergyman is of noble birth.

*A few models of finishing a letter.*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Having nothing more of importance to tell you, I salute you with distinguished consideration, and am,     | 1. Weiter weiß ich Ihnen Nichts von Wichtigkeit zu melden; ich grüße Sie daher mit ausgezeichnete Achtung, und bin             |
| Your &c.   | Ihr u. s. w.   |
| 2. Be assured that I shall hereafter always be,  | 2. Seyn Sie versichert, daß ich in der Zukunft immer seyn werde  |
| Your &c.   | Ihr u. s. w.   |
| 3. In the pleasing expectation of your kind communications I remain with perfect esteem,                     | 3. Mit Vergnügen sehe ich Ihren gefälligen Nachrichten entgegen, und verharre hochachtungsvoll,                                |
| Your &c.   | Ew. Wohlgebornen u. s. w.  |
| 4. Having nothing more to tell you that might deserve your attention, I salute you most sincerely and am &c. | 4. Da ich Ihnen sonst Nichts zu sagen habe, das Ihrer Beachtung werth wäre, so grüße ich Sie herzlichst und verbleibe u. s. w. |
| 5. I remain with a cordial salutation,   | 5. Mit herzlichem Gruße verbleibt  |
| Your &c.   | Ew. Wohlgebornen u. s. w.<br>oder nur den Namen, als: N.   |
| 6. I have the honour to remain,  | 6. Es hat die Ehre sich Ihnen zu empfehlen   |
| Your &c.   | Ew. Hochwohlgebornen u. s. w.  |

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>7. Awaiting your kind answer, I beg you to accept the assurance of my attachment.</p>                        | <p>7. Ihrer gefälligen Antwort entgegen sehend, bitte ich Sie, die Versicherung meiner Ergebenheit zu genehmigen.</p>                         |
| <p>8. Entirely yours in friendship and esteem.</p>  | <p>8. Ganz der (die) Ihrige in Freundschaft und Achtung.</p>  |
| <p>9. Excuse the trouble I am giving you, and believe me,<br/>Your &amp;c.</p>                                  | <p>9. Entschuldigen Sie die Mühe, welche ich Ihnen verursache und halten Sie mich für<br/>Ihren (Ihre) u. s. w.</p>                           |
| <p>10. Awaiting a speedy answer, I have the honour to remain,<br/>Your &amp;c.</p>                              | <p>10. In Erwartung einer baldigen Antwort, habe ich die Ehre zu verbleiben<br/>Ihr u. s. w.</p>  |
| <p>11. Accept the expression of my gratitude for the numerous services which you do not cease to render me.</p> | <p>11. Genehmigen Sie den Ausdruck meiner Erkenntlichkeit für die zahlreichen Gefälligkeiten, die Sie nicht müde werden; mir zu erweisen.</p> |
| <p>12. Accept the assurance of my most dutiful (or respectful) attachment.</p>                                  | <p>12. Empfangen Sie die Versicherung meiner achtungsvollen Ergebenheit.</p>  |
| <p>12. Always rely on the gratitude and attachment of<br/>Your &amp;c.</p>                                      | <p>13. Zählen Sie stets auf die Erkenntlichkeit und Anhänglichkeit<br/>Ihres (Ihrer) u. s. w.</p>   |

---

**EXERCISES IN NOTES AND LETTERS.**

259.

“The fineness of the weather has induced my sister and me (hat meine Schwester und mich auf den Gedanken gebracht) to take a drive (spazieren fahren\*) this afternoon (der Nachmittag), and to request the honour of your agreeable company. We hope you will not deny (versagen) us this pleasure, but that you will allow us to call for (abholen) you at two or a quarter past, at latest (spätestens).”

“I shall be most happy to avail myself of (mit vielem Vergnügen nehme ich — an) your obliging offer (das gütige Anerbieten), and am much obliged to you for the kindness you express (für die Freundschaft, die Sie für mich hegen). You will find me ready at two, if you will be so good as to call for me. I shall then hope (werde alsdann

die Ehre haben) to tell you many things that time will not allow me to do now, and to assure you of how sincerely (wie sehr) I am," &c.

"I write to inform you (Einem melden) that I cannot have the pleasure of accompanying you (mit Jemandem gehen\*) this evening to the play, as I had promised you I should (versprochenenmaßen); for my stomach is out of order, and I have a head-ache (Lesson LXXI. Note 3.). Yesterday I dined out (sich bei einem Gastmahl befinden\*), and you know what happens (wie es zugeht) at such times (bei dergleichen Gelegenheiten): you eat and drink more than usual (gewöhnlich). I know not what to do (was ich anfangen soll) to amuse myself (sich [Dative] die lange Weile vertreiben\*). Be so kind as to send me something interesting (Schönes) to read, and come to see (besuchen) me as soon as you can spare the time."

260.

"Would you have the kindness to return me, by the bearer (Der Ueberbringer), the German book I lent you about six months ago (vor)? It belongs to one of my friends who has asked me for it half a hundred times (mehr als hundertmal). If it were (Lesson XCII.) mine I would make you a present of it with the greatest pleasure."

"You had promised me yesterday to come and see me to-day at three, but you have not done so. Do you know that I am very angry with you for your breach of promise (beßwegen)? I expected you with the greatest impatience, to tell you things of the utmost importance (von der größten Wichtigkeit). Come soon to apologize (sich entschuldigen), and perhaps I may forgive you (use the present indicative)."

"I send you the English book with many thanks, that you were so kind as to lend me. I read it with much pleasure, and it has interested me (Jemandem gefallen\*) so much that I am anxious (wünschen) to read the following volumes. Might I request (dürfen\*) you to lend them me? I know I am taking a great liberty (meine Dreistigkeit ist groß), but I rely much on your good na-

ture (Ihre Güte ist noch größer) to forgive me (und zu derselben nehme ich meine Zuflucht)."

"My dear Sir, — I send you a box (die Schachtel) of grapes (die Traube). If you like (schmecken) them, there are some more at your service (so stehen noch mehr zu Diensten). Excuse my not having written before (daß ich Ihnen so lange nicht geschrieben habe); but the vintage (die Weinlese) prevented my doing so (hat mich daran gehindert). I shall in future (ins künftige) endeavour to make amends for (wieder gut zu machen suchen) my seeming neglect, and to tell you oftener how truly I am (daß ich von ganzem Herzen bin)

"Yours sincerely," &c.

261.

"I received to-day your kind present of (— die Sie so gütig waren mir zu verehren) a box of grapes, and I thank you for them (dafür) with all my heart (*Obs. I.* page 52.). I had some friends to partake of them (verzehren) with me, and meanwhile we sang your praises (indem wir uns sehr vortheilhaft von Ihnen unterhielten). One of my guests said: Your friend must be an excellent man, since (da) he has such good grapes.

I remain," &c.

"My dear N. (Liebster Freund), I have just (ich habe so eben) received your letter, by (aus) which I am grieved to hear that you have a quartain ague (das viertägige Fieber). I must tell you frankly (offenherzig) what I think of it (meine Gedanken), and I hope that you will not take it ill (übel nehmen\*). Your way of living (die Lebensart) is good for nothing. You have always drunk much wine and no water. I have often told you this was bad for your health (der Gesundheit nachtheilig), and that you ought to drink less wine and much water, but you never would mind me (darauf achten). Your doctor will now tell you the same thing, and you will be obliged to follow his directions (Jemandem gehorchen), if you wish to get rid of (los werden\*) your ague. Meanwhile (indessen) bear (ertragen\*) your illness (das Leiden)

patiently, follow (befolgen) exactly (genau) your doctor's prescriptions (was Ihr Arzt Ihnen verordnet), and you will shortly (in Kurzem) be well again. Such is the sincere wish of yours," &c.

262.

"Mr. C. being obliged (müssen\*) to start (gehen\*) to-morrow for the country, requests (bitten\*) Mr. G. not to give himself the trouble of calling (sich zu Jemandem bemühen). Mr. C. will be happy (Einem lieb seyn\*) to see Mr. G. the day after to-morrow at the hour (zu einer Stunde) that suits (bequem seyn\*) him best."

"Mrs. B. sends her kind remembrance to Mr. F. (Jemanden grüßen). As she is going to the ball to-night, it will be impossible for her to have the pleasure of seeing him to-day. She requests Mr. F. not to come to-morrow till a quarter before twelve."

"Mr. and Mrs. P. present their compliments to Mr. and Mrs. Y\*\* (Jemanden vielmal oder ehrerbietigst grüßen lassen\*), and request the honour of their company to dinner (beim Mittagessen ihre Gäste zu seyn\*) on Thursday, at seven precisely (mit dem Schläge)."

"Mr. and Mrs. Y\*\* accept (annehmen\*) Mr. and Mrs. P.'s obliging invitation, and will have the honour to be with them (sich einfinden\*) at the hour they mention (zur bestimmten Stunde)."

"Mr. and Mrs. Y\*\* much regret (bedauern sehr) being obliged to decline (nicht entsprechen zu können\*) Mr. and Mrs. P.'s obliging invitation owing to a previous engagement (eine andere Einladung annehmen\*)."

"If Mr. N. can dispose of a few moments (ein wenig Zeit hat) to-morrow at ten, he will much oblige Mr. S. by favouring him with an interview (die Unterredung). Mr. S. will wait for him, and will explain to him (um ihm—mitzutheilen) the motive of his request (die Einladung)."

"If Mr. X. is at liberty to-morrow between one and four, he will much oblige Mr. Z. by calling at his house."

“Should Mr. Y\*\* be absent from home next Sunday at the hour of dinner (zur Mittagstunde), he is requested to leave behind him at any rate (wenigstens) the key of the cellar, that his friend R. may not die of thirst.”

263.

“Sir, I have read over and over again (und wieder gelesen) with inexpressible satisfaction (das unaussprechliche Vergnügen) the deligthful (überaus schön) letter that you wrote to me in German (der deutsche Brief). It is hard to conceive how you can have learnt this language in so short a time. You request me to correct the faults in your letter. Since you desire it, I will tell you frankly (frei heraus), that you make two great mistakes (der Fehler): first (der erste ist, daß) your letters are always too short, and secondly you request me to correct them. Pray in future (in Zukunft) avoid these two mistakes, and (dadurch) you will much oblige yours,” &c.

“I have invited all my young friends to drink tea with us this evening (zum Thee bei uns eingeladen), and I have requested Sophia to call for you on her way (im Vorbeigehen). Be ready about (gegen) nine. We intend to be very merry (recht vergnügt seyn\*), we shall dance and play at forfeits (Pfänder spielen). I send you my best love (Jemanden umarmen), and hope (hoffend) you will not deny us the pleasure of your company (Einem Etwas versagen).”

---

## HUNDRED AND NINTH LESSON.—Hundert und neunte Section.

### 5. THE VERB, das Zeitwort.

The verb is a word that expresses the existence or the manner of being or acting of the subject. There are six kinds of verbs, viz.

1. Auxiliary verbs, *Hilfszeitwörter*, thus called because they help to conjugate the other verbs. They are: *haben*\*, to have; *seyn*\*, to be; *werden*<sup>1</sup>, to be (to become). Ex. *Ich habe geschrieben*, I have written; *ich bin gekommen*, I am come; *er wurde geliebt*, he was loved.

2. Active verbs, *thätige Zeitwörter*. They express an action performed by the subject, and either have or may have an objective case. Ex. *Der Vater liebt den Sohn*, the father loves the son; *ich liebe die Tugend und verabscheue das Laster*, I love virtue and abhor vice.

3. Passive verbs, *leidende Zeitwörter*. They present the subject as receiving or suffering from others the action expressed by the verb. Ex. *Der ungehorsame Sohn wird von seinem Vater gestraft*, the disobedient son is punished by his father.

4. Neuter verbs, *ziellose Zeitwörter*. They express a state or even an action of the subject, which cannot directly affect the object. Ex. *Ich gehe*, I go; *er fällt*, he falls; *sie schläft*, she sleeps.

5. Reflective, reciprocal<sup>2</sup>, or pronominal verbs, *zurücksehrende Zeitwörter*. They express an action falling upon the same person as the nominative or subject. Ex. *Er verstellte sich*, he disguises himself; *ich stelle mir vor*, I represent to myself; *sie hat sich geschmeichelt*, she has flattered herself.

6. Impersonal verbs, *unpersönliche Zeitwörter*. They relate to no person, and are in all the tenses used only in the third person singular<sup>3</sup>. They can only be conjugated with the help of the indefinite pronoun *es*, it. Ex. *Es regnet*, it rains; *es schneiet*, it snows.

1 Active verbs generally take for their auxiliary *haben*\*, neuter verbs partly *haben* and partly *seyn*\*, and passive verbs *werden*\*.

2 Some grammarians distinguish reflective from reciprocal verbs, in so much as the former express an action falling upon the subject, and the latter an action between two or more subjects. We range both under the head of reflective or pronominal verbs.

3 Some of these verbs are in German also employed in the third person plural, e. g. *es geschehen viele Dinge*, many things happen.

THE FORMATION OF VERBS.

German verbs are:

I. Primitive words, as: *stehen\**, to stand; *gehen\**, to go; *trinken\**, to drink, &c.

II. Derivative words, as: *entstehen\**, to originate; *vergehen*, to pass away; *betrinken*, to intoxicate; or:

III. Compound words, as: *aufstehen*, to get up; *durchgehen*, to go through; *hochachten*, to esteem; *luftwandeln*, to take a walk.

I. PRIMITIVE VERBS are formed from a primitive sound which is generally the imperative of the verb, and the termination *en*, a termination common to all German verbs. Ex.

<i>Stehen*</i> , to stand,	from the imperative <i>steh</i> , stand!	} and the syllable <i>en</i> .
<i>Gehen*</i> , to go,	„ „ „ <i>geh</i> , go!	
<i>Trinken*</i> , to drink,	„ „ „ <i>trink</i> , drink!	

II. The DERIVATION OF VERBS is effected: *a.* by the alteration of a vowel or a consonant; *b.* by the addition of a syllable.

*a.* By the alteration of a vowel or consonant certain neuter verbs become active, *e. g.* *fallen*, to fall; *fällen*, to fell; *liegen*, to lie; *legen*, to lay; *sitzen*, to sit; *setzen*, to set; *stehen*, to stand; *stellen*, to place; *wachen*, to watch; *wachen*, to awake.

*b.* By the addition of a syllable the signification of the primitive verb is modified. There are 1. fore-syllables or prefixes, and 2. after-syllables or affixes.

1. *Prefixes* which are never used alone in the language are placed before the primitive verb; as in English *be*, in *to bespeak*, *to bestrew*, *to bewail*, *to beware*; and *re*, in *to recall*, *to recoil*, *to recollect*, *to return*, &c.

The principal prefixes are: —

*be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *miß*, *ver*, *zer*<sup>4</sup>, each of which has a particular signification, viz.

<sup>4</sup> The prefixes *be*, *ver*, *ent*, *zer*, correspond to the English prefixes *be.*, *for.*, *un.*, *dis.* Ex. *to bewail*, *to forget*, *to undress*, *to displease*.

**Be**, is derived from *bei*, and signifies:—

*a.* that an action is extended upon all the objects spoken of. **Ex.**

<i>befchreiben</i> , to describe;	derived from <i>ſchreiben</i> , to write.
<i>bebauen</i> , to cover with build-	„ „ <i>bauen</i> , to build.
ings, to cultivate;	„ „

*b.* to cover, lay over a thing. **Ex.**

<i>belegen</i> , to cover;	derived from <i>legen</i> , to lay.
<i>befleiden</i> , to clothe, to cover	„ „ <i>fleiden</i> , to dress.
with clothes;	„ „

*c.* that a thing is done attentively, as:

<i>bedenken</i> , to reflect;	derived from <i>denken</i> , to think.
<i>betrachten</i> , to consider;	„ „ <i>trachten</i> , to endeavour.

*Obs. A.* The prefix *be* serves to transform intransitive or neuter verbs into transitives. **Ex.** *folgen*, to follow (gov. the Dative), and *befolgen*, to obey, to follow (gov. the Accusative); *arbeiten*, to work; *bearbeiten*, to bestow labour upon a thing, to elaborate; *reden*, to speak; *bereden*, to persuade; *weinen*, to weep; *beweinen*, to bewail; *lachen*, to laugh; *belachen*, to deride; *antworten*, to answer; *beantworten*, to answer (a letter).

*Obs. B.* It serves to form verbs from substantives and adjectives. **Ex.**

from <i>der Flügel</i> , the wing,	is formed	<i>besflügeln</i> , to furnish with wings.
„ <i>die Gabe</i> , the gift,	„ „	<i>begaben</i> , to endow.
„ <i>das Glück</i> , happiness,	„ „	<i>beglücken</i> , to make happy.
„ <i>das Mitleid</i> , compassion,	„ „	<i>bemitleiden</i> , to compassionate, to pity.
„ <i>die Seele</i> , the soul,	„ „	<i>beseelen</i> , to animate.
„ <i>frei</i> , free,	„ „	<i>befreien</i> , to liberate.
„ <i>günstig</i> , favourable,	„ „	<i>begünstigen</i> , to favour.
„ <i>lustig</i> , merry,	„ „	<i>belustigen</i> , to divert.
„ <i>reich</i> , rich,	„ „	<i>bereichern</i> , to enrich.

*Obs. C.* All verbs having this prefix are active or transitive, and almost all govern the Accusative<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> The verbs: *begegnen*, *beägen*, *beleben*, govern the Dative, and the following govern the Dative of the person and the

Ge often serves to strengthen the idea of the primitive word, but always changes its signification. Ex.

gefallen, to please,	derived from	fallen, to fall.
gestehen, to avow, to confess,	„	stehen, to stand.

Emp is considered as an alteration of ent before the letter f, and is only found in the following four verbs:

empfangen, to receive,	derived from	fangen, to catch.
empfehlen, to recommend,	„	the lost verb feh- len, bid.
empfinden, to feel, to perceive,	„	finden, to find.
empören, to revolt,	„	the adverb empor, upwards.

Ent signifies,

a) origin, as:

entstehen, to arise from,	derived from	stehen, to stand.
entspringen, to spring from,	„	springen, to spring.
entzünden, to inflame,	„	zünden, to kindle.

b) removal, as:

entfliehen, to fly from, to es- cape,	derived from	fliehen, to flee.
entlaufen, to run away,	„	laufen, to run.
entführen, to carry off.	„	führen, to lead.

c) privation, as:

entbehren, to be in want of,	derived from	the ancient word bar, bare.
entehren, to dishonour,	„	ehren, to honour.
entwaffnen, to disarm,	„	waffnen, to arm.

Er denotes,

a) a motion towards, as:

erheben, to raise up,	derived from	heben, to heave to lift.
erziehen, to bring up, to edu- cate,	„	ziehen, to draw.
errichten, to erect,	„	richten, to direct,

Accusative of the thing: benehmen, to take away; behüern, to protest; beweisen, to show; bewilligen, to grant; bezahlen, to pay; bezeigen, to show; bezeugen, to prove by witness. The verb befehlen also governs the Dative.

b) the obtaining anything, as :

erbitten, to obtain by entreaties,	derived from bitten, to beg.
erfinden, to invent,	„ „ finden, to find.
erfechten, to obtain by fighting,	„ „ fechten, to fight.

c) the accomplishment of what is denoted by the primitive word, as :

erfaufen, to be drowned,	derived from faufen, to drink to excess.
erſchießen, to kill by shooting,	„ „ ſchießen, to shoot.
erröthen, to blush,	„ „ roth, red.
erweichen, to mollify, to move, to touch,	„ „ weich, soft, weak.

Miß corresponds to the English prefixes *mis*, *dis*, *ill*, and marks the contrary of the primitive word, as :

mißgücken, not to succeed,	derived from gücken, to succeed.
mißbrauchen, to abuse,	„ „ brauchen, to use.
mißdeuten, to misinterpret,	„ „ deuten, to interpret.
mißfallen, to displease,	„ „ gefallen, to please.
mißhandeln, to ill-treat,	„ „ behandeln, to

Ver denotes,

a) removal, loss, destruction, as :

vertreiben, to drive away,	derived from treiben, to drive.
verjagen, to chase away,	„ „ jagen, to chase.
verpielen, to lose at play,	„ „ spielen, to play.
verkaufen, to sell,	„ „ kaufen, to buy.
verbrennen, to destroy by burning,	„ „ brennen, to burn.
versinken, to fall into an abyss,	„ „ sinken, to sink.
verblühen, to fade,	„ „ blühen, to bloom, to blossom.
verheeren, to desolate, to destroy by armies,	„ „ das Heer, the army.

**b) error, mistake, as:**

versehen, to make a mistake,	derived from	sehen, to see.
verschreiben, to write wrong,	„ „	schreiben, to write.
verhören, to hear wrong,	„ „	hören, to hear.

**c) excess, as:**

versalzen, to oversalt,	derived from	salzen, to salt.
-------------------------	--------------	------------------

**d) shutting up or closing, as:**

vermauern, to immure,	derived from	mauern, to mure.
verfleben, to close by plastering over,	„ „	fleben, to paste.

**e) negation, as:**

verneinen, to deny, to unsay,	derived from	nein, no.
verachten, to despise,	„ „	achten, to esteem.
versagen, to refuse,	„ „	sagen, to say.

**f) a transition from one state into another, as:**

veralten, to grow old, to obsolete,	derived from	alt, old.
verarmen, to become poor,	„ „	arm, poor.
veredeln, to ennoble,	„ „	edel, noble.

**g) the prefix ver serves to strengthen the signification expressed by the primitive word, as:**

verstärken, to make stronger,	derived from	stark, strong.
verbessern, to make better,	„ „	besser, better.

**h) combined with a substantive, this prefix forms a verb expressing the quality designated by the substantive, as:**

vergolden, to gild,	derived from	das Gold, gold.
versilbern, to silver,	„ „	das Silber, silver.
vermitteln, to mediate,	„ „	das Mittel, the means.
vergöttern, to deify.	„ „	Gott, God.

**zer denotes a separation of the whole into parts, and often adds an idea of destruction to the primitive verb, as:**

zerschneiden, to cut in pieces,	derived from	schneiden, to cut.
zerbrechen, to fracture,	„ „	brechen, to break

zerstören, to destroy, derived from stören, to stir, to trouble.  
 zertreten, to tread in pieces, „ „ treten, to tread.

2. The most important *Affixes* are:

chen, en, eln, ern, igen, iren, zen.

Chen strengthens the signification of the primitive word, as :

hörchen, to hearken, to listen, derived from hören, to hear.  
 scheuchen, to frighten away, „ „ scheuen, to shun,  
 to be afraid.

En serves to form verbs of all sorts of words, particularly from substantives:

fischen, to fish, derived from der Fisch, the fish.  
 mausen, to catch mice, „ „ die Maus, the mouse.  
 hören, to hear, „ „ das Ohr, the ear  
 (the letter o being transposed and softened).  
 theilen, to share, to divide, „ „ der Theil, the part.  
 bessern, to ameliorate. „ „ besser, better.  
 röthen, to redden, „ „ roth, red.

En denotes diminution, in which an idea of contempt is often expressed, as:

lächeln, to smile, derived from lachen, to laugh.  
 fränkeln, to be sickly, „ „ krank, ill.  
 streicheln, to caress, to cajole, „ „ streichen, to stroke,  
 to coax, „ „ to rub.  
 spötteln, to jeer, to treat with irony, „ „ spotten, to mock.

Ern denotes,

a) occupation in which the idea of repetition is often expressed, as:

einschläfern, to lull to sleep, derived from einschlafen, to fall asleep.  
 räuchern, to fumigate, to perfume, „ „ rauchen, to smoke.  
 steigern, to raise in price, to increase, „ „ steigen, to ascend.  
 folgern, to deduce, to infer, „ „ folgen, to follow.

b) an inclination to what is expressed by the primitive, as:

schläfern, to make sleepy,	derived from	schlafen, to sleep.
lächern, to give an inclination to laugh,	„ „	lachen, to laugh.

Zgen denotes doing or performing what is expressed by the primitive, as:

ängstigen (as if one said: Angst machen), to cause anguish or anxiety,	derived from	die Angst, anguish, anxiety.
endigen (as if it was: ein Ende machen), to finish, to accomplish,	„ „	das Ende, the end.
reinigen (as if it was: rein machen), to cleanse, to purify,	„ „	rein, clean.
beruhigen (as if you said: ruhig machen), to appease, to tranquillize,	„ „	Ruhe, quiet.

Zren, and in some words ieren, serves to germanize foreign verbs adopted in German, as:

studiren, to study,	derived from the Latin	studere.
dociren, to teach,	„ „ „ „	docere.
spazieren, to walk for pleasure,	„ „ „ „	spatiari.
ennuyiren, to weary,	„ „ „	French ennuyer.
indossiren, to indorse,	„ „ „	Italian indosso.
regiren, to govern, to reign,	„ „ „	Latin regere.
präsentiren, to present,	„ „ „	„ præsentare.

Zen denotes a continual repetition of the signification expressed by the primitive, as:

schluckzen, to sob, to hiccough,	derived from	schlucken, to gulp, to swallow.
ächzen, to groan, to sigh,	„ „	ach! alas! ah! oh!
leckzen, to suffer great thirst, to gape from dryness,	„ „	leck, leaky.
duzen, to address by the term thou, to thou.	„ „	Du, thou.

#### THE MOODS.

The relation between the subject and the predicate may present itself in a positive, uncertain, or imperative manner; hence three moods:

1. The Indicative, die bestimmte Weise oder Redeart.
2. The Subjunctive, die ungewisse Weise.
3. The Imperative, die Befehlsweise.

#### THE TENSES.

The verb, in expressing a relation between the subject and the predicate, may indicate that this relation *is*, *has been*, or *will be*; hence three principal tenses:

1. The Present, die gegenwärtige Zeit: *ich lese*, I read or am reading.
2. The Past, die vergangene Zeit.
3. The Future, die zukünftige Zeit.

An action may not be quite finished when another action commences. The tense or form of the verb which designates this interrupted action is termed Imperfect, jüngst oder faum vergangene Zeit; *e. g. ich las*, I read, was reading.

The tense or form of the verb which designates an action entirely passed, without any reference to another action, is called Perfect or Preterperfect, völlig vergangene Zeit; *e. g. ich habe gelesen*, I have read or have been reading.

An action may entirely be finished when another action relating to it begins. We term the form of the verb designating this action, Pluperfect or Preterpluperfect, längst vergangene Zeit; *e. g. ich hatte das Buch gelesen*, I had read the book.

The Future is either present (simple) or past (compound); it is present, or simple, when it relates to an action which is to take place without any reference to another action; *e. g. ich werde lesen*, I shall read. It is past, or compounded, when it relates to an action relative to another action, represented as nearly finished, *e. g. ich werde den Brief gelesen haben*, I shall have read the letter.

I.

CONJUGATION

OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *haben, to have.*

*Preliminary Observation.*—To know the conjugation of a verb thoroughly the learner must begin by making himself perfect master of the present and past infinitive, and the present and past participle.

*Infinitive present.*

*haben, to have.*

*Participle present.* (See Less. XC.)

*habend, having.*

*Infinitive past.*

*Gehabt haben, to have had.*

*Participle past.* (See Lesson XLIII. & XLIV.)

*Gehabt, had.*

PRESENT.

*Indicative.*

I have, &c.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may have, &c.

Ich habe,  
du hast,  
er (sie, es, man) hat;  
wir haben,  
ihr habet or habt,  
sie haben.

Daß ich habe,  
daß du habest,  
daß er (sie, es, man) habe;  
daß wir haben,  
daß ihr habet,  
daß sie haben.

IMPERFECT.

I had, &c.

That I might have, &c.

Ich hatte,  
du hattest,  
er (sie, es, man) hatte;  
wir hatten,  
ihr hättet,  
sie hatten.

Daß ich hätte,  
daß du hättest,  
daß er (sie, es, man) hätte;  
daß wir hätten,  
daß ihr hättet,  
daß sie hätten.

PERFECT.

*Obs. A.* The perfect tense, die völlig vergangene Zeit, is formed, in all German verbs, from the present of the

1 Or: ich hätte, I might have; wenn ich hätte, if I had.

auxiliary and the past participle of the verb you conjugate, as:

I have had, &c.

Ich habe du hast er (sie, u. s. w.) hat wir haben ihr habet (habt) sie haben	}	gehabt.
---	---	---------

That I may have had, &c.

Daß ich gehabt habe,  
daß du gehabt habest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gehabt habe;  
daß wir gehabt haben,  
daß ihr gehabt habet,  
daß sie gehabt haben.

PLUPERFECT.

*Obs. B.* The Pluperfect tense, die längst vergangene Zeit, is formed, in all verbs, from the imperfect of the auxiliary and the past participle of the verb you conjugate, as:

I had had, &c.

Ich hatte du hattest er (sie, u. s. w.) hatte wir hatten ihr hattet sie hatten	}	gehabt.
---	---	---------

That I might have had, &c.

Daß ich gehabt hätte,  
daß du gehabt hättest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gehabt hätte;  
daß wir gehabt hätten,  
daß ihr gehabt hättet,  
daß sie gehabt hätten.

FUTURE PRESENT.

*Obs. C.* The Future, die zukünftige Zeit, is formed, in all German verbs, from the present of the auxiliary werden, to become (See Lesson LXXXIII.), and the infinitive present of the verb you conjugate, as:

*Indicative.*

I shall have, &c.

Ich werde du wirst er (sie, u. s. w.) wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	}	haben.
--	---	--------

*Subjunctive.*

That I shall have, &c. (See Lesson XCIV.)

Daß ich haben werde,  
daß du haben werdest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) haben werde;  
daß wir haben werd,  
daß ihr haben werdet,  
daß sie haben werden.

FUTURE PAST.

*Obs. D.* The future past, die künftig verfllossene Zeit, is formed, in all German verbs, from the present of the

auxiliary werden, to become (See Lesson LXXXIV.), and the infinitive past of the verb you conjugate, as :

I shall have had, &c.

That I shall have had, &c. (See Lesson XCIV.)

Ich werde du wirst er (sie, u. s. w.) wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	}	gehabt haben.	Daß ich gehabt haben werde <sup>2</sup> , daß du gehabt haben werdest, daß er (sie, &c.) gehabt haben werde; daß wir gehabt haben werden, daß ihr gehabt haben werdet, daß sie gehabt haben werden.
--	---	---------------	--

### CONDITIONAL OR POTENTIAL TENSES.

*Obs. E.* Instead of: ich hätte, du hättest, er hätte, &c., we may also sometimes say: ich würde haben, du würdest haben, &c., and instead of: ich hätte gehabt or daß ich gehabt hätte, we also often say: ich würde gehabt haben or daß ich gehabt haben würde, &c. (See Lesson XCII); hence the Conditional tenses.

### CONDITIONAL PRESENT.

*Obs. F.* The Conditional present, die gegenwärtige Zeit der bedingenden Weise, is formed, in all German verbs, from würde<sup>3</sup> and the infinitive present of the verb you conjugate, as :

I should or would have, &c.      We should or would have, &c

Ich würde du würdest er (sie, u. s. w.) würde	}	haben.	Wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	}	haben <sup>4</sup> .
---	---	--------	--	---	----------------------

### CONDITIONAL PAST.

*Obs. G.* The Conditional past, die vergangene Zeit der bedingenden Weise, is formed, in all German verbs, from würde (See Note 3 of the preceding *Obs.*), and the infinitive past of the verb you conjugate, as :

<sup>2</sup> Or: daß ich werde gehabt haben. (See  A. Lesson LXXXIV.)

<sup>3</sup> Würde is the imperfect subjunctive of the auxiliary werden, to become.

<sup>4</sup> Instead of: ich würde haben, du würdest haben, &c., we may always say: ich hätte, du hättest, &c. (See Lesson XCII.)

I should or would have had, &c. We should or would have had, &c.

Ich würde du würdest er (sie, u. s. w.) würde	}	gehabt ha- ben.	Wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	}	gehabt haben 5.
---	---	--------------------	--	---	-----------------

**IMPERATIVE.** (See Lesson XCV. and XCVII.)

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person.)

Habe, have (thou).  
 Habe er (sie, u. s. w.),  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) habe,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) habe,  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) mag haben,  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) soll haben,

let him  
(her, &c.)  
have.

Haben wir,  
 laßet uns haben,  
 wir wollen haben,  
 Habet or habt (haben Sie), have (ye).  
 Haben sie or sie haben,  
 daß sie haben,  
 sie mögen haben,  
 sie sollen haben,

let us have.  
 have (ye).  
 let them  
have.

**CONJUGATION**

OF THE AUXILIARY VERB *seyn, to be.* (See *preliminary Obs.* page 76.)

*Infinitive present.*

Seyn, to be.

*Participle present.*

Seyend or wesend 6, being.

*Infinitive past.*

Gewesen seyn, to have been.

*Participle past.*

Gewesen, been.

**PRESENT.**

*Indicative.*

I am, &c.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may be, &c.

Ich bin,  
 du bist,  
 er (sie, es, man) ist;  
 wir sind,  
 ihr seyd,  
 sie sind.

Daß ich sey,  
 daß du sehest oder seyst,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) sey;  
 daß wir seyen or seyn,  
 daß ihr seyet or seyd,  
 daß sie seyen or seyn.

5 Instead of: *ich würde gehabt haben, &c.* we may always say; *ich hätte gehabt, &c.* (See Lesson XCII.)

6 The present participles *seyend* and *wesend*, are obsolete; they are only used at present in the compounds; *daseyend*, being there; *auwesend*, present; *abwesend* absent.

IMPERFECT.

*Indicative.*

I was, &c.

Ich war,  
du warest or warst,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) war;  
wir waren,  
ihr waret or wart,  
sie waren.

*Subjunctive.*

That I might be, &c.

Daß ich wäre,  
daß du wärest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) wäre;  
daß wir wären,  
daß ihr wäret,  
daß sie wären.

PERFECT. (See *Obs. A.* pag. 76.)

I have been, &c.

Ich bin  
du bist  
er (sie, u. s. w.) ist  
wir sind  
ihr seyd  
sie sind

} gewesen.

That I may have been, &c.

Daß ich gewesen sey,  
daß du gewesen seyst,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gewesen sey;  
daß wir gewesen seyen,  
daß ihr gewesen seyet,  
daß sie gewesen seyen.

PLUPERFECT. (See *Obs. B.* page 77.)

I had been, &c.

Ich war  
du warest or warst  
er (sie, u. s. w.) war  
wir waren  
ihr waret or wart  
sie waren

} gewesen.

That I might have been, &c.

Daß ich gewesen wäre,  
daß du gewesen wärest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gewesen wäre;  
daß wir gewesen wären,  
daß ihr gewesen wäret,  
daß sie gewesen wären.

FUTURE PRESENT. (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

I shall or will be, &c.

Ich werde  
du wirst  
er (sie, u. s. w.) wird  
wir werden  
ihr werdet  
sie werden

} seyn.

That I shall or will be, &c.

Daß ich seyn werde,  
daß du seyn werdest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) seyn werde;  
daß wir seyn werden,  
daß ihr seyn werdet,  
daß sie seyn werden.

7 Or: ich wäre, I might be; wenn ich wäre, if I were.

**FUTURE PAST.** (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

I shall or will have been, &c.		That I shall or will have been, &c.	
Ich werde	} gewesen seyn.	Daß ich gewesen seyn werde <sup>8</sup> ,	}
du wirst		daß du gewesen seyn werdest,	
er (sie, u. s. w.) wird		daß er (sie, &c.) gewesen seyn werde;	
wir werden		daß wir gewesen seyn werden,	
ihr werdet		daß ihr gewesen seyn werdet,	
sie werden		daß sie gewesen seyn werden.	

**CONDITIONAL.** (See *Obs. E., F. and G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

*Past.*

I should or would be, &c.		I should or would have been, &c.	
Ich würde	} seyn <sup>9</sup> .	Ich würde	} gewesen seyn <sup>10</sup> .
du würdest		du würdest	
er (sie, u. s. w.) würde		er (sie, u. s. w.) würde	
wir würden		wir würden	
ihr würdet		ihr würdet	
sie würden		sie würden	

**IMPERATIVE.** (See *Lessons XCV. and XCVII.*)

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person).		Sehen wir,		} let us be.
Sey, be (thou).		lasset uns seyn,		
Sey er (sie, u. s. w.),		wir wollen seyn,		} be (ye).
er (sie, u. s. w.) sey,		Seyd (seyen Sie),		
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) sey,		Seyen sie or sie seyen,		} let them be.
er (sie, u. s. w.) mag seyn,		daß sie seyen,		
er (sie, u. s. w.) soll seyn,		sie mögen seyn,		
		sie sollen seyn,		

**R E M A R K.**

The pupils must conjugate aloud, in writing it, every verb in four different ways, viz. 1. affirmatively, 2. negatively, 3. interrogatively, 4. interrogatively and negatively. We have conjugated the auxiliaries *haben* and

8 Or: daß ich werde gewesen seyn, &c. (See *↳ A. Lesson LXXXIV.*)

9 Instead of: ich würde seyn, du würdest seyn, &c. you may always say: ich wäre, du wärest, &c. (See *Lesson XCII.*)

10 Instead of: ich würde gewesen seyn, &c. you may always say: ich wäre gewesen, &c. (See *Lesson XCII.*)

seyn affirmatively. In conjugating a verb negatively the negation nicht follows the simple tense and precedes the infinitive and the participle. Examples :

**NEGATIVE FORM, verneinende Form.**

*Infinitive present.*

*Participle present.*

Nicht haben, not to have.

Nicht habend, not having.

*Infinitive past.*

*Participle past.*

Nicht gehabt haben, not to have had. Nicht gehabt, not had.

**PRESENT.**

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I have not, &c.

That I may not have, &c.

Ich habe nicht,  
du hast nicht, u. s. w.

Daß ich nicht habe,  
daß du nicht habest, u. s. w.

**IMPERFECT.**

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I had not,

That I might not have,

Ich hatte nicht.

Daß ich nicht hätte.

**PERFECT.**

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I have not had,  
Ich habe nicht gehabt.

That I may not have had,  
Daß ich nicht gehabt habe.

**PLUPERFECT.**

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I had not had,  
Ich hatte nicht gehabt.

That I might not have had,  
Daß ich nicht gehabt hätte.

**FUTURE PRESENT.**

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I shall or will not have,  
Ich werde nicht haben.

That I shall or will not have,  
Daß ich nicht haben werde.

**FUTURE PAST.**

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I shall or will not have had,  
Ich werde nicht gehabt haben.

That I shall or will not have had,  
Daß ich nicht gehabt haben werde.

**CONDITIONALS.**

*Present.*

*Past.*

I should or would not have,  
Ich würde nicht haben.

I should or would not have had,  
Ich würde nicht gehabt haben.

IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person.)  
 Habe nicht, have (thou) not.  
 Habe er, (ſie, u. ſ. w.) nicht,  
 er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) habe nicht,  
 daß er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) nicht  
 habe,  
 er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) mag nicht  
 haben,  
 er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) ſoll nicht  
 haben,

let him  
(her,  
&c.)  
not  
have.

Haben wir nicht,  
 laſſet uns nicht haben,  
 wir wollen nicht haben,  
 Habet or habt (haben Sie) nicht,  
 have (ye) not.  
 Haben ſie nicht,  
 ſie haben nicht,  
 daß ſie nicht haben,  
 ſie mögen nicht haben,  
 ſie ſollen nicht haben,

let us  
not  
have.  
let them  
not  
have.

INTERROGATIVE FORM, fragende Form.

In conjugating interrogatively, the pronoun or substantive follows the simple tense and precedes the participle past and the infinitive. Ex.

Habe ich? have I?  
 hatte er? had he?  
 hat ſie gehabt? has she had?  
 hatten wir gehabt? had we had?  
 werdet ihr haben? will you have?  
 werden ſie gehabt haben? will they  
 have had?  
 Hat Ihr Bruder? has your brother?  
 Würden Sie haben? would you  
 have?  
 Würden Ihre Freunde gehabt haben?  
 would your friends have  
 had?

Bin ich? am I?  
 war er? was he?  
 iſt ſie geweſen? has she been?  
 waren wir geweſen? had we been?  
 werdet ihr ſeyn? will you be?  
 werden ſie geweſen ſeyn? will they  
 have been?  
 Iſt Ihr Bruder geweſen? has your  
 brother been?  
 Würden Sie ſeyn? would you  
 be?  
 Würden Ihre Schweſtern geweſen  
 ſeyn? would your ſiſter have  
 been?

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORM, verneinend  
 fragende Form.

Habe ich nicht? have I not?  
 hat er nicht gehabt? has he not  
 had?  
 werden wir nicht haben? shall  
 we not have?  
 würden ſie nicht haben? would  
 they not have?

Warſt du nicht? wert thou not?  
 War ſie nicht geweſen? had she  
 not been?  
 werdet Ihr nicht geweſen ſeyn?  
 will you not have been?  
 würden ſie nicht geweſen ſeyn?  
 would they not have been?

*Obs.* For the conjugation of the auxiliary werden, to become, see the Conjugation of the Passive Verbs.

II.

MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF AN ACTIVE REGULAR VERB.

*Obs.* Active verbs always take, in their compound tenses, the verb haben for their auxiliary. According to the following model all active regular verbs are conjugated.

*Infinitive present.*

Loben, to praise.

*Infinitive past.*

Gelobt haben, to have praised.

*Participle present.*

Lobend, praising.

*Participle past.*

Gelobt, praised.

PRESENT. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

*Indicative.*

I praise, &c.

Ich lobe,  
du lobest (lobst),  
er (sie, u. s. w.) lobet (lobt);  
wir loben,  
ihr lobet (lobt),  
sie loben.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may praise, &c.

Daß ich lobe,  
daß du lobest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) lobe;  
daß wir loben,  
daß ihr lobet,  
daß sie loben.

IMPERFECT. (See Lesson LIX. *Obs. A., B., and C.*)

I praised, &c.

Ich lobte,  
du lobtest,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) lobte;  
wir lobten,  
ihr lobtet,  
sie lobten.

That I might praise, &c.

Daß ich lobte (lobte)<sup>1</sup>,  
daß du lobtest (lobtest),  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) lobte (lobte);  
daß wir lobten (lobten),  
daß ihr lobtet (lobtet),  
daß sie lobten (lobten)<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Or ich lobte, I might praise; wenn ich lobte, if I praised.

<sup>2</sup> The first of these two forms is the most correct, the latter the most in use.

**PERFECT.** (See *Obs. A.* page 76.)

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I have praised, &c.

That I may have praised, &c.

Ich habe  
du hast  
er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) hat  
wir haben  
ihr habt  
ſie haben

} gelobt.

Daß ich gelobt habe,  
daß du gelobt habeſt,  
daß er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) gelobt habe;  
daß wir gelobt haben,  
daß ihr gelobt habet,  
daß ſie gelobt haben.

**PLUPERFECT.** (See *Obs. B.* page 77.)

I had praised, &c.

That I might have praised, &c.

Ich hatte  
du hatteſt  
er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) hatte  
wir hatten  
ihr hättet  
ſie hatten

} gelobt.

Daß ich gelobt hätte,  
daß du gelobt hätteſt,  
daß er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) gelobt hätte;  
daß wir gelobt hätten,  
daß ihr gelobt hättet,  
daß ſie gelobt hätten.

**FUTURE PRESENT.** (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

I shall praise, &c.

That I shall praise, &c.

Ich werde  
du wirſt  
er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) wird  
wir werden  
ihr werdet  
ſie werden

} loben.

Daß ich loben werde,  
daß du loben werdeſt,  
daß er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) loben werde;  
daß wir loben werden,  
daß ihr loben werdet,  
daß ſie loben werden.

**FUTURE PAST.** (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

I shall have praised, &c.

That I shall have praised, &c.

Ich werde  
du wirſt  
er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) wird  
wir werden  
ihr werdet  
ſie werden

} gelobt haben.

Daß ich gelobt haben werde,  
daß du gelobt haben werdeſt,  
daß er (ſie, u. ſ. w.) gelobt haben werde;  
daß wir gelobt haben werden,  
daß ihr gelobt haben werdet,  
daß ſie gelobt haben werden.

3 Or ich hätte gelobt, I might have praised; wenn ich gelobt hätte, if I had praised.

4 Or daß ich werde gelobt haben. (See *↳ A. Lesson LXXXIV.*)

CONDITIONALS. (See *Obs. E. F. and G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

I should praise, &c.

Ich würde du würdest er (sie, u. s. w.) würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	}	loben. (See <i>Note 4,</i> page 78 and Lesson XCII.)
---	---	--

*Past.*

I should have praised, &c.

Ich würde du würdest er (sie, u. s. w.) würde wir würden ihr würdet sie würden	}	gelobt haben. (See <i>Note 5,</i> page 79 and Lesson XCII.)
---	---	---

IMPERATIVE. (See Lesson XCV, and XCVII.)

*Singular.*

(No first person.)

Lobe, praise (thou). Lobe er (sie, u. s. w.), er (sie, u. s. w.) lobe; daß er (sie, u. s. w.) lobe, er (sie, u. s. w.) mag loben, er (sie, u. j. w. soll loben,	}	let him (her &c.) praise.
--	---	---------------------------------

*Plural.*

Loben wir, laßet uns loben, wir wollen loben, Lobet or lobt (loben Sie), Loben sie or sie loben, daß sie loben, sie mögen loben, sie sollen loben,	}	let us praise. praise (ye). let them praise.
---	---	---

(See REMARK, page 81.)

III.

MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF A PASSIVE  
VERB.

*Obs. A.* The passive verbs are conjugated in all their tenses with the auxiliary werden<sup>1</sup>, to become, and the participle past of the active verb. After the following model all passive verbs are conjugated. (See *preliminary Observation*, page 76.)

*Infinitive present.*

Gelobt werden, to be praised.

*Participle present.*

Gelobt werdend, being praised.

<sup>1</sup> For the irregularity of this verb see the Table of the Irregular Verbs.

*Infinitive past.*

*Participle past.*

Gelobt worden seyn, to have been praised.  
 Gelobt worden<sup>2</sup>, been praised.

PRESENT. (See Lesson LVII.)

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I am praised, &c.

That I may be praised, &c.

Ich werde  
 du wirst  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) wird  
 wir werden  
 ihr werdet  
 sie werden

} gelobt.

daß ich gelobt werde,  
 daß du gelobt werdest,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelobt werde;  
 daß wir gelobt werden,  
 daß ihr gelobt werdet,  
 daß sie gelobt werden.

IMPERFECT. (See Lesson LXI.)

I was praised, &c.

That I might be praised<sup>4</sup>, &

Ich wurde  
 du wurdest  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) wurde<sup>3</sup>  
 wir wurden  
 ihr würdet  
 sie wurden

} gelobt.

Daß ich gelobt würde,  
 daß du gelobt würdest,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelobt würde;  
 daß wir gelobt würden,  
 daß ihr gelobt würdet,  
 daß sie gelobt würden.

PERFECT. (See *Obs. A.* page 76.)

*Obs. B.* The learners must notice that it is the auxiliary seyn which is employed in the formation of the Perfect and Pluperfect of passive verbs, as:

*Indicative.*

*Subjunctive.*

I have been praised, &c.

That I might have been praised, &c.

Ich bin  
 du bist  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) ist  
 wir sind  
 ihr seyd  
 sie sind

} gelobt worden.

daß ich gelobt worden sey,  
 daß du gelobt worden seyest (seyst),  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelobt worden sey;  
 daß wir gelobt worden seyen,  
 daß ihr gelobt worden seyed,  
 daß sie gelobt worden seyen.

<sup>2</sup> As auxiliary of passive verbs, the past participle of the verb werden rejects, for the sake of euphony, the syllable ge, and is worden, instead of geworden. (See Lesson LXI.)

<sup>3</sup> When werden is not employed as an auxiliary in passive verbs, its imperfect is also: ich ward, I became; du wardst, thou becamest; er ward, he became; instead of ich wurde u. s. w. (See Lesson LXI.)

<sup>4</sup> Or, ich würde gelobt, I might be praised; wenn ich gelobt würde, if I were praised.

**PLUPERFECT.** (See the foregoing *Obs.* and *Obs. B.* page 77.)

*Indicative.*

I had been praised, &c.

Ich war du warst er sie, (u. s. w.) war wir waren ihr waret sie waren	}	gelobt worden.
--	---	----------------

*Subjunctive.*

That I might have been praised<sup>s</sup>, &c.

Daß ich gelobt worden wäre,  
 daß du gelobt worden wärest,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelobt worden wäre;  
 daß wir gelobt worden wären,  
 daß ihr gelobt worden wäret,  
 daß sie gelobt worden wären.

**FUTURE.** (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

I shall be praised, &c.

Ich werde du wirst er (sie, u. s. w.) wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	}	gelobt werden.
--	---	----------------

That I shall be praised, &c.

Daß ich gelobt werden werde<sup>6</sup>,  
 daß du gelobt werden werdest,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelobt werden werde;  
 daß wir gelobt werden werden,  
 daß ihr gelobt werden werdet,  
 daß sie gelobt werden werden.

**FUTURE PAST.** (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

I shall have been praised, &c.

Ich werde du wirst er (sie, u. s. w.) wird wir werden ihr werdet sie werden	}	gelobt worden seyn.
--	---	------------------------

That I shall have been praised, &c.

Daß ich gelobt worden seyn werde<sup>7</sup>,  
 daß du gelobt worden seyn werdest,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelobt worden seyn werde;  
 daß wir gelobt worden seyn werden,  
 daß ihr gelobt worden seyn werdet,  
 daß sie gelobt worden seyn werden.

<sup>5</sup> Or, ich wäre gelobt worden, I might have been praised; wenn ich gelobt worden wäre, if I had been praised.

<sup>6</sup> Or, daß ich werde gelobt werden (see Lesson LXXXIV.  A.); or, man sagt, ich werde gelobt werden, they say I shall be praised.

<sup>7</sup> Or, daß ich werde gelobt worden seyn (see  A. Lesson LXXXIV.); or man hofft, ich werde gelobt worden seyn, they hope I shall have been praised.

**CONDITIONALS.** (See *Obs. E., F. and G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

*Past.*

I should be praised, &c.

I should have been praised, &c.

Ich würde	}	gelobt wer-	den.
du würdest			
er (sie, u. s. w.) würde			
wir würden			
ihr würdet			
sie würden			

Ich würde	}	gelobt wor-	den seyn.
du würdest			
er (sie, u. s. w.) würde			
wir würden			
ihr würdet			
sie würden			

**IMPERATIVE.** (See Lesson XCV. and XCVII.)

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person.)

Werde gelobt, be (thou)	}	let him	(her, &c.)	be	praised.
Werde er (sie, u. s. w.)					
gelobt,					
er (sie, u. s. w.) werde					
gelobt,					
daß er (sie, u. s. w.)					
gelobt werde,					
er (sie, u. s. w.) mag					
gelobt werden,					
er (sie, u. s. w.) soll ge-					
lobt werden,					

Werden wir gelobt,	}	let us	be	praised.
laßet uns gelobt werden,				
wir wollen gelobt werden,				

Werdet (werden Sie)	}	let them	be	praised.
(ye) praised.				

Werden sie or sie werden	}	let them	be	praised.
gelobt,				
daß sie gelobt werden,				
sie mögen gelobt werden,				
sie sollen gelobt werden,				

(See **REMARK**, page 81.)

**IV.**

**MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF A NEUTER VERB.**

*Obs.* Neuter verbs are conjugated like the active; but the latter always form their past tenses with the auxiliary *haben*, whilst there are some neuter verbs which take *seyn*, and others which take *haben* for their auxiliary. (See Lesson XLVI.) According to the following model all those that take *seyn* are conjugated.

*Infinitive present.*

*Participle present.*

Landen, to land (to come ashore), Landend, landing.

*Infinitive past.*  
Gelandet seyn, to have landed.

*Participle past.*  
Gelandet, landed.

**PRESENT.**

*Indicative.*

I land, &c.

Ich lande,  
du landest,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) landet;  
wir landen,  
ihr landet,  
sie landen.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may land, &c.

Daß ich lande,  
daß du landest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) lande;  
daß wir landen,  
daß ihr landet,  
daß sie landen.

**IMPERFECT.**

I landed, &c.

Ich landete,  
du landetest,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) landete;  
wir landeten,  
ihr landetet,  
sie landeten.

That I might land, &c.

Daß ich landete,  
daß du landetest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) landete;  
daß wir landeten,  
daß ihr landetet,  
daß sie landeten.

**PERFECT.** (See *Obs. A.* page 76.)

I have landed, &c.

Ich bin  
du bist  
er (sie, u. s. w.) ist  
wir sind  
ihr seyd  
sie sind

} gelandet.

That I might have landed, &c.

Daß ich gelandet sey,  
daß du gelandet seyst,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelandet sey;  
daß wir gelandet seyen,  
daß ihr gelandet seyed,  
daß sie gelandet seyen.

**PLUPERFECT.** (See *Obs. B.* page 77.)

I had landed, &c.

Ich war  
du warst  
er (sie, u. s. w.) war  
wir waren  
ihr waret  
sie waren

} gelandet.

That I might have landed, &c.

Daß ich gelandet wäre,  
daß du gelandet wärest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) gelandet wäre;  
daß wir gelandet wären,  
daß ihr gelandet wäret,  
daß sie gelandet wären.

**FUTURE PRESENT.** (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

I shall land, &c.

Ich werde landen, u. s. w.

That I shall land, &c.

Daß ich landen werde, u. s. w.

**FUTURE PAST.** (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

I shall have landed, &c.      That I shall have landed, &c.  
 Ich werde gelandet seyn, u. s. w.      Daß ich gelandet seyn werde <sup>1</sup>, u. s. w.

**CONDITIONALS.** (See *Obs. E., F. and G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

*Past.*

I should land, &c.      I should have landed, &c.  
 Ich würde landen, u. s. w.      Ich würde gelandet seyn, u. s. w.

**IMPERATIVE.** (See *Lessons XCV. and XCVII.*)

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person).

Lande, land (thou).

Lande er (sie, u. s. w.),

er (sie, u. s. w.) laude,

daß er (sie; u. s. w.) lande,

er (sie, n. s. w.) mag landen,

er (sie, u. s. w.) soll landen.

} let him  
 (her,  
 &c.)  
 land.

Landen wir,

lasset uns landen,

wir wollen landen,

Landet (landen *Ste*), land (ye).

Landen sie or sie landen,

daß sie landen,

sie mögen landen,

sie sollen landen.

} let us land.  
 }  
 } let them  
 } land.

(See **REMARK** page 81.)

**OBSERVATIONS ON NEUTER VERBS TAKING seyn FOR THEIR AUXILIARY.**

*Obs. A.* Those neuter verbs which have an active signification take generally *haben* for their auxiliary, *e. g.* *arbeiten*, to work; *siegen*, to vanquish; those which are quite neuter are conjugated with *seyn*, *e. g.* *sinfen*, to sink; *sterben*, to die.

*Obs. B.* Neuter verbs expressing a sound or noise are conjugated with *haben*; *e. g.* *bellen*, to bark; *brausen*, to rush, to roar; *brüllen*, to roar, to bellow; *donnern*, to thunder; *gellen*, to sound loudly; *girren*, to coo, to crookle; *grunzen*, to grunt, to grumble; *knallen*, to crack, to clap; *pfeifen*, to whistle; *schallen*, to sound, to echo (*erschallen*\*, to resound, takes *seyn*); *schreien*, to scream; *tönen*, to sound, to tune.

<sup>1</sup> Or, *ich werde gelandet seyn.* (See  **A. Lesson LXXXIV.**) <sup>1</sup>

*Obs. C.* With *seyn* are conjugated:

a) Neuter verbs expressing a change, or transition, from one state or condition to another; *e. g.* *ausarten*, to degenerate; *ausfallen*, to fall out, to turn out; *ein-schlafen*, to fall asleep; *erfalten*, to grow cold; *erröthen*, to grow red, to blush; *erblaffen*, to grow pale; *erschref-fen*, to get frightened; *genesen*, to recover; *gerathen*, to get into, to fall into, to prosper; *schwellen*, to swell; *ver-armen*, to grow poor; *verblühen*, to wither; *verhungern*, to perish of hunger; *verschwinden*, to disappear; *wachsen*, to grow; *entschlafen*, to expire; *erbleichen*, to grow pale (to die); *umkommen*, to perish; &c.

b) Such neuter verbs as denote motion with reference to locality, *i. e.* place or distance, *e. g.* *folgen*, to follow; *gehen*, to go; *kommen*, to come; *weichen*, to give way; *aufstehen*, to get up, to rise; *abreisen*, to set off, to de-part; *eintreffen*, to arrive at; *anlangen*, to arrive; *aus-steigen*, to get out; &c.

*Obs. D* Some neuter verbs that take *seyn*, are also used as active verbs, which require *haben*. The principal are:

*Ausbrennen\**, to consume, to burn out. *Ex.* *Das Feuer hat den Thon ausgebrannt*, the fire has consumed the clay. *Das Feuer ist ausgebrannt*, the fire has burnt out, has ceased burning.

*Eilen*, to hasten. *Ich habe mit meiner Reise geeilt*, I have hastened with my journey, made it in haste. *Ich bin nach der Stadt geeilt*, I hastened to town.

*Fahren\**, to move some one or something by a car-riage, to go in a carriage, to drive. *Der Kutscher hat seinen Herrn gefahren*, the coachman drove his master. *Der Herr ist gefahren*, the master went in a carriage.

*Fließen\**, to flow. *Die Röhre hat geflossen*, the pipe has flowed, trickled. *Das Wasser ist aus der Röhre geflossen*, the water has flowed from the pipe.

*Frieren\**, to freeze. *Wir haben die ganze Nacht gefroren*, we suffered from cold all night. *Die Erde ist gefroren*, the earth is frozen.

Reiten\*, to ride, to go on horseback. Ich habe den Schimmel und mein Vater hat den Fuchs geritten, I rode the white horse and my father the chesnut-horse. Ich bin nach Berlin geritten, I went on horseback to Berlin.

Schwimmen\*, to swim. Er ist an das Land geschwommen, he reached the land by swimming. Er hat den ganzen Tag geschwommen, he swam the whole day.

Traben, to trot. Er ist zum Thore hinaus getrabt, he trotted out of the city-gate. Er hat eine Stunde lang getrabt, he has been trotting for an hour.

Treten\*, to tread, to step. Er ist in die Stube getreten, he stepped into the room. Er hat mir den Fuß wund getreten, he wounded my foot by treading upon it.

Umwerfen\*, to overset, to overturn. Der Fuhrmann hat uns umgeworfen, the coachman has overset us. Der Wagen ist umgeworfen, the carriage has overturned.

Ziehen\*, to draw, to move, to remove, to proceed. Er hat den Wagen gezogen, he has drawn the carriage. Er ist nach Paris gezogen, he has removed to (is gone to live in) Paris.

---

## A T A B L E

OF

REGULAR AND IRREGULAR NEUTER VERBS, WHICH ARE CONJUGATED WITH *seyn*.

*Obs.* The verbs marked with a cross (†) take either *haben* or *seyn*, according to their signification being more or less active, and those marked with an asterisk (\*) are irregular.

Anfangen, to arrive.

Arten, to thrive, and *ausarten*,  
to degenerate.

Aufleben, to revive, to return  
to life.

Aufwachen, to awake.

Ausſchlagen\*, to bud.

Begegnen, to meet with.

Berſten\*, to burst.

Bleiben\*, to remain.

Dringen\*, to penetrate, to pierce.

Eilen†, to hasten. (See *Obs. D.*)

Einbraten\*, to be lessened by  
roasting.

- Einkehren, to put up, to alight.  
 Einkochen, to be diminished by boiling.  
 Einschlafen\*, to fall asleep.  
 Einsieden\*, to seeth down.  
 Eintreffen\*, to arrive.  
 Entschlafen\*, to fall asleep, to expire.  
 Entweichen, to escape.  
 Erblaffen, to grow pale, to die.  
 Erbleichen\*, to grow pale, to expire.  
 Erfrieren\*, to freeze to death.  
 Ergrimmen, to grow furious.  
 Erkalten, to grow cold.  
 Erlahmen\*, to become lame.  
 Erlöschen\*, to be extinguished.  
 Ermüden, to be tired.  
 Erröthen\*, to grow red, to blush.  
 Ertaufen\*, to be drowned.  
 Erschallen\*, to resound.  
 Erscheinen\*, to appear.  
 Erschrecken\*, to be frightened.  
 Erstarren, to be benumbed, to stiffen.  
 Erstaunen, to be astonished.  
 Ersticken, to be suffocated.  
 Erstummen, to be struck dumb.  
 Ertrinken\*, to be drowned.  
 Erwachen, to awake.  
 Fahren\*, to go in a carriage.  
 (See *Obs. D.*)  
 Fallen\*, to fall.  
 Faulen, to rot<sup>2</sup>.  
 Flattern, to flutter.  
 Fliegen\*, to fly.  
 Fliehen\*, to flee.  
 Fließen\*, to flow. (See *Obs. D.*)  
 Folgen<sup>3</sup>, to follow.  
 Frieren\*†, to freeze. (See *Obs. D.*)  
 Gedeihen\*, to prosper.  
 Gehen\*, to go.  
 Gelangen (zu Etwas), to attain (to anything).  
 Gelingen\*, to succeed.  
 Genesen\*, to recover.  
 Gerathen\*, to get into, so succeed.  
 Gerinnen\*, to coagulate, to congeal.  
 Geschehen\*, to happen.  
 Gewöhnen, to get accustomed to.  
 Gleiten\*, to glide, to slip.  
 Glitschen, to slide, to slip.  
 Heilen, to heal, to grow well.  
 Herumschweifen, to rove about.  
 Hüpfen, to hop, to jump.  
 Klettern, to climb, to clamber.  
 Klimmen\*, to climb.  
 Kommen\*<sup>4</sup>, to come.  
 Kriechen\*, to creep, to crawl.  
 Landen, to land, to come ashore.  
 Laufen\*, to run.  
 Reisen, to travel.  
 Reiten\*, to ride. (See *Obs. D.*)  
 Rennen\*, to run.  
 Rinnen\*<sup>5</sup>, to gutter, to flow.  
 Rollen, to roll.  
 Rücken, to come forth, to advance.  
 Scheiden\*, to withdraw, to depart.  
 Schießen\*, to shoot, to rush, to dart.  
 Schiffen\*, to navigate.  
 Aus der Art schlagen\*, to degenerate (in this acceptation only).

<sup>2</sup> And its compound verfaulen, to become rotten, to putrify.

<sup>3</sup> And its compound nachfolgen, to succeed, to come after.

<sup>4</sup> And all its compounds, as aufkommen, to arrive; untkommen, to perish; wiederkommen, to come again; zukommen, to anticipate, &c.

<sup>5</sup> And its compounds, entinnen, to run away, to escape &c.

Schleichen*, to go softly.	Verbrennen*†, to burn. (See <i>Obs. D.</i> )
Schlüpfen, to slip.	Verderben*†, to be spoiled.
Schmelzen*, to melt.	Verdorren, to dry up.
Schreiten*, to stride, to step.	Verhärten, to harden.
Schwellen*, to swell.	Verhungern, to die of hunger.
Schwimmen*†, to swim. (See <i>Obs. D.</i> )	Verlöschen*, to become extinct.
Schwinden* <sup>6</sup> , to vanish.	Vermodern, to moulder, to decay.
Segeln, to sail.	Verrauchen, to evaporate, to exhale.
Sinken*, to sink.	Verrosten, to rust.
Springen*, to spring, to leap.	Verfauern, to become sour.
Stehen* <sup>7</sup> , to stand.	Ver schrumpfen, to shrivel up, to shrink.
Steigen*, to mount, to ascend.	Verstummen, to become speechless.
Sterben*, to die, to decease.	Verwelken, to wither, to fade.
Stolpern, to stumble.	Verwefen, to rot, to corrupt.
Stranden, to be stranded.	Verwildern, to grow wild.
Straucheln, to strumble, to make a false step.	Verzagen, to lose courage, to despair.
Streifen (and herumstreifen), to rove.	Verzweifeln, to despond, to despair.
Stürzen, to fall suddenly, to rush.	Wachsen*, to grow, to wax.
Traben†, to trot. (See <i>Obs. D.</i> )	Wandeln, to walk.
Treten†, to tread. (See <i>Obs. D.</i> )	Wandern, to wander.
Umschlagen*, to fall over with violence.	Weichen*, to yield, to give way.
Veralten, to grow old or out of use.	Werden*, to become.
Verarmen, to become poor.	Ziehen*†, to go, to pass. (See <i>Obs. D.</i> )
Verbleichen*, to grow pale, to fade.	

V.

MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTIVE  
VERB GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

(See Lesson LXXII.)

*Infinitive present.*

*Participle present.*

Sich freuen, to rejoice.

Sich freuend, rejoicing.

<sup>6</sup> And its compound verschwinden, to disappear.

<sup>7</sup> This verb takes seyn only in Jewish style, and in some of its compounds, as aufstehen, to rise, to get up. Ex. Ich bin aufgestanden, I rose.

*Infinitive past.*

Sich gefreut haben, to have rejoiced.

*Participle past.*

Sich gefreut, rejoiced.

**PRESENT.**

*Indicative.*

I rejoice, &c.

Ich freue mich,  
du freuest dich,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) freuet sich;  
wir freuen uns,  
ihr freuet euch,  
sie freuen sich.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may rejoice, &c.

Daß ich mich freue,  
daß du dich freuest,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) sich freue;  
daß wir uns freuen,  
daß ihr euch freuet,  
daß sie sich freuen.

**IMPERFECT.**

I rejoiced, &c.

Ich freute mich, u. s. w.

That I might rejoice, &c.

Daß ich mich freuete, u. s. w.

**PERFECT.** (See *Obs. A.* page 76.)

I have rejoiced, &c.

Ich habe mich gefreut, u. s. w.

That I may have rejoiced, &c.

Daß ich mich gefreut habe, u. s. w.

**PLUPERFECT.** (See *Obs. B.* page 77.)

I have rejoiced, &c.

Ich hatte mich gefreut, u. s. w.

That I might have rejoiced, &c.

Daß ich mich gefreut hätte, u. s. w.

**FUTURE PRESENT.** (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

I shall rejoice, &c.

Ich werde mich freuen, u. s. w.

That I shall rejoice, &c.

Daß ich mich freuen werde, u. s. w.

**FUTURE PAST.** (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Ich werde mich gefreut haben, u. s. w.

That I shall have rejoiced, &c.

Daß ich mich gefreut haben werde,  
u. s. w.

**CONDITIONALS.** (See *Obs. E. F. and G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

I should rejoice, &c.

Ich würde mich freuen, u. s. w.

*Past.*

I should have rejoiced, &c.

Ich würde mich gefreut haben, u. s. w.

1 Or werde gefreut haben. (See *Obs. A.* Lesson LXXXIV.)

IMPERATIVE. (See Lessons XCV. and XCVII.)

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person.)  
Freue dich, rejoice (thou).

Freue er (sie, u. s. w.) sich,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) freue sich,  
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) sich freue,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) mag sich freuen,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) soll sich freuen,

let  
him  
(her,  
&c.)  
re-  
joice.

Freuen wir uns,  
wir wollen uns freuen,  
Freuet euch (freuen Sie sich) re-  
joice (ye).

} let us  
rejoice.

Freuen sie sich,  
sie freuen sich,  
daß sie sich freuen,  
sie mögen sich freuen,  
sie sollen sich freuen,

} let them  
rejoice.

(See Remark, page 81.)

MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF A REFLECTIVE  
VERB GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

(See Lesson LXXII.)

*Infinitive present.*

Sich schmeicheln, to flatter one's  
self.

*Present participle.*

Sich schmeichelnd, flattering one's  
self.

*Infinitive past.*

Sich geschmeichelt haben, to have  
flattered one's self.

*Past participle.*

Sich geschmeichelt, flattered one's  
self.

PRESENT.

*Indicative.*

I flatter myself, &c.

Ich schmeichle mir,  
du schmeichelst dir,  
er (sie, u. s. w.) schmeichelt sich;  
wir schmeicheln uns,  
ihr schmeichelt euch,  
sie schmeicheln sich.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may flatter myself, &c.

Daß ich mir schmeichle,  
daß du dir schmeichlest,  
daß er sich schmeichle;  
daß wir uns schmeicheln,  
daß ihr euch schmeichlet,  
daß sie sich schmeicheln.

IMPERFECT.

I flattered myself, &c.

Ich schmeichelte mir, u. s. w.

That I might flatter myself, &c.

Daß ich mir schmeichelte, u. s. w.

**PRESENT.** (See *Obs. A.* page 76.)

I have flattered myself, &c. That I may have flattered myself, &c.  
 Ich habe mir geschmeichelt, u. s. w. Daß ich mir geschmeichelt habe, u. s. w.

**PLUPERFECT.** (See *Obs. B.* page 77.)

I had flattered myself, &c. That I might have flattered myself, &c.  
 Ich hatte mir geschmeichelt, u. s. w. Daß ich mir geschmeichelt hätte, u. s. w.

**FUTURE PRESENT.** (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

I shall flatter myself, &c. That I shall flatter myself, &c.  
 Ich werde mir schmeicheln, u. s. w. Daß ich mir schmeicheln werde, u. s. w.

**FUTURE PAST.** (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

I shall have flattered myself, &c. That I shall have flattered myself, &c.  
 Ich werde mir geschmeichelt haben, u. s. w. Daß ich mir geschmeichelt haben werde<sup>2</sup>, u. s. w.

**CONDITIONALS.** (See *Obs. E., F. and G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

I should flatter myself, &c. I should have flattered myself, &c.  
 Ich würde mir schmeicheln, u. s. w. Ich würde mir geschmeichelt haben, u. s. w.

*Past.*

**IMPERATIVE.** (See *Lessons XCV. and XCVII.*

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

(No first person.)

Schmeichle dir, flatter thyself.	(thou)	Schmeicheln wir uns, wir wollen uns schmeicheln,	} let us flatter ourselves.
Schmeichle er (sie, u. s. w.) sich,	} let him (her &c.) flatter himself (her-self, &c.)	Schmeichelt euch (schmeicheln Sie sich), flatter yourselves.	
er (sie, u. s. w.) schmeichle sich,		Schmeicheln sie sich, sie schmeicheln sich,	} let them flatter themselves.
daß er (sie, u. s. w.) sich schmeichle,		daß sie sich schmeicheln,	
er (sie, u. s. w.) mag sich schmeicheln,		sie mögen sich schmeicheln,	
er (sie, u. s. w.) soll sich schmeicheln,		sie sollen sich schmeicheln,	

(See Remark, page 81.)

<sup>2</sup> Or, werde geschmeichelt haben. See  *A. Lesson LXXXIV.*

*Obs. A.* Most active verbs may be used as reflectives, *e. g.* ich liebe mich, I love myself; er lobt sich, he praises himself; but there are in German some that are always used as reflectives. Of these the following govern—

*a)* the Accusative.

Sich anschicken, to prepare.	Sich erbarmen*, to pity, to have mercy.
Sich aufhalten*, to sojourn, to stay, to live.	Sich erbrechen*, } to vomit.
Sich aufschwingen*, to rise.	Sich übergeben*, }
Sich äußern, to intimate, to come forth.	Sich freuen, to rejoice.
Sich bedanken, to thank for.	Sich fürchten, to be in fear.
Sich bedenken*, to consider.	Sich grämen, to grieve.
Sich befinden*, to find one's self.	Sich rühmen, to boast.
Sich befehlen*, to endeavour.	Sich schämen, to be ashamed.
Sich begeben*, to repair, to go to.	Sich sehnen, to long.
Sich behelfen*, to make shift.	Sich stellen, to feign.
Sich belaufen*, to amount.	Sich umsehen*, to look back.
Sich bemühen*, to endeavour.	Sich unterstehen*, to venture.
Sich besinnen*, to reflect.	Sich verfärben, to change colour.
Sich bewerben*, to sue.	Sich verlieben, to fall in love.
Sich enthalten*, to abstain.	Sich verstellen, to dissemble.
Sich entschließen*, to resolve.	Sich versündigen, to fall into sin.
	Sich weigern, to refuse, to decline.
	Sich widersetzen, to resist.

The following govern—*b)* the Dative.

Sich anmaßen, to claim, to presume.	Sich schmeicheln, to flatter one's self.
Sich ausbedingen, to reserve by certain conditions.	Sich vornehmen*, to resolve on.
Sich einbilden, to imagine.	Sich vorstellen*, to fancy, to imagine.
Sich getrauen, to be confident.	
Sich die Freiheit nehmen*, to take the liberty.	

*Obs. B.* Some verbs have a different signification when used as reflectives. Ex.

Sich bedenken*, to pause for the purpose of reflecting, to hesitate,	and bedenken*, to consider.
Sich berufen*, to appeal to,	„ berufen*, to call together, to appoint to an office.
Sich bescheiden*, to be contended with,	„ bescheiden*, to enjoin, to inform, to call.

Sich fürchten, to be afraid,	and fürchten, to fear.
Sich hüten, to beware,	„ hüten, to guard.
Sich an Etwas machen, to set about a thing,	„ machen, to make.
Sich stellen, to feign,	„ stellen, to place.
Sich verantworten, to defend one's self,	„ verantworten, to answer for.
Sich verlassen*, to rely upon,	„ verlassen, to leave.

*Obs. C.* Some neuter verbs are used as such and as reflectives. Ex.

Irren and sich irren, to be mistaken.

Zanken and sich zanken, to quarrel.

Scheuen, to shun, is active, and sich scheuen, to be afraid of, reflective.

*Obs. D.* In some expressions neuter verbs assume the form of reflectives. Ex.

Sich krank essen\*, trinken\*, sitzen\*, u. s. w., to make one's self sick by eating, drinking, sitting, &c.

Sich heiser reden, to talk one's self hoarse.

Sich außer Athem laufen\*, to lose one's breath by running.

Sich zu Tode laufen\*, saufen\*, u. s. w., to kill one's self by running, drinking, &c.

Sich arm saufen\*, to become poor by drinking.

Sich aus einem Handel herauslügen\*, to get out of a scrape by lying.

---

## VI.

### MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB.

(See Lesson LVIII.)

*Preliminary Obs.* Impersonal verbs having no determinate subject, are only conjugated in the third person singular, by means of the indefinite pronoun es, it.

*Infinitive present.*

Regnen, to rain.

*Infinitive past.*

Gereget haben, to have rained.

*Participle present.*

Regnend, raining.

*Participle past.*

Gereget, rained.

PRESENT.

*Indicative.*

Es regnet, it rains.

*Subjunctive.*

Daß es regne, that it may rain.

IMPERFECT.

Es regnete, it rained.

Daß es regnete, that it might rain.

PERFECT. (See *Obs. A.* page 76.)

Es hat gereget, it has rained. Daß es gereget habe, that it may have rained.

PLUPERFECT. (See *Obs. B.* page 77.)

Es hatte gereget, it had rained. Daß es gereget hätte, that it might have rained.

FUTURE PRESENT. (See *Obs. C.* page 77.)

Es wird regnen, it will rain. Daß es regnen werde, that it will rain.

FUTURE PAST. (See *Obs. D.* page 77.)

Es wird gereget haben, it will have rained. Daß es gereget haben werde, that it will have rained.

CONDITIONALS. (See *Obs. E., F.* and *G.* page 78.)

*Present.*

Es würde regnen, it would rain.

*Past.*

Es würde gereget haben, it would have rained.

(See Remark, page 81.)

*Obs. A.* There are:

a) Verbs which are impersonal from their nature, as the following:

*Examples.*

Blitzen, to lighten.

Es blitzt, it lightens.

Donnern, to thunder.

Es donnert, it thunders.

Frieren*, to freeze.	Es friert, it freezes.
Hageln, to hail.	Es hagelt, it hails.
Nebeln, to be foggy.	Es nebelt, it is foggy.
Reifen, to be a hoar frost.	Es reißt, it is a hoar frost.
Schneien, to snow.	Es schneit, it snows.
Thauen, to thaw.	Es thauet, it thaws.

b) Others which are only employed impersonally in certain expressions, as:

Heiß	to be hot.	Es ist heiß, it is hot.
Kalt	„ „ cold.	Es ist kalt, it is cold.
Schönes Wetter	„ „ fine weather.	Es ist schönes Wetter, it is fine weather.
Schlechtes Wetter	seyn*, „ „ bad weather.	Es ist schlechtes Wetter, it is bad weather.
Schmutzig	„ „ dirty.	Es ist schmutzig, it is dirty.
Warm	„ „ warm.	Es ist warm, it is warm.
Windig	„ „ windy.	Es ist windig, it is windy.
Geben*, } Seyn*, }	to be.	Es gibt Leute, welche nicht arbeiten wollen, there are people who will not work. Es ist Wein in der Flasche, there is wine in the bottle.

Einschlagen\*, to strike. Es hat eingeschlagen<sup>1</sup>, the lightning has struck.

Auf Etwas aufkommen\*, to depend upon, to be the question. Es kommt darauf an, it depends upon, it is the question.

Sich begeben*, Sich ereignen*, Geschehen*, Sich zutragen*, Sich gebühren, Sich gehören, Sich geziemen, Sich schicken,	to happen. to be fit, proper or decent, to behove.	Es begibt sich, Es ereignet sich, Es geschieht, Es trägt sich zu, Es gebührt sich, Es gehört sich, Es geziemt sich, Es schießt sich,	it happens. it is fit, proper or decent, it behoves.
--	--	---	--

*Obs. B.* Of the impersonal verbs which relate to a person some govern the Dative, others the Accusative. (See *Obs. A. B.* Lesson LVIII.) Ex.

*Accusative.*

*Dative.*

Es hungert mich<sup>2</sup>, I am hungry. Es ahnet (ahnt) mir<sup>3</sup>, I forebode.  
Es hungert dich, thou art hungry. Es ahnet dir, thou forebodest.

<sup>1</sup> As if one said, das Wetter (der Donner) hat eingeschlagen, the lightning has struck.

<sup>2</sup> One may also say, mich hungert (*Obs. B.* Lesson LVIII.); or ich bin hungrig, ich habe Hunger. (Lesson VII.)

<sup>3</sup> Or, mir ahnet. (*Obs. B.* Lesson LVIII.)

*Accusative.*

Es hungert ihn, he is hungry.  
 Es hungert sie, she is hungry.  
 Es hungert uns, we are hungry.  
 Es hungert euch, you are hungry.  
 Es hungert sie, they are hungry.  
 Es hungert diesen Mann, this man is hungry.

*Dative.*

Es ahnet ihm, he forebodes.  
 Es ahnet ihr, she forebodes.  
 Es ahnet uns, we forebode.  
 Es ahnet euch, you forebode.  
 Es ahnet ihnen, they forebode.  
 Es ahnet diesem Manne, this man forebodes.

a) The following impersonal verbs govern the Accusative:

*Examples.*

Befremden, to be surprised.  
 Dünken, to seem, to think.

Es befremdet mich, I am surprised.  
 Es dünkt mich or mich dünkt, methinks.

Dürsten, to be thirsty.  
 Freuen<sup>4</sup>, to rejoice, to be glad.  
 Frieren\*, to freeze, to be cold (chilled).

Es dürstet mich, I am thirsty.  
 Es freut dich, thou art glad.  
 Es friert ihn, he is cold (chilled).

Hungern, to be hungry.  
 Reuen, to repent.  
 Schauern (schauern), to shudder.

Es hungert sie, she is hungry.  
 Es reuet sie, they repent.  
 Es schauert (schauert) sie, they shudder.

Schläfern, to be sleepy.  
 Verdrießen\*, to be grieved, vexed.  
 Verlangen, to long for.  
 Wundern<sup>5</sup>, to wonder.

Es schläfert mich, I am sleepy.  
 Es verdrießt dich, thou art grieved.  
 Es verlangt ihn, he longs for.  
 Es wundert sie, she wonders.

b) The following impersonal verbs govern the Dative:

Ahnen, to forebode.  
 Angst sein\*, to be in fear.  
 Begegnen, to happen.

Es ahnet mir, I forebode.  
 Es ist dir Angst, thou art in fear.  
 Es begegnet ihm, it happens to him.

Behagen, to delight in.  
 Belieben, to please.  
 Däunen, to seem.  
 Ekeln, to loathe, to disgust!  
 Fehlen (See *Obs. C.* hereafter) (mangeln), to be wanting.  
 Gebühren, to be due.  
 Gefallen\*, to please.

Es behagt ihr, she delights in it.  
 Es beliebt ihnen, they please.  
 Es dünkt mir, it seems to me.  
 Es ekest mir, it loathes me.  
 Es fehlt (mangelt) mir an Geld, I am wanting money.  
 Es gebührt ihm, it is due to him.  
 Es gefällt ihr hier, she pleases herself here<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> This verb is also reflexive, as, ich freue mich, I rejoice.

<sup>5</sup> Is also reflexive, as, du wunderst dich, thou art surprised.

<sup>6</sup> Es gefällt mir hier, I please myself here; es gefällt ihm hier, he pleases himself here: wie gefällt es Ihnen in Paris? how do you please yourself in Paris?

Gehen*, to go on, to be off.	{ Es geht ihnen wohl, they are well off. Es geht mir schlecht, I am badly off. Wie geht es Ihnen? how goes it with you? how do you do? Es gehört dir, it belongs to thee. Es gelingt (glückt) ihm, he succeeds. Es graut ihr, she is afraid. Es ist mir kalt, I am cold. Es fällt (ist) dir leicht, it is easy to thee. Es fällt ihr schwer, it is difficult to her. Es ist (thut) ihnen leid, they are sorry for it. Es ist mir lieb, I am glad of it. Es mißfällt dir, it displeases thee. Es mißlingt ihm, he does not succeed. Es mißrath ihr, she does not succeed. Es scheint Ihnen, it seems to you. Es träumt ihnen, they dream. Es ist mir übel, I am ill, I feel sick. Es kommt dir vor, it seems to thee. Es ist ihm warm, he is warm. Es bekommt ihr wohl, it does her much good, it agrees with her.
Gehören, to belong, to appertain.	
Gelingen*, ( to succeed.	
Glücken,	
Grauen, to be afraid.	
Kalt seyn*, to be cold.	
Leicht fallen* (seyn*), to be easy.	
Schwer fallen*, to be difficult.	
Leid seyn* or thun*, to be sorry.	
Lieb seyn*, to be glad.	
Mißfallen*, to displease.	
Mißlingen*, } not to succeed.	
Mißrathen*, }	
Scheinen*, to seem, to appear.	
Träumen*, to dream.	
Uebel seyn, to be ill, to feel sick.	
Vorkommen*, to seem, to appear.	
Warm seyn*, to be warm.	
Wohl bekommen*, to be salutary, to agree with.	

*Obs. C.* In the following expressions the verb *fehlen* is rendered in a peculiar way.

Es fehlte nicht viel, so wäre er getödtet worden.	He was likely to have been killed.
An mir soll es nicht fehlen.	I shall not be wanting on my part.
Was fehlt Ihnen?	What is the matter with you?

### III. COMPOUND VERBS.

#### (Lesson XXVII.)

Compound verbs are formed by the combination of a simple verb with prepositions, adverbs, adjectives, and substantives. Ex.

Aufstehen*, to get up,	is formed of	stehen, to stand,	and	auf, up.
Loßbinden*, to untie,	„ „	binden, to bind,	and	loß, loose.
Lieblosen, to caress,	„ „	losen, to choose and	lieb,	dear.
Rechtfertigen, to justify,	„ „	fertigen, to make, to finish,	and	das Recht, the right.

They are divided into Inseparable and Separable verbs.

1. Inseparable are :

a) All those beginning with one of the unaccented particles; *be, emp, ent, er, ge, ver, zer.* (See page 68 et seqq.)

b) All those preceded by one of the following prepositions, when they are unaccented; *durch, hinter, über, um, unter, voll<sup>1</sup>, wider, wieder.* (Lesson XLVII.)

*Obs. A.* These latter, except *wider*, are also separable under certain significations. (See infra page 107 et seqq.)

*Obs. B.* Verbs compounded of a substantive or an adjective and a verb, always take, in the past participle, the syllable *ge*, whilst those preceded by an inseparable particle never take it. (Lesson XLVII.), as :

Brandmarfen, to stigmatize.	Man hat ihn gebrandmarfft, he has been stigmatized.
Rechtfertigen, to justify.	Er hat sich gerechtfertigt, he has justified himself.
Weißagen, to prophesy.	Man hat ihm geweißagt, it has been prophesied to him.

2. For the list of separable prepositions, adverbs, and particles, see Lesson XXVII.

## MODEL OF THE CONJUGATION OF A SEPARABLE COMPOUND VERB.

(Lesson XXVII.)

*Infinitive present.*

Abschreiben<sup>2</sup>, to copy.

*Participle present.*

Abschreibend, copying.

<sup>1</sup> *Voll* and *wieder* are rather adverbs than prepositions.

<sup>2</sup> It will be remembered that when there is *zu* before the infinitive, it is placed between the separable participle and the verb, as, *ich habe*

*Infinitive past.*

Abgeschrieben haben, to have copied.

*Participle past.*

Abgeschrieben, copied.

PRESENT.

*Indicative.*

I copy the letter.  
Ich schreibe den Brief ab.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may copy the letter.  
Daß ich den Brief abschreibe.

IMPERFECT.

I copied the letter.  
Ich schrieb den Brief ab.

That I might copy the letter.  
Daß ich den Brief abschriebe.

*Obs. C.* Here it may be seen that when the verb which a conjunctive word causes to be placed at the end of the phrase, is compounded with a separable particle, this is not detached from it, as: Sie wollen, daß ich Ihren Brief abschreibe, you wish me to copy your letter; ich wünschte, daß Sie ihn selbst abschrieben, I wish you would copy it yourself; der Mann, welcher den Brief abschrieb, the man who copied the letter.

PERFECT.

*Indicative.*

I have copied the letter.  
Ich habe den Brief abgeschlossen.

*Subjunctive.*

That I may have copied it.  
Daß ich ihn abgeschlossen habe.

PLUPERFECT.

I had copied the letter.  
Ich hatte den Brief abgeschlossen.

That I might have copied it.  
Daß ich ihn abgeschlossen hätte.

*Obs. D.* Here it may be seen how in the past participle the separable particle gives way to the syllable ge. (Lesson XXVII.)

FUTURE PRESENT.

I shall copy the letter.  
Ich werde den Brief abschreiben.

That I shall copy the letter.  
Daß ich den Brief abschreiben werde.

FUTURE PAST.

I shall have copied the letter.  
Ich werde den Brief abgeschlossen haben.

That I shall have copied it.  
Daß ich ihn werde abgeschlossen haben.

einen Brief abzuschreiben, I have to copy a letter; geben Sie mir Papier, um meinen Brief abzuschreiben, give me paper to copy my letter.

CONDITIONALS.

*Present.*

*Past.*

I would copy the letter, if I had time. I would have copied it, if I had had time.  
 Ich würde den Brief abschreiben, wenn ich Zeit hätte. Ich würde ihn abgeschrieben haben, wenn ich Zeit gehabt hätte.

IMPERATIVE.

*Singular.*

Schreibe ab, copy (thou).  
 Schreibe er (sie, u. s. w.) den Brief ab,  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) schreibe den Brief ab,  
 daß er (sie, u. s. w.) den Brief abschreibe,  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) mag den Brief abschreiben,  
 er (sie, u. s. w.) soll den Brief abschreiben, } let him (her, &c.) copy the letter.

*Plural.*

Schreiben wir den Brief ab,  
 laßt uns den Brief abschreiben,  
 wir wollen den Brief abschreiben, } let us copy the letter.  
 Schreibt or schreibt (schreiben Sie) den Brief ab, copy (ye) the letter.

Schreiben sie den Brief ab,  
 sie schreiben den Brief ab,  
 daß sie den Brief abschreiben,  
 sie mögen den Brief abschreiben,  
 sie sollen den Brief abschreiben, } let them copy the letter.

(See Remark, page 81.)

For examples of the compound verbs, see the Table of Compound Verbs, Lesson XXVII.

VERBS WHICH ARE INSEPARABLE UNDER CERTAIN SIGNIFICATIONS, AND SEPARABLE UNDER OTHERS.

Verbs compounded of the particles durch, hinter, über, um, unter, voll, wieder, are inseparable when these particles may be considered as adverbs, and separable when they must be considered as prepositions. In the first case the verb has the tonic accent, in the latter the particle has it. Examples.

*Signification under which they are inseparable.*

**Durch.**—Durchreisen, to traverse. Er durchreiset ganz Europa, he traverses all Europe; er hat ganz Europa durchreiset, he has traversed all Europe; um ganz Europa zu durchreisen, in order to traverse all Europe.

**Durch.**—Durchbrechen, to pierce. Die Arbeit ist durchbrochen, the work is pierced; zu durchbrechen, to pierce.

**Hinter.**—Hinterbringen, to apprise, to inform. Er hinterbrachte die Nachricht, he brought the news; er hat sie hinterbracht, he has brought it; um sie zu hinterbringen, in order to bring it.

**Ueber.**—Uebersetzen, to translate. Ich übersehe den Brief, I translate the letter; ich habe ihn übersetzt, I have translated it; um ihn zu übersetzen, in order to translate it.

**Um.**—Umgehen, to avoid. Er umging die Stadt, he avoided the town; er hat die Stadt umgangen, he has avoided the town; um die Stadt zu umgehen, in order to avoid the town.

**Unter.**—Unterschreiben, to sign. Ich unterschreibe, I sign; ich habe unterschrieben, I have signed; es wäre nöthig, zu unterschreiben, it would be necessary to sign.

*Signification under which they are separable.*

**Durchreisen,** to travel through. Er reiset hier durch, he travels through this place; er ist hier durchgereiset, he has travelled through this place; um hier durchzureisen, in order to travel through this place.

**Durchbrechen,** to break through. Der Gefangene ist durchgebrochen, the prisoner has broken through; er versuchte durchzubrechen, he tried to break through.

**Hinterbringen,** to carry, to take behind. Er brachte es hinter das Haus, he carried it behind the house; er hat es hinter das Haus gebracht, he has carried it behind the house; um es hinterzubringen, in order to carry it behind.

**Uebersetzen,** to pass over. Ich setze über den Fluß, I pass (over) the river; ich bin übergesetzt worden, I was passed the river; um mich überzusetzen, to pass me over.

**Umgehen,** to make a round about way, to have intercourse, to associate (to converse). Ich ging mit ihm um, I associated (conversed) with him; ich bin mit ihm umgegangen, I have associated with him; um mit ihm umzugehen, in order to associate with him.

**Unterschreiben,** to write under. Er schrieb unter (nicht auf) der Linie, he wrote under (not upon) the line; er hat noch einige Worte unter die Bittschrift geschrieben, he wrote a few words more under the petition.

**Voll.** — **Vollziehen**, to execute. **Vollgießen**, to fill. Er goß das Glas voll, he filled the glass; er vollzog meinen Befehl, he executed my command; er hat meinen Befehl vollzogen, he has executed my command; um meinen Befehl zu vollziehen, in order to execute my command. er hat es vollgegossen, he has filled it; um es vollzugießen, in order to fill it.

**Wieder** <sup>3</sup>. — **Wiederholen**, to repeat. **Wiederholen**, to fetch back. Er holte das Vergessene wieder, he came to fetch back what he had forgotten; er hat sie wiederholt, he has repeated them; ich bat ihn, sie zu wiederholen, I begged of him to repeat them. er hat es wieder geholt, he has fetched it back; um es wieder zu holen, to fetch it back.

**Obs. E.** Verbs compounded with the particle *miß* are sometimes inseparable, sometimes separable.

a) The following are *inseparable*, and do not admit the syllable *ge* in the past participle.

**Mißfallen**\*, to displease; imperf. es mißfiel mir, it displeased me; perf. es hat mir mißfallen, it has displeased me; um zu mißfallen, in order to displease.

**Mißlingen**\*, not to succeed; imperf. es mißlang, it did not succeed; perf. es ist mißlungen, u. s. w.

**Mißrathen**\*, to fail of success, to turn out ill; imperf. es mißrieth mir; perf. es ist mir mißrathen, u. s. w.

**Mißtrauen**, to distrust; imperf. ich mißtraute ihm; perf. er hat mir mißtrauet, u. s. w.

**Mißverstehen**\*, to misunderstand; imperf. er mißverstand mich; perf. er hat es mißverstanden, u. s. w.

b) The following though inseparable, take, notwithstanding, the syllable *ge* in the past participle:

**Mißbilligen**, to disapprove; imperf. er mißbilligte es; perf. er hat es gemißbilligt; das ist zu mißbilligen, that is to be disapproved.

**3** **Wieder** must not be mistaken for *zurück*. The first denotes repetition of an action; the latter, as in English *back again*, denotes retrogression. Ex. **Zurückkommen**, to come back again; **wiederkommen**, to come again. It must not be mistaken for the inseparable particle *wider*, nor for the preposition *wider*, *against*. (See Lessons XXVII. and XCI.)

Mißbrauchen, to abuse, to misuse; imperf. er mißbrauchte es; perf. er hat es gemißbraucht, u. s. w.

Mißdeuten, to misinterpret; imperf. er mißdeutete es; perf. er hat es gemißdeutet, u. s. w.

Mißgönnen, to envy; imperf. er mißgönnte es mir; perf. er hat es mir gemißgönnt, u. s. w.

Mißkennen\*<sup>4</sup>, not to know; imperf. er mißkannte mich; perf. er hat mich gemißkannt, u. s. w.

Mißhandeln, to treat ill<sup>5</sup>; imperf. er mißhandelte ihn; perf. er hat ihn gemißhandelt, u. s. w.

c) The following are *separable*: insert zu in the infinitive, and ge in the past participle.

Mißachten, to despise; past part. mißgeachtet; um mißzuachten, in order to despise.

Mißarten, to degenerate; past part. mißgeartet; mißzuarten.

Mißbieten\*, to underbid; past part. mißgeboten; mißzubieten.

Mißgehen\*<sup>6</sup>, to go astray, to miscarry; past part. mißgegangen; mißzugehen.

Mißgreifen\*<sup>7</sup>, to fail, to mistake; past part. mißgegriffen, mißzugreifen.

Mißrechnen, to mistake in reckoning; past part. mißgerechnet, mißzurechnen.

Mißtönen, to sound wrong; past part. mißgetönt; mißzutönen.

4 The verb *verkennen\**, to mistake, to take for another, to misapprehend, is used in preference.

5 The verb *mißhandeln*, in the signification of *to trespass, to do wrong*, is *separable*; e. g. er handelt miß, he does wrong; er hat mißgehandelt, he has done wrong; um mißzuhandeln, in order to do wrong.

6 The verb *fehlgehen\**, to go wrong, is used in preference.

7 The verb *fehlgreifen\** is used in preference. It will be observed that the particle *fehl* is equally separable, and signifies, like *miß*, in vain, amiss, wrong, contrary to the end proposed.

*Obs. F.* When *ge* or *zu* is inserted in a compound verb, it must be written in one word, as, *mißzuachten*, *aufzustehen*, *aufgestanden*, u. s. w., and not *miß zu achten*, u. s. w.

*Obs. G.* Many substantives, adverbs, and other words and expressions, which form one signification with the verb (*Lesson LXIX.*), are placed exactly like the separable particles, as :

*Examples.*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <p><i>Abrede nehmen</i>*, to agree, to make an agreement.</p>     | <p><i>Ich nehme Abrede</i>, I agree; <i>ich nahm Abrede</i>, I agreed; <i>ich habe Abrede genommen</i>, I have agreed; <i>um Abrede zu nehmen</i>, in order to agree.</p>                          |
| <p><i>Achtung geben</i>*, to pay attention.</p>                   | <p><i>Du gibst Achtung</i>, thou payest attention; <i>du gabst Achtung</i>, thou paidst attention; <i>du hast Achtung gegeben</i>, thou hast paid attention.</p>                                   |
| <p><i>An die Hand geben</i>*, to suggest.</p>                     | <p><i>Er gibt an die Hand</i>, he suggests; <i>er gab an die Hand</i>, he suggested; <i>er hat an die Hand gegeben</i>, he has suggested; <i>um an die Hand zu geben</i>, in order to suggest.</p> |
| <p><i>Sich anheischig machen</i>, to pledge one's self.</p>       | <p><i>Sie macht sich anheischig</i>, she pledges herself, &amp;c.</p>  |
| <p><i>Auwendig lernen</i>, to learn by heart.</p>                 | <p><i>Wir lernen auwendig</i>, we learn by heart, &amp;c.</p>  |
| <p><i>Dank sagen</i>, to return thanks, to thank.</p>             | <p><i>Ihr saget Dank</i>, you thank.</p>   |
| <p><i>Fahren lassen</i>*, to let go, to give up.</p>              | <p><i>Sie lassen fahren</i>, they let go.</p>  |
| <p><i>Gefahr laufen</i>*, to run the risk.</p>                    | <p><i>Ich laufe Gefahr</i>, I run the risk.</p>  |
| <p><i>In Betrachtung ziehen</i>*, to take into consideration.</p> | <p><i>Du ziehest in Betrachtung</i>, thou takest into consideration.</p>   |
| <p><i>In Verdacht haben</i>*, to suspect.</p>                     | <p><i>Er hat in Verdacht</i>, he suspects.</p>   |
| <p><i>Kund machen</i>, to publish, to notify.</p>                 | <p><i>Sie macht kund</i>, she publishes.</p>   |
| <p><i>Sich schlafen legen</i>, to go to bed.</p>                  | <p><i>Wir legen uns schlafen</i>, we go to bed.</p>  |
| <p><i>Stehen bleiben</i>*, to stand still, to stop.</p>           | <p><i>Wir bleiben stehen</i>, we stop.</p>   |
| <p><i>Um Rath fragen</i>, to ask advice.</p>                      | <p><i>Ihr fraget um Rath</i>, you ask advice.</p>  |

Um Verzeihung (oder Vergebung) Sie bitten um Verzeihung, they  
bitten\*, to beg pardon. beg pardon.  
Von Statten gehen\* (impers. Es geht mir von Statten, I suc-  
verb), to succeed, to prosper. ceed.  
Zu Ende bringen\*, to finish, to Du bringst zu Ende, thou finishest.  
terminate.  
Zu Mittag essen\*, to dine. Er ißt zu Mittag, he dines.

*Obs. H.* There are some verbs which, though not used by themselves, often serve to circumscribe the moods. They express the possibility or necessity, the willingness or lawfulness, of an action indicated by another verb, which is either expressed or understood, and with which they are always connected. We have therefore called them *circumscribing auxiliaries*. These verbs are, dürfen, to dare; können, to be able, can; lassen, to let; mögen, to be permitted, may; müssen, to be obliged, must; sollen, shall; wollen, to be willing, will. They require the verb which they modify in the infinitive, which then is never preceded by the particle zu. (*Obs. B. Lesson XLII.*) In the past participle they retain the form of the infinitive when preceded by another infinitive. (*Obs. Lesson XLVI.*)

They are irregular, and may be seen in the Table of the Irregular Verbs. Here we add some observations on their use and signification.

Dürfen, in which we observe that

1. It signifies to dare, to venture. Ex.

Ich darf es ihm sagen. I venture to tell it to him.

2. It imports to be allowed, not to be restrained; e. g.

Sie dürfen es wissen. You may know it.  
Darf ich fragen? May I ask? (*Obs. F. Lesson XCII.*)

3. With the negative it answers, *must not*; e. g.

Ich darf nicht schlafen. I must not sleep.

4. In the imperfect of the subjunctive it denotes a probable contingency, and may be translated by *may, might, need, should, would*. Ex.

Es dürfte vielleicht wahr seyn. It might perhaps be true.

5. When it occurs without an infinitive, it is by way of ellipsis, the infinitive being always understood; *e. g.*  
 Er darf nicht aus dem Hause (gehen being understood.) He dares not go out of the house.

**Können**, on which we observe that

1. It denotes physical possibility; *e. g.*

Können Sie schwimmen? Can you swim?  
 Ich habe ihren Brief nicht lesen können. I have not been able to read your letter.

2. To be permitted, where the English use *may*; *e. g.*  
 Sie können hingehen. You may go thither.

3. In the imperfect subjunctive it

*a)* denotes fear; *e. g.*

Er könnte Sie verrathen. He might betray you. (*Obs. F. Lesson XCII.*)

*b)* or is employed to make an expression more polite; *e. g.*

Könnten Sie mir nicht sagen? Could you not tell me?

4. It is used elliptically where the infinitive of a verb is always understood; *e. g.*

Können Sie Ihre Aufgaben? (herz sagen, to recite, understood.) Do you know your exercises?  
 Ich kann das nicht (machen understood.) I cannot do that.

Sie kann deutsch (lesen, sprechen or verstehen understood.) She knows German.

Er kann Alles (thun understood.) He knows every thing. (*Obs. B. Lesson LXX.*)

**Lassen** signifies

1. To let, to suffer; *e. g.*

Lassen Sie mich's sehen. Let me see it.  
 Ich ließ ihn laufen. I suffered him to run away.

2. To leave; *e. g.*

Ich lasse Ihnen Ihren Willen. I give you leave to do as you will.  
 Lassen Sie mich zufrieden. Leave me alone.

3. Combined with *holen* or *fommen*, it means *to send for* (see Lesson XXXIII.); *e. g.*

Wir ließen den Arzt holen. We sent for the physician.

4. To get, to have, to order, to cause, what is expressed by the infinitive which follows it (see Lesson XLVI.); *e. g.*

Lassen Sie einen Rock machen? Are you getting a coat made?  
Haben Sie Ihr Halstuch waschen lassen? Have you had your cravat washed?

Haben Sie sich ein Paar Stiefel machen lassen? Have you had a pair of boots made?

Er ließ mir das Geld auszahlen. He ordered the money to be paid to me.

Der Kaiser hat das Urtheil vollziehen lassen. The emperor ordered (caused) the sentence to be executed.

5. With the reflective pronoun of the third person *sich*, it signifies *may, might, is to be*; *e. g.*

Das läßt sich nicht begreifen. That is not to be comprehended.

Davon ließe sich Vieles sagen. Of that much might be said.

Das läßt sich hören. This seems reasonable.

6. It serves to form the first person plural of the compound imperative. (*Obs. B. Lesson XCV.*)

*Mögen* signifies

1. To like; *e. g.*

Ich mag lieber sprechen als schreiben. I like to speak better than to write.

Ich mag den Wein nicht (trinken understood). I do not like the wine.

Ich mag diese Speise nicht (essen understood). I do not like the meat.

2. Being permitted, being at liberty; *e. g.*

Er mag sagen, was er will. He may say what he pleases.

Er mag lachen. He may laugh.

3. To suppose; *e. g.*

Er mag ein braver Mann seyn. He may be (I suppose him to be) a brave man.

Sie mag Recht haben. She may be (I suppose her to be) in the right.

4. Chance or possibility, in the imperfect subjunctive; *e. g.*

Es möchte sich ereignen.

It might happen.

5. A desire, in the present and imperfect subjunctive; *e. g.*

Möge es der Himmel geben!

May heaven grant it!

Ich möchte wissen.

I should like to know.

6. In the signification of *to be able* it is antiquated, and in its stead *vermögen* is used with the particle *zu* before the infinitive; *e. g.*

Wer vermag ihn zu ergründen?

Who is able to penetrate him?

7. It serves to form the third personal singular and plural of the compound imperative. (See *Obs. B. Lesson XCV.*)

Müssen signifies:

1. Must; *e. g.*

Ich muß hingehen.

I must go thither.

Wir müssen einander beistehen.

We must assist each other.

Sie müssen es ihm nicht sagen.

You must not tell him of it.

2. To suppose; *e. g.*

Er muß sehr reich seyn.

He must be (I suppose him to be) very rich.

Der Fürst muß in der Residenz schon eingetroffen seyn.

The prince must already have (I suppose him to have) arrived in town.

3. It is used elliptically, an infinitive being understood; *e. g.*

Ich muß heute noch zurück (gehen I must return to day. understood).

Sollen implies:

1. To be obliged by necessity, duty, or the command of another; *e. g.*

Du sollst deinen Nächsten lieben, wie dich selbst.

Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.

Du sollst das nicht thuu.

Thou shalt not (art not to) do that.

Sie sollen still sitzen.	You are to sit still.
Sie hätten es thun sollen.	You should have done it.
Ich soll an ihn schreiben.	I am to write to him.

2. To be authorized or permitted; *e. g.*

Soll ich es ihnen sagen?	Am I to tell them of it?
Soll ich diese Federn haben?	Am I to have these pens?

3. To be bid, to be commissioned; *e. g.*

Sagen Sie ihm, er soll zu mir kommen.	Tell him to come to me.
Gehen Sie zu Ihrer Schwester, um ihr zu sagen, sie soll mir das Buch schicken.	Go to your sister in order to tell her to send me the book.

4. To be admitted, to be supposed; *e. g.*

Sie sollen mich nicht beleidigt haben.	You are supposed not to have offended me.
Ich soll ihn errathen haben.	I am supposed to have guessed what he wishes to say, or what he meant.

5. To be said, to be reported; *e. g.*

Die feindliche Flotte soll geschlagen worden seyn.	The enemy's fleet is said to have been beaten.
Die Russen sollen gegen die Türken zu Felde gezogen seyn.	The Russians are reported to have taken the field against the Turks.
Es soll ein Courier angekommen seyn.	A courier is said to have arrived.
Der Feind soll den Sieg davongetragen haben.	The enemy is reported to have obtained the victory.

6. The imperfect is frequently employed at the beginning of a sentence, as *should* in English, and when the conditional conjunction *wenn* is omitted; *e. g.*

Sollte sich das Wetter ändern, wenn sich das Wetter ändern sollte, so wollen wir ausgehen.	Should the weather change we will go out.
Sollte es ihn hungern, so müßte man ihm Etwas zu essen geben.	Should he be hungry, something must be given to him to eat.

7. It is often used elliptically, an infinitive being understood; *e. g.*

Was soll ich? (thun understood.)	What am I to do?
Was soll das? (seyn or heißen understood.)	What is the meaning of that?

Was sollen diese Klagen? (bedeuten  
understood.) What is the meaning of these  
complaints?

Wozu soll diese Erniedrigung?  
(dienen understood.) What purpose does this humilia-  
tion serve?

8. It serves to form the third person singular and plural of the compound imperative. (See *Obs. B. Lesson XCV.*)

Wollen is not used, as *will* in English, to denote mere futury, for which werden is appropriated. It implies:

1. Wish, intention, inclination; *e. g.*

Wollen Sie spazieren gehen?

Do you wish to take a walk?

Er will das Pferd nicht kaufen.

He does not wish (has no intention, no inclination) to buy the horse.

2. Desire, solicitation, in the imperfect subjunctive; *e. g.*

Wollten Sie die Güte haben, mir  
zu sagen?

Would you have the 'goodness  
to tell me?

Wollte Gott!

Would to God!

3. To assert; *e. g.*

Er will es selbst gesehen haben.

He asserts having himself seen it.

4. It serves to form the first person plural of the compound imperative. (See *Obs. B. Lesson XCV.*)

*Obs. I.* In English a verb referring to a collective noun in the singular is put in the plural, as: all the *company were* present. This is not allowed in German, where the verb always agrees with the noun in number. We must therefore say: die ganze Gesellschaft war zu-  
gegen.

---

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

Verbs which deviate from the conjugation of loben are denominated irregular. The irregularity of a verb is generally remarked to take place, 1. in the singular of the present tense indicative of a few verbs; 2. in the past participle; 3. in the imperfect indicative and sub-

junctive; and 4. in the second person singular of the imperative.

We divide the irregular verbs into two classes :

I. The first class contains only sixteen irregular verbs. They have the regular terminations of the past participle and of the imperfect, *i e. t* in the past participle, and *te* in the imperfect, but change the radical vowel. Ex.

Bringen, to bring; past part. gebracht; imperf. brachte.

We have given the conjugation of these sixteen irregular verbs at the head of our general list.

II. The second class comprehends all the other irregular verbs. In the past participle they keep the termination *en* of the infinitive, and in the imperfect they change the radical vowel without taking the syllable *te*. Ex.

Lesen, to read; past part. gelesen; Imperf. las.

Before the learner proceeds to the List of the Irregular Verbs he will find the following observations of essential importance.

A. It is in the first class only that several of these verbs are irregular at the same time in all the persons of the singular of the indicative. They are :

Dürfen, to dare;	Sing. of the Pres. Indic.	ich darf, du darfst, er darf.
Können, to be able;	„ „ „ „	ich kann, du kannst, er kann.
Wögen, to wish;	„ „ „ „	ich mag, du magst, er mag.
Müssen, to be obliged;	„ „ „ „	ich muß, du mußt, er muß.
Wissen, to know;	„ „ „ „	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß.
Wollen, to be willing;	„ „ „ „	ich will, du willst, er will.

Those of the second class are always regular in the first person singular <sup>1</sup>, but they are often irregular in

<sup>1</sup> Except the auxiliary verb *seyn*, to be, which is irregular in all the persons singular and plural.

the second and third persons, and then they change the letter *a* or *e* of the radical syllable—the former into *ä*, the latter into *i*. Ex.

Rathen, to advise; Sing. of the Pres. Indic. ich rathe, du rätst, er rät.  
 Sprechen, to speak; „ „ „ „ ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht.

*B.* The past participle of irregular verbs is always preceded by the syllable *ge*<sup>2</sup>, the same as the regular verbs, except the past participle of those noticed in *Obs.*  
*A. Lesson XLVII.*

*C.* The imperfect of the indicative is formed by changing the radical vowel into *a*, *ie*, *i*, *o* or *u*. Ex.

Sehen, to see;	Imperf. of the Indicative	sah.
Bleiben, to remain;	„ „ „	blieb.
Gehen, to go;	„ „ „	ging.
Bieten, to offer;	„ „ „	bot.
Schlagen, to beat;	„ „ „	schlug.

*D.* The imperfect of the subjunctive is formed from the imperfect of the indicative, by changing the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and adding *e* to those of the second class. Ex.

Imperf. of the Indic.	sah;	Imperf. of the Subj.	sähe.
„ „ „	bot;	„ „ „	böte.
„ „ „	schlug;	„ „ „	schlüge.
„ „ „	blieb;	„ „ „	bliebe.
„ „ „	ging;	„ „ „	ginge.

*E.* The second person singular of the imperative is formed from the second person singular of the indicative, and is consequently only irregular when the latter is so itself. Ex.

*2nd pers. Imperative.*

Geben, to give; du gibst, thou givest; gib, give (thou).  
 Helfen, to help; du hilfst, thou helpst; hilf, help (thou).

Are excepted from this rule:

1. The following verbs:

<sup>2</sup> The verb *essen*, to eat, takes in the past participle, for the sake of euphony, an additional *g*, as: *geessen*, eaten, instead of *geffen*.

	<i>2nd pers. Imperative.</i>
Saben, to have; du hast, thou hast;	habe, have (thou).
Seyn, to be; du bist, thou art;	sey, be (thou).
Werden, to become; du wirst, thou becomest;	werde, become (thou).
Wissen, to know; du weißt, thou knowest;	wisse, know (thou).
Wollen, to be willing; du willst, thou art willing;	wolle, be (thou) willing.

2. Verbs which in the second person of the present Indicative change the letter *a* into *ä*, resume in the imperative the radical vowel. Ex.

	<i>2nd pers. Imperative.</i>
Fallen, to fall; du fällst, thou fallest;	falle, fall (thou).
Laufen, to run; du läufst, thou runnest;	laufe, run (thou).

F. All the other persons of the imperative are derived from the present of the subjunctive, which is always regular, as well as the plural of the present of the indicative.

G. Compound verbs are, in general, conjugated like simple verbs, except:

a) The following, which are regular, though the simple verbs, from which they are, or seem to be, formed are not so.

Bescheeren, to make a present.	Rathschlagen and berathschlagen,
Bewillkommen, to welcome.	to counsel, to deliberate.
Handhaben, to handle.	Umringen, to surround.
Heirathen, to marry.	Veranlassen, to occasion.
Herbergen, to lodge.	Willfahren, to comply with.
Radbrechen, to break on the wheel, to mutilate words.	

b) The following are irregular, though the simple verbs, from which they are derived, are regular:

Befehlen*, to command.	Empfehlen*, to recommend.
Beflemmen*, to pinch, to oppress (the heart).	Erbleichen*, to grow pale.
	Ertschallen*, to resound.

H. Some verbs are regular when they are used in an active or transitive signification, and irregular when they are employed in a neuter or intransitive signification. Ex. Weichen, to yield, and its compounds, as: abweichen,

to deviate; *ausweichen*, to avoid, are irregular; but *weichen*, to soften, to mollify, and *erweichen*, to touch, to mollify, are regular. The same may be said of the following verbs:

*Intransitive and Irregular.*

*Bleichen*\*, to fade.  
*Pflegen*\*, to hold (counsel).  
*Schaffen*\*, to create.  
*Schleifen*\*, to grind.

*Transitive and Regular.*

*Bleichen*, to bleach.  
*Pflegen*, to be accustomed.  
*Schaffen*, to procure.  
*Schleifen*, to demolish.

*I.* It will be necessary for the learner to remark that there are only two irregular verbs the imperfects of which begin with another letter than the infinitive, viz. *essen*, to eat, and *seyn*, to be. The former has in the imperfect *aß*, and the latter *war*.

*J.* Some verbs, which have for their radical vowel *ie* or *ü*, formerly changed these vowels into *eu* in the second and third persons singular of the present, and second person singular of the imperative. This is still the case in poetry. Ex. *Bieten*, to offer; second and third persons singular, *du beutst*, *er beut*; second person singular of the imperative, *beut*. *Lügen*, to lie; second and third persons singular, *du leugst*, *er leugt*; second person singular of the imperative, *leug*. These irregularities have in our List of the Irregular Verbs been noticed in *italics*.

*K.* Derivative verbs, and those compounded of inseparable and separable particles, must be looked for under the head of their primitive verbs. Ex. *Entwerfen*, to project, and *vorwerfen*, to reproach with, under *werfen*, to throw; *verbieten*, to forbid, under *bieten*, to offer; *ausgehen*, to go out, under *gehen*, to go; *vorschreiben*, to prescribe, under *schreiben*, to write, &c. (See *Obs. G.*)

*L.* The classification of the irregular verbs into several subdivisions has been noticed by all German grammarians; but they have advised it only as a task for pupils. Experience has indeed convinced us that pupils, instead of noticing the irregularity of the verbs, only endeavour to retain the different divisions. Through the medium of our general list they have only to make

themselves acquainted with the irregularity of ten irregular verbs a day, in order to possess them thoroughly in a very short time. This way of learning them, however, will not prevent them from noticing the affinity which they have amongst each other. We advise the pupils to recite them aloud as they write them, by which means they will retain them so much the better and quicker.

In order to facilitate the classification we give them, on the following page, a Table by which they may guide themselves, and we mark afterwards in our list to which class of this Table each verb belongs.

But this Table is only to be used as a model of a practical exercise; it is only a means to subject the verbs, which by constant practice will have been almost retained in memory, to a regular classification. We give therefore two lists: the first containing those verbs which deviate only a little from the regular conjugation, and the latter, the General List, containing besides those of the first list, all other irregular verbs, which deviate much more from the regular form. (See page 126.)

---

A TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION  
OF  
IRREGULAR VERBS.

*Obs.* From this table must be excepted the sixteen irregular verbs, which, in our list, form the first order.

*B.* The fifth and sixth classes contain most of the irregular verbs.

Number of the class.	INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	INFINITIVE.	IMPERFECT.	PARTICIPLE PAST
I.	e	a	e	Sehen, to see	sah	gesehen
II.	e i	a	o	Helfen, to help Sinnen, to meditate	half sann	geholfen gesonnen
III.	i	a	u	Trinken, to drink	trank	getrunken
IV.	a	ie	a	Fallen, to fall	fiel	gefallen
V.	ei	ie i	ie i	Schreiben, to write Beißen, to bite	schrieb biß	geschrieben gebissen
VI.	ä, au e, i, ie, ö, ü	o	o	Schießen, to shoot	schoß	geschossen
VII.	a	u	o	Schlagen, to beat	schlug	geschlagen

## EXPLANATORY OBSERVATIONS.

*A.* The first class changes the radical vowel *e* in the imperfect into *a*, and in the past participle it takes *e* again. Ex. *Geben*, to give; imperf. *gab*; part. past, *gegeben*. To this class must be added *bitten*, to beg, which changes the radical vowel *i* in the same manner, as: imperf. *bat*; part. past, *gebeten*.

*B.* The second class changes the radical vowel *e* or *i* in the imperfect into *a*, and in the part. past into *o*. Ex. *Nehmen*, to take; imperf. *nahm*; part. past, *genommen*; *gewinnen*, to gain; imperf. *gewann*; part. past, *gewonnen*. Here must be added *gebären*, to bring forth, the radical vowel of which is *ä*, as: imperf. *gebar*; part. past, *geboren*.

*C.* The third class changes the radical vowel *i* in the imperfect into *a*, and in the part. past into *u*. Ex. *Schlingen*, to swallow; imperf. *schlang*; part. past, *geschlungen*. From this class must be excepted: *dingen*, to bargain; imperf. *dung*; part. past, *gedungen*; *schinden*, to flay: imperf. *schund*; part. past, *geschunden*; and *thun*, to do; imperf. *that*; part. past, *gethan*.

*D.* The fourth class changes the radical vowel *a* in the imperfect into *ie*, and in the part. past takes the radical again. Ex. *Halten*, to hold; imperf. *hielt*; part. past, *gehalten*. From this class must be excepted: *fangen*, to catch; imperf. *fiug*; part. past, *gefangen*; and the following must be added to it: *laufen*, to run; imperf. *lief*; part. past, *gelaufen*; *gehen*, to go; imperfect *ging*; part. past, *gegangen*; *heißen*, to be called; imperf. *hieß*; part. past, *geheißen*; *rufen*, to call; imperf. *rief*; part. past, *gerufen*; *stoßen*, to push; imperf. *stieß*; part. past, *gestoßen*.

*E.* The fifth class changes the radical *ei* in the imperfect and part. past into *ie*, and before a double consonant into *i*. Ex. *Bleiben*, to remain; imperf. *blieb*; part. past, *geblieben*; *schneiden*, to cut; imperf. *schnitt*; part. past, *geschnitten*.

*F.* The sixth class changes the radicals *ä*, *au*, *e*, *i*, *ie*, *ö*, *ü*, in the imperfect and part. past into *o*. Ex. *Schwären*, to fester; imperf. *schwor*; part. past, *geschworen*; *saugen*, to suck; imperf. *soß*; part. past, *gesogen*; *saufen*, to drink like brutes; imperf. *soß*; part. past, *gesoffen*; *heben*, to lift; imperf. *hob*; part. past, *gehoben*; *verwirren*, to confuse; imperf. *verworr*; part. past, *verworren*; *bieten*, to offer; imperf. *bot*; part. past, *geböten*; *schwören*, to swear; imperf. *schwor*; part. past, *geschworen*; *lügen*, to lie, to utter a falsehood; imperf. *log*; part. past, *gelogen*.

*G.* The seventh class changes in the imperfect into *u* the radical vowel *a*, which it takes again in the part. past. Ex. *Wachsen*, to grow; imperf. *wuchß*; part. past, *gewachsen*. Here must be noticed *stehen*, to stand, the imperfect of which is *stand* (anciently however *stund*), and the part. past, *gestanden*.

## I. FIRST ORDER OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS

(See *Note* page 126).

containing the sixteen verbs which have t in the past participle, and te in the imperfect of both moods, like the regular verbs, but change the radical syllable; except *essen* and *wollen*, which are regular in the past participle and imperfect of the two moods.

The verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) are also conjugated according to the regular form, when they have an active or transitive signification.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT of the Indicative, 1st, 2nd, and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd. pers. singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
Brennen, to burn	. . .	brannte	brennte	gebracht	
Bringen, to bring	. . .	brachte	brächte	gebracht	
Denken, to think	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	darfte	dürfte	gedacht	
Dürfen, to dare	ich habe, du hast, er hat	hatte	hätte	gedurft	is wanting
haben, to have		kannte	könnte	gehabt	habe
kennen, to know	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	könnte	könnte	gekant	fönnen
können, to be able	ich mag, du magst, er mag	mochte	möchte	gekant	möge
mögen, to be allowed	ich muß, du mußt, er muß	mußte	müßte	gemocht	is wanting
müssen, to be obliged	. . .	nannte	nennte	genannt	
ennen, to name	. . .	rannte	rennte	gerannt	
ennen, to run	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	sandte*	sendete	gesandt*	is wanting
enden, to send	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	wandte*	wendete	gewandt*	
essen, to be obliged	ich will, du willst, er will	wußte	wußte	gewußt	wisse
essen, to turn		. . .	. . .	. . .	wolle
wissen, to know		. . .	. . .	. . .	
wissen, to be willing		. . .	. . .	. . .	

# GENERAL LIST

## AND CONJUGATION OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS,

containing, besides the sixteen verbs of the first order, all those of the second order, which keep in the Participle Past the termination of the Infinitive<sup>3</sup>, and in the Imperfect change the radical vowel into *a*, *ie*, *i*, *o*, or *u*, without taking *te*.

The words in *italics* are those which are used in poetry.

The number before the verb marks the class to which it belongs in our Table of Classification, p. 123. *Note.* The persons and tenses not mentioned are regular, or are formed from those mentioned; derived and compound verbs are conjugated like their primitives.

The verbs marked with an asterisk (\*) are also conjugated according to the regular form, when they have an active or transitive signification.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd pers. singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
7. Backen, to bake	du bäckst, er bäckt *;	buck*	bücke*	gebacken*	back!
2. Befehlen, to command	du befehlst, er befehlt	befahl	befähle (be- fohle)	befohlen	befiehl
5. Sich befehlen <sup>4</sup> , to apply one's self	. . . . .	befiß	befiße	befißen	
2. Beginnen, to begin	. . . . .	begann	begänne (be- günne)	begonnen	

<sup>3</sup> Except the verb thun, to do, the participle past of which is gethan.

<sup>4</sup> Sich befehligen, to apply one's self, is regular.

5. Beißen, to bite	du bißst, er bißt	biß	bisse	gebissen	biß
2. Bergen, to conceal	• • • • •	barq	bärge	geborgen	bißt*
2. Bersten, to burst	• • • • •	barst (barst*)	bärste (bärste*)	gebortzen	
2. Sich kehnen, to recollect	• • • • •	befann	befänne (befänne)	befonnen	
6. Betrügen, to deceive	• • • • •	betrog	betröge	betrogen	
6. Bewegen, † to induce	• • • • •	bewog	bewöge	bewogen	
6. Biegen, to bend	• • • • •	bog	böge	gebogen	
6. Bieten, to bid	reg. or <i>du beutst, er beut</i>	böt	böte	geboren	reg. or <i>beut</i>
3. Binden, to bind	• • • • •	band	bände	gebunden	
1. Bitten, to beg	• • • • •	bät	bäte	gebeten	
4. Blasen, to blow	du bläsest, er bläset	blies	bliese	geblasen	blase
5. Bleiben, to remain	• • • • •	blieb	bliebe	geblieben	
4. Braten, to roast	du brätst, er brät*	briet	briete	gebraten	brate
2. Brechen, to break	du brichst, er bricht	brach	bräche	gebrochen	brich
Brennen, to burn (see first class)	• • • • •	brannte	brennte	gebrannt	
Bringen, to bring (see first class)	• • • • •	brachte	brächte	gebracht	
Denken, to think (see first class)	• • • • •	dachte	dächte	gedacht	
3. Dingen, to bargain, to hire	• • • • •	ding*	dünge*	gedungen*	drisch
6. Dreschen, to thrash	du drischest, er drischt	drosch	drösche	gedroschen	
3. Dringen, to urge	• • • • •	drasch	dräsche	gedrungen	
Dürfen, to dare (see first class)	ich darf, du darfst, er darf	drang	dränge	gedrungen	is wanting
4. Empfangen, to receive	du empfängst, er empfängt	durfte	dürfte	empfangen	empfange
2. Empfehlen, to recommend	du empfehlest, er empfiehlt	empfang	empfänge	empfohlen	empfehl
3. Empfinden, to feel, to perceive	• • • • •	empfaß	empfähle	empfohlen	
	• • • • •	empfaß	empfände	empfohlen	

† Bewegen, to move, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT.		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd person singular.
		Indicative	Subjunctive.		
5. Erbſuchen <sup>5</sup> , to grow pale; (fig. to die)	. . . . .	erbſich	erbſiche	erbſuchen	
6. Erbſuchen <sup>6</sup> , to chose, to elect	. . . . .	erfor	erföre	erforen	erliſch
6. Erbſuchen <sup>7</sup> , to become extinct	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	erforſch	erforſche	erforſchen	
6. Erbſuchen <sup>8</sup> , to resound	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	erforſch*	erforſche*	erforſchen*	
2. Erbſuchen <sup>9</sup> , to be frightened	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	erforſch*	erforſche*	erforſchen*	
6. Erbſuchen <sup>10</sup> , to consider	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	erforſch*	erforſche*	erforſchen*	
1. Erbſuchen <sup>11</sup> , to eat	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	erforſch	erforſche	erforſchen	
7. Erbſuchen <sup>12</sup> , to drive, to go in a vehicle	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	aß	äße	gegessen	iß
4. Erbſuchen <sup>13</sup> , to fall	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	fuhr	führe	gefahren	fabre
4. Erbſuchen <sup>14</sup> , to catch	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	fiel	fielle	gefallen	faſſe
6. Erbſuchen <sup>15</sup> , to fence, to fight	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	ſing	ſinge	gefangen	ſange
3. Erbſuchen <sup>16</sup> , to find	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	ſocht	ſöchte	geſochten	ſücht*
6. Erbſuchen <sup>17</sup> , to twist, to plait	du erbſuchſt, er erbſucht*	ſand	ſände	gefunden	ſücht, ſeuchte.
5. Erbſuchen <sup>18</sup> is derived from bleichen, to bleach, to whiten in the sun, which is regular.		ſocht	ſöchte	geſochten	
6. The use of this verb is antiquated; it is, however, still used in sublime style and in poetry, but not in the present tense.		8 All derivatives of fahren are irregular, except will- fahren, to comply with, which is regular. When the verb fahren, signifies to move any thing by a carriage, it is active and takes haben for its auxiliary; when it signifies to ride in a carriage, it takes ſeyn. Ex. Der Kutſcher hat mich gefahren, the coachman drove me; wir ſind auf das Land gefahren, we went to the country in a carriage.			
7. This verb is derived from löſchen, to extinguish, which is regular as well as auslöſchen, to extinguish, to efface.					

6. <i>Kriegen</i> , to fly	reg. or <i>du fleugt</i> , er <i>fliegt</i>	flöge	geflogen	reg. or <i>flieg</i>
6. <i>Kriechen</i> , to flee	reg. or <i>du fluchst</i> , er <i>flucht</i>	flöhe	geflohen	reg. or <i>fluech</i>
6. <i>Kriechen</i> , to flow	reg. or <i>du flussest</i> , er <i>flusst</i>	flöße	geflossen	reg. or <i>flouss</i>
1. <i>Breissen</i> , to eat (In speaking of brutes), to eat greedily	du <i>frisstest</i> , er <i>frisst</i>	fräße	gefressen	friß
6. <i>Kriechen</i> , to freeze	. . . . .	fröre	gefroren	
6. <i>Bähren</i> , to ferment	. . . . .	göhrte*	gegohren	
2. <i>Gebären</i> , to bring forth	du <i>gebierst</i> , er <i>gebirt</i> *	gebäre	geboren	gebäre
1. <i>Geben</i> , to give	du <i>gibst</i> , er <i>gibt</i>	gäbe	gegeben	gib
6. <i>Gebieten</i> , to command (like <i>bieten</i> )	reg. or <i>du gebeutst</i> , er <i>gebeut</i>	geböte	geböten	reg. or <i>ge- beut</i>
5. <i>Gedeihen</i> , to prosper	. . . . .	gediehe	gediehen	
4. <i>Gehen</i> , to go, to walk	. . . . .	ginge	gegangen	
3. <i>Gelingen</i> , to succeed (verb <i>impers.</i> gov. Dative)	. . . . .	gelänge	gelingen	
2. <i>Gelsten</i> , to be worth	du <i>giltst</i> , er <i>gilt</i> .	gälte (gölte)	gegolten	gilt
1. <i>Genehen</i> , to recover, to grow well	. . . . .	genäße*	genesen*	
6. <i>Genießen</i> , to enjoy	reg. or <i>du geneusstest</i> , er <i>geneusst</i>	genüße	genossen	reg. or <i>ge- neuss</i>
1. <i>Geschehen</i> , to happen (verb <i>impers.</i> )	eß <i>geschicht</i>	geschähe	geschehen	
2. <i>Gewinnen</i> , to win, to gain	. . . . .	gewänne (gewönne)	gewonnen	
6. <i>Gießen</i> , to pour	reg. or <i>du gussesst</i> , er <i>gusst</i>	göße	gegossen	reg. or <i>geuss</i>
5. <i>Gleichen</i> , to be like 9	. . . . .	gliche	geglichen	
5. <i>Gleiten</i> , to glide, to slip 10	. . . . .	glitte	gegittet*	

9 The verb *gleichen*, to make even, is regular.

10 *Begleiten*, to accompany, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT.		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
6. Glimmen, to shine or burn faintly	. . . . .	glomm*	glömmte*	gegkommen*	grabe
7. Graben, to dig	du gräb'st, er gräbt	grab	grübe	gegraben	habe
5. Greifen, to lay hold of, to seize	ich habe, du haſt, er hat	griff	griffe	gegriffen	halte
4. Halten, to hold	du hält'st, er hält	hatte	hätte	gehalten	(halt)
4. Hangen, to hang, to be suspended <sup>11</sup>	. . . . .	hing	hinge	gehangen	
4. Hauen, to hew	. . . . .	hieb	hiebe	gehauen	
6. Heben, to lift, to heave	. . . . .	hob	höbe (hübe)	gehoben	
4. Heißen, to be called, to bid	. . . . .	hieß	hieße	geheißen	
2. Helfen, to help	du hilff'st, er hilfft	half	hälfe (hülfe)	geholfen	hilf
5. Reifen, to chide, to scold	. . . . .	riß*	riße*	gefißen	
Kennen, to know, to be acquainted with (see first order)	. . . . .	kannte	kennete	gekant	
6. Klettern, to climb	. . . . .	kletterte*	kletterte*	geklettert	
3. Klängen, to sound	. . . . .	klang	klänge	geklingen	
5. Kneipen, } to pinch	. . . . .	knipte*	knipte*	geknipten	
5. Kneifen, } to pinch	. . . . .	knipte*	knipte*	geknipten	
2. Kommen, to come	. . . . .	kam	käme	gekommen	

<sup>11</sup> This verb must not be mistaken for hängen, to hang, to suspend, which is active and regular.

Können to be able, can (see first order)	ich kann, du kannst, er kann	konnte	könnte	gekonnt	könne
6. Kören (see Kören).	reg. or <i>du kreichst, er krecht</i>	froh	fröhe	gefrohen	
6. Kriechen, to creep	• • • • •	for	före	gefereu	
6. Kären, to choose, to elect	• • • • •	lud *	lúde *	geladen	laß
7. Laden, to load	du lässest, er läßt	ließ	ließe	gelassen	laufe
4. Lassen, to let, to leave, to permit	du läufest, er läuft	lief	liefe	gelaufen	
4. Laufen, to run	• • • • •	litt	litte	geritten	
5. Leiden, to suffer <sup>12</sup>	• • • • •	lich	liehe	gesehen	ließ
5. Leihen, to lend	du liefest, er liehet or ließt	laß	läse	gesehen	
1. Lesen, to read	• • • • •	lag	läge	gelegt	reg. or <i>leug</i>
1. Liegen, to lie, to be situated <sup>13</sup>	reg. or <i>du leugst, er leugt</i>	leg	läge	gelogen	
6. Lügen to lie, to utter a falsehood	• • • • •	reg. or, not so good, muhl	reg. or, not so good, mühle	gemahsen	
7. Mahlen, to grind <sup>14</sup>	• • • • •	mied	miede	gemieden	
5. Meiden, to avoid	• • • • •	moll *	mölle *	gemollten *	
6. Messen, to milk	du missest, er mißt	maß	mäße	gemessen	miß
1. Messen, to measure	ich mag, du magst, er mag	mochte	möchte	gemocht	möge
Mügen, to like, to be allowed, to be able, may (see first order)	ich muß, du mußt, er muß	mußte	müßte	gemußt	is wanting
Müssen, to be obliged, must (see first class)	du nimmst, er nimmt	nahm	nähme	genommen	nimm
2. Nehmen, to take	• • • • •	nannte	nennte	genannt	
Nennen, to name (see first order)	• • • • •	püßf	püßfe.	gepüßt	
6. Pfeifen, to whistle					

<sup>12</sup> Berseiden, to disgust, to make averse, is regular.  
<sup>13</sup> This verb must not be mistaken for legen, to lay, to place, which is active and regular.  
<sup>14</sup> Malen, to paint, without an h, is regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.		IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd person singular.
	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
6. Pflegen, to hold, (counsel) 15	.	.	pflög	pflöge	gepflogen	
5. Preisen, to extol, to praise	.	.	preiße *	preie *	gepreiset	quill
6. Querssen, to spring forth	du quirst, er quillt	.	quoll	quölle	gequollen	
9. Rächen *, to avenge	.	.	.	.	reg. or <i>gero-</i> <i>chen</i>	
4. Rathen, to advise, to guess	du rätst, er rät	.	rath	räthe	gerathen	rathe
5. Reiben, to rub	.	.	rieb	riebe	gerieben	
5. Reissen, to tear	.	.	riß	risse	gerissen	
5. Reiten, to ride (on horseback)	.	.	ritt	ritte	geritten	
Rennen, to run fast (see first order)	.	.	rannte	rennte	gerannt	
6. Riechen, to smell	.	.	roch	röche	gerochen	reg. or <i>reuch</i>
3. Ringen, to wrestle, to wring	.	.	rang	ränge	gerungen	
2. Rinuen, to run, to flow	.	.	rann	ränne (rönne)	geronnen	
4. Rufen, to call	.	.	rief	riefe	gerufen	
Salzen, to salt	.	.	soß	söße	gesalzen	saufe (sauf)
6. Saufen, to drink (in speaking of brutes)	du säufst, er säuft	.			gehoffen	
6. Saugen, to suck 16	.	.	sog	söge	gesogen	
7. Schaffen, to create 17	.	.	schuf	schufe	geschaffen	

15 Pflegen, to be accustomed, to be wont, to foster is regular.  
 16 Säugen, to suckle, is regular.  
 17 Schaffen, in the signification of, to procure, to get, is regular, as also anschaffen, to purchase, to buy; abschaffen, to part with, to dismiss.

5. <b>Әшөйден</b> , to separate	. . . . .	сһиөд	сһиөдөн	гөсһиөдөн	гөсһиөдөн
5. <b>Әшөйнен</b> , to seem, to appear, to shine	. . . . .	сһиөн	сһиөнен	гөсһиөнен	гөсһиөнен
2. <b>Әшөйтөн</b> , to scold	du сһиөйтсһи, er сһиөйтсһи	сһиөлт	сһиөлтө' (сһиөлтө)	гөсһиөлтөн	сһиөлт
6. <b>Әшөйрен</b> , to shear <sup>18</sup>	reg. formerly du сһиөйрсһи, er сһиөйрсһи	сһөр	сһөрө	гөсһөрөн	reg. former-ly сһиөйр
6. <b>Әшөйөбөн</b> , to shove	. . . . .	сһөб	сһөбө	гөсһөбөн	
6. <b>Әшөйөшөн</b> , to shoot	. . . . .	сһөбөш	сһөбөшө	гөсһөбөшөн	
3. <b>Әшөйөндөн</b> , to slay	. . . . .	сһөнд*	сһөндө*	гөсһөндөн	
4. <b>Әшөйләсән</b> , to sleep	du сһиөйләсһи, er сһиөйләсһи	сһиөлиө	сһиөлиө	гөсһиөләсән	сһиөләсө (сһиөләс)
7. <b>Әшөйләгән</b> , to beat, to strike <sup>19</sup>	du сһиөйләгһи, er сһиөйләгһи	сһиөлүг	сһиөлүгө	гөсһиөләгән	сһиөләгө
5. <b>Әшөйлөчкөн</b> , to sneak, to slide	. . . . .	сһиөлч	сһиөлчө	гөсһиөлчкөн	
5. <b>Әшөйлөсән</b> , to grind, to sharpen <sup>20</sup>	. . . . .	сһиөлсһи	сһиөлсһи	гөсһиөлсһән	
5. <b>Әшөйлөйсән</b> , to slit to split, to tear	. . . . .	сһиөлсө	сһиөлсө	гөсһиөлсән	
6. <b>Әшөйлөйсән</b> , to shut	reg. or du сһиөйлөйсөсһи, er сһиөйлөйсөсһи	сһиөлсөб	сһиөлсөбө	гөсһиөлсөйсән	reg. or сһиөйлөйсөсһи
3. <b>Әшөйлөнгән</b> , to twine, to swallow	. . . . .	сһиөлсәң	сһиөлсәңгө	гөсһиөлсөңгән	
<b>Әшөйлөмәлсән</b> , to add fat or butter	. . . . .	сһиөмис	сһиөмисө	гөсһиөмәлсән	
5. <b>Әшөйлөйсән</b> , to sling	. . . . .	сһиөмисһи	сһиөмисһи	гөсһиөмисһән	
6. <b>Әшөйлөмәлсән</b> , to melt <sup>21</sup>	du сһиөйлөмәлсһи, er сһиөйлөмәлсһи	сһиөмөлс	сһиөмөлсө	гөсһиөмөлсән	сһиөмис
3. <b>Әшөйлөмәлсән</b> , to snuff, to blow,	. . . . .	сһиөмөб	сһиөмөбө	гөсһиөмөбөн	
6. <b>Әшөйлөмәлсән</b> , to breathe	. . . . .	сһиөмөт	сһиөмөтө	гөсһиөмөтөн	
5. <b>Әшөйлөмәлсән</b> , to cut	. . . . .	сһиөмөтсһи	сһиөмөтсһи	гөсһиөмөтсһән	

18 The reflexive verb сһиөйрсһи, to drag along, to pull down, to demote to care, is regular.

19 The verbs рәтсһиөйләгән, һәрәтсһиөйләгән, to dissolve, to liquefy, is active and to consider, are regular.

20 сһиөйлөйсән, to drag along, to pull down, to demote to care, is regular.

21 сһиөйлөйсән, to dissolve, to liquefy, is active and in the present tense regular.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
6. Schrauben, to screw	. . . . .	schrob *	schröbe *	geschroben *	
5. Schreiben, to write	. . . . .	schrieb	schriebe	geschrieben	
5. Schreien, to cry	. . . . .	schrie	schrie	geschrien	
5. Schreiten, to stride	. . . . .	schrift	schrifte	geschritten	
6. Schwären, to fester	. . . . .	schwör	schwöre	geschworen	
5. Schweigen, to be silent	. . . . .	schwieg	schwäge	geschwiegen	
6. SchwelLEN, to swell 22	du schwülst, er schwülst	schwoll	schwölle	geschwollen	schwül
2. Schwimmen, to swim	. . . . .	schwamm	schwämme	geschwommen	
3. Schwinden, to vanish, to de- crease	. . . . .	schwand	schwände	geschwunden	
3. Schwingen, to swing	. . . . .	schwang	schwänge	geschwungen	
6. Schwören, to swear	. . . . .	schwor (schwur)	schwöre (schwüre)	geschworen	
1. Sehen, to see	du siehst, er sieht	sah	sähe	gesehen	siehe (sieh)
Senden, to send (see first order)	. . . . .	sandte *	sendete	gesandt *	
1. Seyn, to be	ich bin, du bist, er ist; Pl. wir sind, ihr seyd, sie sind	war	wäre	gewesen	sey
6. Sieden, to boil, to seethe	. . . . .	sott	sötte	gekott	
3. Singen, to sing	. . . . .	sang	sänge	gesungen	
3. Sinken, to sink	. . . . .	sank	sänke	gesunken	

22 The active verb schwellen, to cause to swell, is reg.

2. Sinnen, to mediate, to think	. . . . .	fann	gefonnen	is wanting
1. Sitzen, to sit	. . . . .	sas	gesessen	
Sollen, to be obliged, to be bid (see first class)	ich soll, du sollst, er soll	. . . . .	. . . . .	
Spalten, to split	. . . . .	spie	gespalten	
5. Speisen, to speak	. . . . .	spaan (spoun)	gespiceu	
2. Spinnen, to spin	. . . . .	spönn (spönn)	gesponnen	
5. Spseisen, to split	. . . . .	spisse	gesplissen	
2. Sprechen, to speak	du sprichst, er spricht	sprach	gesprochen	spricht
6. Sprießen, to sprout	reg. or du spreussst, er spreusst	sproß	gespreußen	reg. or spreuss
3. Springen, to spring	. . . . .	sprang (sprung)	gesprungen	
2. Stechen, to sting, to prick	du stichst, er sticht	stach	gestochen	stich
2. Stecken, to be fixed, to stick <sup>23</sup>	. . . . .	stak	gestanden	stehe (steh)
7. Stehen, to stand	. . . . .	stand (stund)	gestohlen	stiehl
2. Stehlen, to steal	du stiehst, er stiehlt	stahl	gestiegen	steige (steig)
5. Steigen, to mount, to ascend	du stirbst, er stirbt	stieg	gestorben	stirb
2. Sterben, to die, to lose life	. . . . .	storb	gestorben	
6. Stieben, to be scattered, to fly off like dust	. . . . .	stob	gestorben	
3. Stinken, to stink	. . . . .	stank	gestunken	
4. Stößen, to push	du stößest, er stößt	stieß	gestoßen	stoße (stoß)
5. Streichen, to stroke, to rub	. . . . .	strich	gestrichen	
5. Streiten, to contend, to quar- rel, to strive	. . . . .	stritt	gestritten	
3. Tragen, to do	ich thue, du thust, er thut	that	gethan	thue
7. Tragen, to carry, to wear, bear	du trägst, er trägt	trug	getragen	trage

<sup>23</sup> Stecken, to stick, to fix, to put, is active and reg.

INFINITIVE.	PRESENT Indicative, 2nd and 3rd persons singular.	IMPERFECT		PARTICIPLE PAST.	IMPERAT. 2nd person singular.
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.		
2. Treffen, to hit, to meet with	du triffst, er trifft	traf	träfe	getroffen	triff
5. Treiben, to drive	du trittst, er tritt	trieb	triebe	getrieben	tritt
1. Tretten, to tread	reg. or <i>du treust, er treuft</i>	trat	trätte*	getreten	reg. or <i>treuf</i>
6. Trifsen, to drop	.	traff	träufe	getroffen*	
6. Trifsen, to deceive (see trü-	.	traug	trüge	getrunken	
3. Trinken, to drink	.	trog	trüge	getrogen	
6. Trügen, to deceive	.	verbiß	verbiße	verbißten	
5. Verbleichen, to grow pale, to fade; <i>fig.</i> to die (see erbleichen)	du verdirbst, er verdirbt	verdarb	verdürbe	verdorben	verdirb
2. Verderben, to be spoiled 24	.	verdroß	verdröße	verdroßen	
6. Verdrießen, to vex (impers. verb gov. Accus.)	du vergiffest, er vergift	vergaß	vergäße	vergesen	vergiß
1. Vergessen, to forget	.	verglich	verglich	verglichen	
5. Vergleichen, to compare (see gleich)	.	versor	versöre	verhohlen*	
Verhehlen, to conceal	.	verworr*	verwörre*	verloren	
6. Verlieren, to lose	.	verglich	verglehe	verworren*	
6. Verwirren, to confuse, to per- plex	.			verziehen	verziehe
5. Verzeihen, to pardon	.				

24 Verderben, to spoil, to ruin, is active and regular.

47. Wachsen, to grow, to wax	du wächstest, er wächst	wuchß	wüchse	gewachsen	wachse
6. Wägen, to weigh, to balance (active)	. . . . .	wog *	wöge *	gewogen *	wasche
7. Waschen, to wash	du wäschest, er wäscht	wusch	wüsch	gewaschen	wasche
6. Weben, to weave	. . . . .	wob *	wöbe *	gewoben *	
5. Weichen, to yield <sup>25</sup>	. . . . .	wich	wiche	gewichen	
5. Weisen, to show	. . . . .	wies	wiese	gewiesen	
Wenden, to turn <sup>26</sup> (see first order)	. . . . .	wandte *	wendete	gewandt	
2. Werben, to sue, to enlist	du wirbst, er wirbt	warb	würbe (würbe)	geworben	wirb
2. Werden, to become (see Lesson LXI.)	du wirst, er wird	ward, wurde	würde	geworden	werde
2. Werfen, to throw	du wirfst, er wirft	warf	würfe (würfe)	geworfen	wirf
6. Wiegen, to weigh (neuter) <sup>27</sup>	. . . . .	wog	wöge	gewogen	
3. Winden, to wind	. . . . .	wand	wände	gewunden *	
6. Wirren, to entangle; like its derivative verwirren	. . . . .	worr *	wörre	geworren *	
Wissen, to know (see first order)	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß	wußte	wüßte	gewußt	wisse
Wollen, to be willing (see first order)	ich will, du willst, er will	. . . . .	. . . . .	. . . . .	wolle
5. Zeihen, to charge (is used only in law terms)	. . . . .	zich	ziehe	gezihen	
6. Ziehen, to draw	. . . . .	zog	zöge	gezogen	
3. Zwingen, to compel, to force	. . . . .	zwang	zwänge	gezwungen	

<sup>25</sup> In the sense of *to soak*, *weichen*, is active and regular.

<sup>26</sup> The neuter verb *wenden* and the reflexive *sich wenden*, are irregular, but the active *wenden*, is regular.

<sup>27</sup> *Wiegen*, to rock, is an active verb and regular.

*Obs.* It will be remembered that derived verbs and those compounded with inseparable and separable particles must be looked for in this list under their primitives. Ex. *entwerfen*, to project, and *werfen*, to reproach with, under *werfen*, to throw; *verbieten*, to forbid, under *bieten*, to bid; *ausgehen*, to go out, under *gehen*, to go; *vorschreiben*, to prescribe, under *schreiben*, to write &c.

## THE GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

The subject of a sentence is always in the Nominative; the object, upon which the action of the subject falls, is put in the Accusative. The Nominative or subject always follows the question *who?* *wer?* the Accusative or object the question *whom?* *wen?* Ex. *The man strikes the dog,* der Mann schlägt den Hund. Question: *who strikes?* *wer schlägt?* Answer: *the man,* der Mann. The man is the subject or Nominative. Question: *whom does the man strike?* *wen schlägt der Mann?* Answer: *he strikes the dog,* er schlägt den Hund. The dog is the object or Accusative. Charles writes a letter, Karl schreibt einen Brief. Karl is the subject or Nominative, einen Brief the object or Accusative.

The object of a sentence may be direct or indirect. It is direct when it is in the Accusative, but indirect when it stands in the Genitive or Dative.

The Genitive always answers the question *whose?* or *of what?* *wessen?* Ex. *Es ist der Garten des Königs,* it is the garden of the king. Question: *whose garden is it?* *wessen Garten ist es?* Answer: *the king's,* des Königs. *Es ist das Haus meines Freundes,* it is the house of my friend. Question: *whose house is it?* *wessen Haus ist es?* Answer: *my friend's,* meines Freundes. *Die Tapferkeit unserer Soldaten,* the valour of our soldiers. Question: *whose valour?* *wessen Tapferkeit?* Answer: *our soldiers',* unserer Soldaten.

The Dative always answers the question *to whom?* *wem?* Ex. *Der Vater gibt seinem Sohne das Buch,* the father gives the book to his son. Question: *to whom does the father give the book?* *wem gibt der Vater das Buch?* Answer: *to his son,* seinem Sohne. *Ich schrieb meiner Schwester einen Brief,* I wrote a letter to my sister. Question: *to whom did I write a letter?* *wem schrieb ich einen Brief?* Answer: *to my sister,* meiner Schwester. *Er wurde der Königin vorgestellt,* he was presented to the queen. Question: *to whom was he presented?* *wem wurde er vorgestellt?* Answer: *to the queen,* der Königin.

I.

VERBS GOVERNING THE NOMINATIVE.

A) The following verbs cannot govern any case but the Nominative; when they have a predicate, it is also put in the Nominative.

Seyn\*, to be. Sein Bruder war ein großer Held, his brother was a great hero.

Werden\*, to become. Er wurde ein reicher Mann, he became a rich man.

Bleiben\*, to remain. Er blieb stets mein getreuer Freund, he always remained my faithful friend.

Heißen\*, to be called. Mein ältester Bruder heißt Karl, my eldest brother's name is Charles.

Scheinen\*, to seem. Der Tag schien mir eine Stunde, das Jahr ein Tag, the day seemed to me an hour, the year a day.

B) Some passive verbs, the active of which requires two accusatives, as:

Genannt werden, to be named. Er kann ein braver Mann genannt werden, he may be named a brave man.

Gescholten werden, to be abused. Er wurde ein Betrüger gescholten, he was abused as a cheat.

Geschimpft werden, to be insulted. Er wird eine feige Memme geschimpft, he is insulted as a coward.

II.

VERBS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

A) The following verbs require the person in the Accusative and the thing in the Genitive.

Anklagen, to accuse. Man klagte ihn des Diebstahls an, they accused him of theft.

Belehren, to instruct, to inform. Er hat mich eines Bessern belehrt, he has set me right. (Only in this phrase.)

Berauben, to rob. Man hat ihn seines Vermögens beraubt, they have robbed him of his fortune.

Beschuldigen, to accuse, to charge. Man hat ihn des Hochverraths beschuldigt, they have accused him of high treason.

Entbinden\* or entladen\*, to release from. Ich entbinde or entlade Sie Ihres Eides, I release you from your oath.

Entblößen, to strip. Man hat ihn aller seiner Habe entblößt, they have stripped him of all his property.

Entkleiden, to deprive of. Der König entkleidete ihn seiner Würde, the king deprived him of his dignity.

Entlassen\*, to dismiss. Ich entlasse Sie meines Dienstes, (also aus meinem Dienste), I dismiss you from my service.

Entledigen, to free from, to disencumber. Ich entledigte ihn dieser Last, I freed him of this burden.

Entsetzen, to discharge. Man hat ihn seines Amtes entsetzt, they discharged him from his office.

Entwöhnen, to wean. Sie entwöhnte das Kind der (also von der) Brust, she weaned the child (from her breast).

Ueberführen, } to convict. Man hat ihn eines Verbrechens  
Ueberweisen\*, } überführt (überwiesen), they have convicted him of a crime.

Ueberheben\*, to spare, to save. Ich überhebe dich dieser Mühe, I save you this trouble.

Ueberzeugen, to convince. Er hat mich dessen überzeugt<sup>1</sup>, he has convinced me of it.

Versichern, to assure (See *Obs.* Lesson LXVI.) Ich versichere Sie meiner Hochachtung und meiner Liebe, I assure you of my esteem and my love.

Verweisen\* (des Landes), to banish from the country. Man hat ihn des Landes<sup>2</sup> verwiesen, they have banished him from the country.

<sup>1</sup> This verb is also employed with von, e. g. Ich bin von Ihrer Freundschaft überzeugt, I am convinced of your friendship.

<sup>2</sup> This verb is also used with the preposition aus, e. g. Jemanden aus dem Lande verweisen, to banish some one from the country.

Würdigen, to deign, to think worthy. Er würdigte mich seines Vertrauens, he thought me worthy of his confidence.

B) Many reflective verbs require the reflective pronoun in the Accusative and the object in the Genitive, as:

Sich annehmen\*, to interest one's self in. Er nahm sich des Kindes an, he interested himself in the child.

Sich bedienen, to make use of. Ich bediene mich dieser schönen Gelegenheit, I profit by this fine opportunity.

Sich befehlen or befehligen\*, to apply to, to attend to. Befehle Dich der Tugend, apply thyself to virtue.

Sich seines Amtes, seiner Forderung begeben\*, to resign, to give up one's employment, one's pretension.

Sich bemächtigen, to take possession of. Man bemächtigte sich seiner Habe, they took possession of his property.

Sich bemätern, to make one's self master of, to seize. Man bemäternete sich des Diebes, they seized the culprit.

Sich entäußern, to renounce, to alienate. Sie wollte sich ihres Erbtheils nicht entäußern, she did not wish to alienate her inheritance.

Sich des Weines enthalten\*, to abstain from wine.

Sich einer Sache ent schlagen\*, to get rid of a thing.

Sich entsinnen\*, to remember, to recollect. Ich kann mich dessen nicht entsinnen, I cannot remember it.

Sich der Armen erbarmen, to have compassion on the poor.

Sich seines Versprechens (or an sein Versprechen) erinnern (*Obs. D. Lesson LXXIII.*), to remember one's promise.

Sich seines Zornes erwehren, to resist (to master) one's anger.

Sich freuen, to rejoice. Ich freue mich Deines Glücks (or über Dein Glück) (Lesson LXXII.), I rejoice in your happiness.

Sich einer Antwort getrösten, to hope with confidence for an answer.

Sich seines Reichthums rühmen, to boast of one's riches.

Sich einer schlechten Handlung schämen, to be ashamed of a bad action.

Sich unterfangen\*,  
Sich unterwinden\*,  
Sich vermessen\*, } to dare, to venture. Ich unterwinde mich dessen nicht, I do not venture it.

Sich eines solchen Glückes vermuthen, to expect such a happiness.

Sich einer Sache versehen\*, to be aware of a thing.

Sich einer Sache weigern, to refuse, to decline any thing.

C) Several verbs govern either the Genitive or the Accusative, but with the former they denote a more general and absolute sense than with the latter, as:

Achten, to mind, to esteem. Ich achte seiner (oder ihn), I esteem him.

Bedürfen\*, to be in want of. Wir bedürfen Ihrer (oder Ihre) Hilfe, we are in want of your assistance.

Entbehren, to do without. Ich kann seiner (oder ihn) nicht entbehren, I cannot do without him.

Erwähnen, to mention. Er erwähnte Ihrer (oder Sie), he mentioned you.

Genießen\*, to enjoy. Genieße der (oder die) Freuden dieses Lebens, enjoy the comforts of this life.

Pflegen, to foster, to take care of. Pflege seiner (oder ihn), take care of him.

Schonen, to spare. Du mußt seiner (oder ihn) schonen, thou must spare him.

Bergessen, to forget. Bergessen Sie meiner (oder mich) nicht, do not forget me.

D) The following govern the Genitive only:

Gedenken\*, to remember, to think of<sup>3</sup>. Er gedachte meiner, he thought of me.

Harren, to wait for. Wir haben Deiner lange geharret, we have been waiting for you a long time.

Lachen, to laugh at. Ein Jeder lacht seiner Eitelkeit, every one laughs at his self-conceitedness<sup>4</sup>.

Spotten, to mock<sup>5</sup>. Spotten Sie meiner nicht, do not laugh at me.

Warten, to attend to. Er wartet seines Amtes, he attends to his office.

E) The verb seyn\*, to be, also requires the Genitive in the following expressions:

Gewohnt seyn\*, to be accustomed. Er ist dessen nicht gewohnt, he is not accustomed to it.

Der Meinung seyn\*, to be of opinion.

Guten (s) Muthes, guter Laune seyn\*, to be of good heart, in spirits.

Willens seyn\*, to intend, to purpose.

Des Todes seyn\*, to die. Er ist des Todes, he is a dead man.

Guter Hoffnung seyn\*, to be in the family-way.

Obs. The verbs always govern the same case as the participles used as adjectives. (See the *Government of Adjectives*, page 32 et seqq.)

F) Verbs employed in relation to an indefinite time also require the Genitive, unless they are followed by a preposition, as:

3 Denken\*, to think, governs the Accusative with the proposition an. Ich werde an Dich denken, I will think of you.

4 Lachen also governs the Accusative with the preposition über.

5 Spotten also governs the Accusative with the preposition über and verspotten, to deride, the Accusative alone.

Des Morgens, des Abends spazieren gehen, to take a walk in the morning, in the evening.

Des Nachts<sup>6</sup> (bei Nacht or die Nacht hindurch) arbeiten, to work at night.

Des Vormittags abreisen, to depart in the forenoon.

Des Nachmittags spazieren reiten\*, to take a ride in the afternoon.

Des Tags (bei oder am Tage) arbeiten, to work during the day.

Sonntags und Montags geht die Post ab, the mail starts on Sunday and Monday.

Mein Freund kommt sechsmal des Jahrs (oder im Jahre), zweimal des Monats (oder im Monat), einmal die Woche (Accusative) my friend comes six times a year, twice a month, once a week. (See Lesson XXXIII and *Obs. B.* Lesson LVI.)

*Obs.* The use of the Genitive case was formerly much more frequent than it is at present; and instead of: *iß von dem Brode*, eat of the bread; *trinke von dem Weine*, drink of the wine, we find in ancient authors: *iß des Brodes*, *trink des Weines*.

### III.

#### VERBS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Besides the Accusative of the object, many transitive verbs govern the Dative case of the person. Ex.

Einem Etwas geben\*, to give something to some one.

Einem Etwas sagen, melden, schreiben, to say, to announce, to write something to some one.

The same occurs with the following verbs:

befehlen\*; to order;  
berichten, to report;  
bezahlen, to pay;  
bieten\*, to offer;

borgen, to lend;  
bringen\* to bring;  
erlassen\* to remit;  
erlauben, to permit;

<sup>6</sup> Nacht, though a feminine noun, adds here. *ß* in the genitive.

gebieten, to command;  
 geloben, to promise;  
 gestatten, to permit;  
 gewähren, to grant;  
 glauben, to believe;  
 gönnen, not to envy;  
 klagen, to complain;  
 leihen, to lend;  
 leisten, to afford, to render;  
 liefern, to deliver;  
 nehmen, to take away;

offenbaren, to reveal;  
 opfern, to sacrifice;  
 ratheu, to advise;  
 rauben, to rob;  
 reichen, to reach, to hand to;  
 schenken, to present;  
 senden, to send;  
 stehlen, to steal;  
 weihen, to consecrate;  
 widmen, to dedicate;  
 zeigen, to show.

To these must be added verbs compounded with *ab*, *an*, *bei*, *ent*, *vor*, *wider*, *zu*, as :

abbitten, to beg pardon;  
 abfordern, to demand from;  
 abkaufen, to buy of;  
 abrathen, to dissuade;  
 abschlagen, to refuse;  
 absprechen, to deny;  
 abzwingen, to force from;  
 anbieten, to offer;  
 andeuten, to notify;  
 andichten, to attribute;  
 ankündigen, to announce;  
 anrathen, to advise;

anzeigen, to advertise;  
 beibringen, to impart;  
 beilegen, to attribute;  
 beimessen, to impute;  
 entreißen, to snatch from;  
 entziehen, to take from;  
 vorlesen, to read to;  
 vorsingen, to sing to;  
 vorwerfen, to reproach with;  
 widerrathen, to dissuade;  
 zusagen, to promise;  
 zuschreiben, to impute.

*Examples.*

Jemandem seinen Fehler abbitten\*, to beg pardon of a person for a fault.

Ich ließ ihm den Degen abfordern, I ordered the sword to be demanded from him.

Ich bot ihm Geld an, I offered him money.

Es war unmöglich, ihm dieses beizubringen\*, it was impossible to impart this to him.

Er entriß mir den Stock, he snatched the stick from me.

Ich las ihm das Buch vor, I read the book to him.

Man wird ihm ein Lied vorsingen, a song will be sung to him; &c.

The Dative case is also governed by:

A) Most neuter or intransitive verbs (these verbs never having an object in the Accusative), such as:

Jemandem angehören, to belong to some one.

Anstehen\*, to suit. Das steht mir nicht an, this does not suit me.

Aufwarten, to wait on. Ich werde morgen die Ehre haben, Ihnen aufzuwarten, I shall have the honour to wait on you to-morrow.

Jemandem ausweichen\*, to give way to some one.

Begegnen, to meet. Ich bin Ihrem Herrn Bruder begegnet, I have met your brother.

Beistehen\*, to assist. Man muß den Armen beistehen, we must assist the poor.

Danken, to thank. Ich danfte ihr, I thanked her.

Dienen, to serve. Er diente seinem Vaterlande, he served his country.

Drohen, to threaten. Er drohte mir, he threatened me.

Entgehen\*, to escape, to avoid. Um dem Tode zu entgehen, nahm er die Flucht, in order to avoid death he took to flight.

Folgen, to follow. Ich werde Ihrem Rathe folgen, I shall follow your advice.

Gefallen, to please. Er gefällt mir sehr, he pleases me much.

Gehorchen, to obey. Kinder müssen ihren Eltern und ihren Lehrern gehorchen, children must obey their parents and their masters.

Jemandem gleichen\*, to be like some one.

Gleich kommen\*, to equal. Ich kann ihm nicht gleich kommen, I cannot equal him.

Helfen\*, to help. Ich half ihm arbeiten, I helped him work.

Nachahmen, to imitate<sup>7</sup>. Ahmen Sie ihm nach, imitate him.

Nachgehen\*<sup>8</sup>, to follow. Ich bin ihm nachgegangen, I have followed him.

<sup>7</sup> Nachahmen requires the person in the Dative, but the thing in the Accusative. Ex. Er ahmt meine Handschrift nach, he imitates my hand-writing.

<sup>8</sup> All intransitives compounded with nach govern the Dative, as: nachlaufen, to run after; nachgeben, to yield.

Schmeicheln, to flatter. Schmeicheln Sie ihr nicht, do not flatter her.

Trogen, Troß bieten\*, to bid defiance. Ich troße der Gefahr, I brave (defy) the danger. Ich biete meinen Feinden Troß, I bid my enemies defiance.

Widersprechen\*, to contradict. Ich wollte ihm nicht widersprechen, I did not wish to contradict him.

Zuhören, to listen to. Hören Sie ihr zu, listen to her.

Zusehen\*<sup>9</sup>, to look on. Ich sehe ihm zu, I look on him.

Zuvorkommen\*, to be beforehand, to anticipate. Er ist meinem Wunsche zuvorgekommen, he has anticipated my wish.

The same is the case with the following verbs:

Anhängen, to adhere to;	gehören, to belong to;
anliegen, to apply to, to solicit;	gelingen, to succeed;
antworten, to answer;	genügen, to suffice;
behagen, to please;	gerathen, to be successful;
beifallen,	gerathen, to turn out;
beipflichten, } to agree with a per-	geziemen, to be becoming;
beistimmen, } son in opinion;	huldigen, to do homage;
beitreten,	lohnem, to reward;
beikommen, to come near, to get	mangeln, to be wanting;
at;	nützen, to be useful;
beispringen, to come quickly to	obliegen, to apply one's self to a
one's assistance;	thing, to be incumbent upon;
bekommen, to agree with (re-	schaden, to hurt;
ferring to health);	scheinen, to appear, to restrain;
bevorstehen, to impend;	steuern, to check, to restrain;
einfallen, to occur to one's mind;	trauen, to trust;
einleuchten, to be clear, to appear	unterliegen, to succumb;
evident;	wehren, to prevent;
entfliehen, to escape;	weichen, to give way, to yield;
entsprechen, to answer to, to cor-	widerstehen, to resist;
respond to;	willfahren, to grant;
fehlen, to be wanting;	wohlwollen, to wish well;
fluchen, to curse;	zufallen, to fall to one's lot;
fröhnen, to do service without pay;	zugehören, to belong to;
gebühren, to be due;	zukommen, to be due;
gedeihen, to prosper;	zureden, to exhort.

<sup>9</sup> Ansehen, to look at, is active, and governs the Accusative.

*Obs.* Intransitive verbs which admit a passive voice are never construed with the nominative of the person, as in English. Ex.

Mir wird beigeſtanden (not ich werde), I am assisted.

Ihm wird geholſen (not ich werde), he is aided.

Ihr wird gedankt (not ſie wird), ſhe is thanked.

Ihnen wird widerſtanden (not Sie werden), you are reſiſted.

*B)* The reflective verbs mentioned page 99, as: Sich einbilden, to imagine, to fancy. Du biſdeſt Dir ein, thou fancieſt, &c.

*C)* The impersonal verbs mentioned page 103, as:

Es iſt mir Angſt, I am in fear.

Es ſcheint Dir, it ſeems to thee.

Wenn es Ihnen beliebt, if it pleaſes you.

Es hat mir geträumt, I have dreamt, &c.

*Obs.* Verbs expreſſing advantage or diſadvantage are generally conſtrued with the dative of the perſon. Ex. Der Schneider macht mir einen Rock, the tailor makes me a coat.

Der Schuſter macht mir Schuhe, the ſhoemaker makes me ſhoes.

Man hat mir meinen Hut geſtohlen, they have ſtolen my hat from me.

Dir ſcheint die Sonne, for thee the ſun ſhines.

Dir lachen die Felſer, to thee the fields ſmile.

Dir heulen die Winde, to thee the winds howl.

*Obs. B.* Inſtead of the Dative, the propoſition für may be uſed with the Accuſative. Ex.

Der Schneider macht für mich einen Rock, the tailor makes a coat for me, &c.

---

IV.

VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

A) All active or transitive verbs which in the passive voice govern the nominative. Ex.

*Active voice.*

*Passive voice.*

Ich schätze meinen Freund, I esteem Mein Freund wird von mir ge-  
my friend. schätzt.

Ich ehre die Wahrheit, I reve- Die Wahrheit wird von mir ge-  
rence truth. ehrt.

Er liebt das Kind, he loves the Das Kind wird von ihm geliebt.  
child.

The same may be said of the following and other transitive verbs:

Verändern, to change. Sie veränderten ihre Sitten, they changed their manners.

Auslachen, to laugh at. Lachen Sie mich nicht aus, do not laugh at me.

Brauchen, to want. Ich brauche mein Geld, I want my money.

Fragen, to ask. Fragen Sie den Lehrer, ob ich mich irre, ask the master whether I mistake.

Genießen\*<sup>10</sup>, to enjoy. Genießen Sie alle Vergnügungen, welche die Tugend erlaubt, enjoy all the pleasures that virtue permits.

Mißbrauchen, to abuse, to misuse. Sie mißbrauchen meine Güte, meine Geduld, you abuse my goodness, wear out my patience.

Spielen<sup>11</sup>, to play. Karten spielen, to play at cards. Klavier spielen, to play the harpsichord.

Tränken, to give to drink. Das Pferd tränken, to give the horse to drink.

Jemanden überreden, to persuade some one. Man wollte diesen Mann überreden, they wished to persuade this man.

<sup>10</sup> Genießen is also construed with the object in the Genitive. (See page 142.)

<sup>11</sup> Spielen is also construed with the preposition auf and the name of the instrument in the Dative. (See Obs. Lesson C.)

Ueberleben, to survive, to outlive. Ich werde das nicht überleben, I shall not outlive this.

Verehren (schenken), to present, to give. Meine Schwester hat mir eine goldene Uhr verehrt, my sister has presented me with a gold watch.

Wärmen, to warm Den Kaffee wärmen, to warm the coffee.

*B) All verbs compounded with the prefix be. Ex.*

Beantworten<sup>12</sup>, to answer. Ich habe seinen Brief beantwortet (oder auf seinen Brief geantwortet), I answered his letter.

Benutzen, to profit. Ich habe Ihren Rath benutzt, I profited by your advice.

Bewachen, to watch. Der Hund bewacht das Haus, the dog watches over the house.

Beweinen, to bewail. Er beweinte den Tod seiner Gattin, he bewailed the death of his lady.

*Obs.* The following verbs, beginning with *be*, must be excepted, viz.

Begegnen, to meet, governs the Dative (See page 146.)

Behagen, to please. (See page 147.)

Beharren, to persevere in. (See page 165)

Bestehen\*, to insist upon, to consist of (See *infra*, Verbs governing Prepositions.)

*C) Neuter verbs, when a determinate time or measure is expressed, or when the action does not pass over to the object, as:*

Gehen\*, to go. Er ging eine Meile, he walked a mile.

Kämpfen, to fight. Einen guten Kampf kämpfen, to fight a good fight.

Reden, to speak. Ich rede eine verständliche Sprache, I speak an intelligible language.

<sup>12</sup> Antworten requires the person in the Dative, and the thing in the Accusative, with the preposition *auf*. Ex. Ich werde Ihnen auf Ihren Brief antworten, I shall answer your letter.

Reiten\*, to ride. Ich reite den Schimmel und mein Vater den Fuchs, I ride the white and my father the chesnut-horse.

Schlafen\*, to sleep. Er schläft den ganzen Tag, he sleeps the whole day.

Sitzen\*, to sit. Er saß eine Stunde, he sat an hour.

Wiegen\*, to weigh. Es wiegt einen Zentner, it weighs a hundred weight.

D) Most reflective verbs, which ought to be considered as transitive verbs, the objective case of which refers to the same person as the nominative (page 99, and Lesson LXXII.), as:

Ich freue mich, I rejoice.

Du schämst Dich, thou art ashamed.

Bemühen Sie sich nicht, do not give yourself the trouble.

E) Some impersonal verbs (see page 102, and *Obs. A. and B. Lesson LVIII.*), as:

Es hungert mich, I am hungry.

Es friert\* ihn, he is cold, &c.

F) The following verbs govern two Accusative cases, one of the person and another of the object:

Heißen\*, to call, to order. Er heißt mich einen Narren, he calls me a fool. Wer hat Dich das geheißt? who has ordered you this?

Nennen\*, to name, to call. Ich nenne ihn meinen Freund, I call him my friend.

Schelten\*, { to scold, to give a bad name. Er schalt  
(schimpfte) ihn einen Betrüger, he called  
Schimpfen, { him a cheat.

For the verb kleiden, to fit, to clothe, see *Obs. B. Lesson LXVIII.*

For the verb kosten, to cost, see Lesson LXVII.

*Obs.* The verb lassen\*, to let, to get, to order, requires the person in the Dative or Accusative, according to its object being direct or indirect. Ex.

Lassen Sie mir einen Brief schreiben, order a letter to be written to me.

Lassen Sie mich einen Brief schreiben, let me write a letter.

According to this we must say:

Er ließ mich seinen Unwillen empfinden, he made me feel his displeasure.

Er läßt mich seine Absicht merken, he makes me perceive his intention.

Lassen Sie mich doch das sehen, pray let me see that.

Ich werde es Dich fühlen lassen, I shall let you feel it.

Ich werde es Sie wissen lassen, I shall let you know it.

For the verb lehren, to teach, see *Obs. B.* Lesson LXXIII.

The verb liebfoßen, to caress, to cherish, is by some authors construed with the Dative, by others with the Accusative of the person.

For the verbs which do not admit the particle zu before the Infinitive, see *Obs. B.* Lesson XLII.

## VERBS GOVERNING PREPOSITIONS.

VERBS GOVERNING THE PREPOSITION *wegen*, ON ACCOUNT OF, WITH THE GENITIVE.

In Sorgen (in Verlegenheit) seyn\*, to fear, to be anxious.

Wir waren Ihretwegen in Sorgen, we were anxious about you.

Weshwegen sind Sie in Sorgen? about whom (about what) are you anxious?

Strafen, bestrafen, to punish. Weshwegen hat man ihn bestraft? for what have they punished him? Man hat ihn wegen eines Verbrechens bestraft, they have punished him for a crime. Wollen Sie ihn wegen seiner Faulheit (or seiner Faulheit wegen) bestrafen? will you punish him for his idleness? Ich will ihn deswegen bestrafen, I will punish him for it.

Wegen des Preises<sup>13</sup> einig werden, to agree about the price. (See Lesson LXXVIII.)

*Obs.* Whenever the English preposition may be explained by *on account of*, denoting a motive or cause, it is rendered in German by *wegen* with the Genitive.

VERBS GOVERNING THE PREPOSITION *mit*, WITH THE DATIVE.

Sich abgeben\*, to meddle with; sich befassen, to engage in. Ich gebe mich nicht mit diesen Sachen ab, I do not meddle with these things. Er befaßt sich mit diesem Geschäfte, he is engaged in this affair. Sich mit Jemandem abgeben\*, to have intercourse with a person.

Anfangen\*, to begin. Womit haben Sie angefangen? with what did you begin?

Aufwarten, to serve, to attend. Kann ich Ihnen mit einem Glase Wein aufwarten? do you choose a glass of wine? Womit kann ich Ihnen aufwarten? what do you choose?

Beehren, to honour. Beehren Sie mich mit Ihrer Freundschaft, honour me with your friendship.

Sich begnügen, to content one's self. Der Weise begnügt sich mit Wenigem, the wise man contents himself with little.

Sich behelfen\*, to make shift. Er behilft sich damit, he makes shift with it.

Befrängen, to crown. Mit Rosen befrängen, to crown with roses.

Belasten, to load. Mit einer Bürde belasten, to load with a burthen.

Belegen, behängen, to lay over, to cover. Etwas mit schönen Blumen belegen (behängen), to cover any thing with beautiful flowers.

Sich beschäftigen, to be busy, to be engaged. Womit beschäftigen Sie sich? in what are you engaged?

<sup>13</sup> We also say über den Preis einig werden, to agree about the price. (See Lesson LXXVIII.)

Beschenken, to present with, to make a present of. Hat er Sie mit dieser goldenen Dose beschenkt? has he made you a present of this gold snuff-box? Er hat mich damit beschenkt, he has made me a present of it. Womit hat er Sie beschenkt? what has he made you a present of?

Besetzen, to occupy, to cover. Sie besetzte den reinlichen Tisch mit einfacher, doch wohlschmeckender Kost, she covered the cleanly table with simple, but wholesome food. Mit Soldaten besetzen, to occupy with soldiers.

*Obs.* Most derivative verbs formed from substantives and adjectives by means of the prefix *be*, govern the preposition *mit*, with the Dative.

Beistehen\*, to assist. Stehen Sie mir mit Ihrem Rathe bei, assist me with your advice.

Decken<sup>14</sup>, to deck, to cover. Das Dach ist mit Ziegeln gedeckt, the roof is covered with tiles.

Dienen, to serve. Kann ich Ihnen mit diesem Gelde dienen? can I serve you with this money?

Drohen, to threaten. Er drohte mir mit einer Ohrfeige, he threatened me with a box on the ear.

Einlegen, to inlay, to incrust. Mit Gold oder Silber einlegen, to incrust with gold or silver.

Endigen, to finish. Er endigte seine Rede mit diesen Worten, he finished his speech with these words.

Füllen<sup>15</sup>, to fill. (Lesson LXXXIII.) Ich fülle meinen Beutel mit Geld, I fill my purse with money.

Mitleiden haben\*, to have compassion. Habet Mitleiden mit den Unglücklichen, have compassion on the unhappy.

<sup>14</sup> And all those compounded with *decken*, as *bedecken*, *zudecken*, to cover entirely.

<sup>15</sup> And all those compounded with *füllen*, as: *anfüllen*, *vollfüllen*, to fill up.

- Malen, to paint. Mit<sup>16</sup> Del malen, to paint in oil.
- Niederkommen\*, to be delivered. Sie ist mit einem Sohne, mit einer Tochter niedergekommen, she has been delivered of a boy, of a daughter.
- Schmeicheln, to flatter. Sie schmeicheln mir nur mit diesen schönen Worten, you only flatter me with these fine words.
- Schmücken, ausschmücken, to adorn. Etwas mit Blumen schmücken, to adorn something with flowers.
- Schneiden, to cut. Mit dem Messer schneiden, to cut with the knife.
- Mit Jemandem (mit einer Sache) zufrieden seyn\*, to be content with some one (with a thing).
- Sprechen\*, to speak; reden, to discourse. (See *Note 3. Lesson XXVI.* and *Note 1. Lesson XLV.*) Ich habe mit ihm über das bewußte Geschäft gesprochen, I spoke to him about the matter in question.
- Ueberhäufen, to overwhelm. Sie überhäufen mich mit Wohlthaten, you heap benefits upon me.
- Umgehen\*, to associate, to converse, to treat. Mit wem gehen Sie um? with whom do you associate? Wie Sie mit ihm umgehen! how you treat him!
- Vergleichen\*, to compare. Ich vergleiche mich nicht mit Ihnen. I do not compare myself to you.
- Versorgen, versehen\*, to provide. Sie haben mich mit Büchern versehen (versorgt), you have provided me with books.
- Vorlieb nehmen\*, to content one's self. Nehmen Sie mit diesem Wenigen vorlieb, content yourself with this little.
- Zubringen\*, to spend. Womit bringen Sie die Zeit zu? what do you spend your time in? (*Lesson LXVI*)
- Obs.* Whenever the English preposition may be explained by *with*, it is rendered in German by *mit*, with the Dative.

16 We also say in Del malen, to paint in oil.

VERBS GOVERNING THE PREPOSITION *nach*, WITH THE  
DATIVE.

Sich erkundigen, to inquire after some one. Ich habe mich nach ihm erkundigt, I have inquired after him. (Lesson LXXXVII.)

Forschen, to inquire into. Nach der Wahrheit forschen, to inquire into the truth.

Fragen, to inquire after. Nach wem fragen Sie? after whom do you inquire? Ich frage nach dem Hausherrn, I inquire after the master of the house. (Lesson LXXXVII.)

Sich kleiden, to dress. Er kleidet sich nach der Mode, he dresses after the fashion.

Sich richten, to accomodate one's self. Ich werde mich nach Ihnen richten, I shall accomodate myself to you.

Riechen\*, to smell. Er riecht nach Wein, he smells of wine.

Schmecken, to taste. Das Fleisch schmeckt nach Rauch, the meat tastes of smoke.

Sich sehnen, to long for. Ich sehne mich nach meiner Heimath, I long for my home.

Seufzen, to sigh. Er seufzt nach Ruhe, he sighs for rest.

Streben, to aspire. Nach Ehrenstellen streben, to aspire to places of honour.

Trachten, to strive for, to aspire at. Er trachtet nach diesem Amte, he aspires at this office.

Zielen, to tend to. Nach Geld zielen, to tend to money.

*Obs.* Whenever the English preposition may be explained by *after*, *for*, expressing a longing for, or a striving after anything, it is rendered in German by *nach*, with the Dative.

VERBS GOVERNING THE PREPOSITION *von*, WITH THE  
DATIVE.

They are used

a) To answer the question *von wem?* of (by, from) whom? for persons, and the question *wovon?* (von was?) of what? for things.

Von wem werden Sie geliebt? by whom are you loved?  
Von meinem Vater, by my father.

Von wem sprechen Sie? of whom do you speak? Wir sprechen von Ihnen, we speak of you.

Von wem haben Sie dieses Buch bekommen? from whom have you received this book? Von meinem Freunde, from my friend.

Wovon reden Sie? of what do you speak? Wir reden von dem Frieden, we speak of peace.

Wovon lebt er? on what does he live? Er lebt von Brod und Wein, he lives on bread and wine.

Befreien, to deliver. Befreien Sie mich von diesem Uebel, deliver me from this misfortune.

Begehren, to desire, to demand. Er begehrte das Buch von der Schwester, he desired the book from the sister.

Denken<sup>\*17</sup>, | to think, to give one's opinion. Was denken Halten, | Sie von diesem Manne? what do you think of that man? Was halten Sie von der Sache? what do you think of this affair?

Entblößen, to deprive. Von Allem entblößt, deprived of every thing.

Fordern, to ask, to demand. Er forderte Geld von dem Kaufmanne, he asked the merchant for money.

Sich entfernen, to withdraw from, to go away from. Ich entferne mich von dem Feuer, I go away from the fire. (Lesson LXXIV.)

Genesen\*, to recover. Von einer Krankheit genesen, to recover from an illness.

Hören, to hear. Ich habe nichts davon gehört, I have heard nothing of it.

Verlangen, to demand, to ask. Was verlangen Sie von mir? what do you ask me for? (Lesson LIV.)

Wissen, to know. Ich weiß nichts von dieser Sache, I know nothing of this affair.

b) To answer the question woher? whence? where from?

17 When denken does not mean to give one's opinion, as in this example, it governs the proposition all with the Accusative. (See infra, page 165 and Lesson C.)

Wo kommen Sie her? where do you come from? Ich komme vom Lande, I come from the country. (Lesson LXXVIII.)

Wo sind Sie her? what countryman are you? Ich bin von (aus) Paris, I am from Paris. (Lesson LXVIII.)

*Obs.* When the place from which a person comes is conceived to be close, the preposition aus, out of (in Latin *ex*) is used, (See Lessons LII. LXI. LXV. LXVIII. XCI. XCVII.) Ex.

Er kommt aus dem Garten, aus der Kirche, he comes from (out of) the garden, from the church.

Man schöpft Wasser aus dem Brunnen, they draw water from the well.

Ich trinke aus Ihrem Glase, I drink out of your glass.

Ich ersehe aus Ihrem Briefe vom zwanzigsten dieses, I learn from your letter of the twentieth instant.

Aus dem, was Sie sagen, schliesse ich, from what you say I conclude.

Bestehen\*, to consist of. Der Mensch besteht aus Leib und Seele, man consists of body and soul.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION zu,  
WITH THE DATIVE.

Sich bereiten (vorbereiten), to prepare one's self. Bereiten Sie sich zur Arbeit (vor), prepare yourself for work.

Bestimmen, to appoint, to destine. Ich habe dieses Geld zu einem Buche bestimmt, I destined this money for a book.

Dienen, to serve. Wozu dient Ihnen dieses Geld? what does this money serve your for? (See Lesson LXXIV.)

Nutzen (nügen), to serve, to be of use. Wozu nützt (nügt) Ihnen dieses Buch? of what use is this book to you? (Lesson LXXXVI.)

Taugen, to be of use, to be good. Er taugt zu Nichts, he is good for nothing. (Lesson LXVI.)

Sich entschließen\*, to resolve, to determine. Ich kann mich nicht dazu entschließen, I cannot resolve upon it

Lust haben\*, to have a mind. Er hat Lust dazu, he has a mind to it.

Sagen, to say. Was sagen Sie dazu? what do you say to it?

Sich schicken, to adapt one's self. Er schickt sich zu Allem, he adapts himself to every thing.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION für,  
WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

Sich ausgeben\*, to profess to be. Er gibt sich für einen Arzt aus, he professes to be a physician.

Büßen, to atone for. Er büßt für seine Sünden, he atones for his sins. Er wird dafür büßen müssen, he will be obliged to atone for it.

Sich bei Jemandem für Etwas bedanken, to thank some one for something.

Jemandem für Etwas danken, to thank some one for something. Ich danke Ihnen für die Mühe, die Sie sich für mich gegeben haben, I thank you for the trouble you have taken for me.

Jemanden für Etwas entschädigen<sup>18</sup>, to indemnify some one for something. Ich werde Sie dafür entschädigen, I shall indemnify you for it.

Erklären, to declare. Ich erkläre ihn für einen Betrüger, I declare him to be an impostor.

Gelten\*, to be considered. Er will für einen Künstler gelten, he wishes to be considered as an artist.

Halten\*, to take for. Ich halte ihn für einen ehrlichen Mann, I take him for (consider him) an honest man.

Für Etwas verbunden seyn\*, to be obliged for something. Ich bin Ihnen für die Sorgfalt verbunden, die Sie für mich gehabt haben, I am obliged to you for the attention you have had for me.

Obs. Whenever the English preposition may be explained by *for*, it is rendered in German by *für*, with the Accusative.

<sup>18</sup> Entschädigen also requires the preposition *wegen*, with the Genitive.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS GOVERN THE PREPOSITION *über*,  
WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

Sich ärgern, to be vexed, to be offended, to be angry.  
Ueber wen ärgern Sie sich? with whom are you angry?  
Ich ärgere mich über ihn, I am angry with him.  
Ärgern Sie sich über seine Aufführung? are you offended by his conduct?  
Ich ärgere mich darüber, I am offended by it.  
Worüber ärgern Sie sich? what puts you out of humour?

Sich aufhalten\*, to mock at, to criticise. Er hält sich über Jedermann auf, he criticises every body. (Lesson LXXVII.)

Sich beklagen, } to complain of. Sich bei Jemandem über klagen, }  
Sich beschweren, } Etwas beklagen, to complain of something to some one. (Lesson LXXIX.)  
Er beklagt sich über Sie, he complains of you.

Sich betrüben, to afflict one's self. Sie müssen sich über diesen Zufall nicht betrüben, you must not afflict yourself at this accident. (Lesson LXXIX.)  
Worüber sind Sie betrübt? at what are you afflicted?  
Ueber den Tod meines Freundes, at the death of my friend.

Ueber den Preis (wegen des Preises) einig werden\*, to agree about the price. (See Lesson LXXVIII. and p. 153.)

Sich erbarmen, to take pity. Erbarme Dich des Jammers, take pity on the misery.

Erstaunen, to be astonished. Ich habe Ursache, über sein Betragen erstaunt zu seyn, I have reason to be astonished at his conduct.  
Ich erstaune darüber (bin darüber erstaunt), I am surprised at it (Lesson XCIX.)

Sich freuen, to rejoice. Ich freue mich über Ihr Glück, I rejoice at your happiness. (Lesson LXXII.)

Ueber Etwas frohlocken, to rejoice at something.

Gebieten\*, to command. Ueber ein Land gebieten, to have the command of a country.

Sich grämen, to grieve. Worüber grämen Sie sich? at what do you grieve?

Herrschen, } to reign, to rule over. Ueber ein Land herr-  
 Schalten, } schen, to rule over a country. Er schaltet  
 Walten, } über meine Börse, he commands my purse.  
 Lachen, to laugh. Ich lache über seine Thorheit, I laugh  
 at his folly.

Sich lustig machen, sich aufhalten, to mock at or to criticise  
 some one. Er hält sich über mich auf, he criticises me.

Nachdenken\*, to reflect. Worüber denken Sie nach? upon  
 what do you reflect?

Ueber Etwas schreien, to cry against something.

Siegen, to vanquish, to be victorious, to triumph Ueber  
 Feinde kannst Du siegen, doch dieser Sieg über Dich selbst  
 ... thou vanquishest thy enemies, but this victory over  
 thyself....

Spotten<sup>19</sup>, to mock. Ueber wen spotten Sie? whom do  
 you mock at?

Ueber Jemanden trauern<sup>20</sup>, to mourn for some one.

Triumphiren, to triumph. Ueber seine Leidenschaften trium-  
 phiren, to triumph over one's passions.

Weinen, to weep. Ueber den Tod eines Freundes weinen,  
 to weep over the death of a friend; über Etwas wei-  
 nen, to weep over something.

Sich wundern, to wonder. Ich wundere mich über das,  
 was Sie gethan haben, I am surprised at what you  
 have done.

Zürnen<sup>21</sup>, to be angry. Worüber zürnen Sie? what are  
 you angry at?

*Obs. A.* Whenever the English preposition may be  
 explained by *about* or *over*, it is rendered in German  
 by the preposition *über*, with the Accusative.

*Obs. B.* The preposition *über* requires the Dative  
 when it indicates rest, and the Accusative when it

<sup>19</sup> Spotten also governs the Genitive. Ex. Sie spotten meiner,  
 you mock at me.

<sup>20</sup> This verb also requires the preposition *um* with the Accusative  
 (see p. 162 *infra*) and the preposition *wegen* with the Genitive.

<sup>21</sup> Zürnen also requires simply the dative, or the prepositions *auf*  
*und wider*, with the accusative.

denotes motion or direction. (See Lesson XXIX. and further on *the Government of Prepositions.*)

THE FOLLOWING VERBS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION *um*,  
WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.

Sich befümmern, to trouble one's head. Er befümmert sich nicht um sie, he does not trouble his head about her. (Lesson LXXXII.)

Sich um Etwas bemühen, to take pains about something.

Betrügen\*, to deceive. Er hat mich um einen Thaler betrogen, he has cheated me of a crown.

Betteln, to ask alms. Um Brod betteln, to ask for bread.

Bitten\*, to beg. Dürfte ich Sie um das Buch bitten? may I trouble you for the book? (Lesson LIV.)

Buhlen, } to court, to sue. Um eine Gunst buhlen or  
Werben\*, } werben, to sue for a favour.

Ersuchen, to request. Jemanden um Etwas ersuchen, to request something of some one.

Fragen, to ask. Er fragte mich um Rath, he asked my advice.

Sich irren, to mistake. Sie haben sich um einen Thaler geirrt, you have made a mistake of a crown.

Spielen, to play. Um Geld spielen, to play for money.

Um Jemanden trauern, to mourn for some one. Er trauert um seinen Vater, he mourns for his father.

THE FOLLOWING VERBS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION *vor*,  
WITH THE DATIVE.

Angst or bange seyn\*, to be in fear, to be anxious. Es ist mir (mir ist) angst (bange) davor, I am in fear about it.

Angst or bange werden\*, to begin to be anxious. Es wird mir (mir wird) angst (or bange) davor, I begin to be anxious about it<sup>22</sup>.

<sup>22</sup> Angst and bange also require the preposition *um*, with the Accusative; e. g. Es ist mir bange um ihn, I am anxious about him, I fear some mischief may happen (or may have happened) to him.

Vor Berdruß (vor Liebe) krank seyn\*, to be sick with grief (with love).

Sich vor Jemandem oder einer Sache in Acht nehmen\*, to beware of some one or something. (Lesson XCVIII.)

Sich vor Jemandem oder einer Sache hüten, to keep on one's guard against some one or something. (Lesson XCVIII.)

Sich vor Jemandem verbergen\* oder verstecken, to hide one's self from any one.

Ekeln, to loathe, to be disgusted. Es efelt mir (mir efelt) vor dieser Speise, I am disgusted with this meat.

Einen Ekkel vor Etwas haben\* oder bekommen\*, to have a surfeit of anything.

Einen Abscheu vor Jemandem oder vor einer Sache haben\*, to abhor any one or a thing.

Vor Scham erröthen, to blush with shame.

Vor Etwas erschrecken\*, to be frightened at any thing.

Sich vor Jemandem oder einer Sache fürchten, to be afraid of some one or of something. (Lesson LXXII.) Ich fürchte mich nicht vor den Geistern, I am not afraid of ghosts.

Sich vor Etwas schütten, to shelter one's self from something. (Lesson XCVII.)

Sich vor Etwas sichern, to take shelter from something. (Lesson XCVII.)

Fliehen\*, to take flight. Vor dem Feinde fliehen, to fly from the enemy.

Vor Furcht (Kälte) zittern, to tremble with fear (cold).

Vor Mattigkeit (Kälte, Hitze) nicht mehr können\*, to be unable to stand the fatigue (the cold, the heat).

Vor Alter (Angst, Durst, Hunger, Kälte, Kummer u. s. w.) sterben\* (umkommen\*), to die of old age (anguish, thirst, hunger, cold, grief, &c)

*Obs.* Any verb in the perfect tense may require the preposition vor, with the Dative, to indicate the past time.  
Ex. Er ist vor einer Stunde, vor einem Jahre angekommen, he

arrived an hour, a year ago. The preposition *vor* requires the Dative to designate rest, and the Accusative to denote motion or direction. (See Lesson XXIX. and further on *the Government of Prepositions.*)

THE FOLLOWING VERBS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION *an*.

1. With the Dative:

An dem Fieber krank seyn\*, to be sick of the fever.

An dem Kopfe (der Brust) leiden\*, to feel a pain in one's head (in one's chest).

An einer Krankheit sterben\*<sup>23</sup>, to die of a disease.

An einem Unglücke Schuld seyn\*, to be the cause of a misfortune. (See Lesson XCIX.) Ich bin nicht Schuld daran, it is not my fault.

An einer Sache Freude, Gefallen, Lust haben\*, to be pleased with something, to find pleasure in something.

An Jemandem Schutz, Trost haben\*, to find protection, comfort from some one.

Fehlen, } to be in want of. Es fehlt, mangelt oder  
Mangeln, } gebriecht ihm an Geld und Kleidungsstücken,  
Gebrechen\*, } he is in want of money and clothes.

Hindern, to hinder, to prevent. Er hinderte sie an ihrem Glücke, he hindered her from making a fortune.

Sich an einer Sache ergötzen, to delight in a thing.

Sich an Jemandem rächen, to take revenge upon some one. Ich werde mich nicht an ihm rächen, I shall not take revenge upon him.

Jemanden an Geschicklichkeit übertreffen\*, to surpass any one in ability.

An einer Sache zweifeln<sup>24</sup>, to doubt of a thing. Zweifeln

<sup>23</sup> The verb *sterben* also requires the Genitive; but when we speak of a disease or wound, it requires the preposition *an*, with the Dative. Ex. Hungers sterben, to die of hunger; eines schnellen Todes sterben, to die suddenly; an einer Krankheit, an einer Wunde sterben, to die of a disease, of a wound. (Lesson LXXXV.)

<sup>24</sup> Also *verzweifeln*, to despair, as: ich verzweifle noch nicht an dem guten Erfolg, I do not yet despair of success.

Sie an der Wahrheit dessen, was ich Ihnen gesagt habe?  
do you question the truth of what I told you? Ich  
zweifle nicht daran, I do not question it.

2) With the Accusative:

An Jemanden oder eine Sache denken\*, to think of some  
one or something. An wen denken Sie? of whom do  
you think? Woran denken Sie? of what do you think?  
(Lesson C.)

Sich an Jemanden wenden\*, to address one's self, to  
apply to some one.

An Jemanden schreiben\*<sup>25</sup>, to write to some one.

An ein Land grenzen, to border upon a country.

Jemanden an Etwas gewöhnen, to accustom some one to  
something. (Lesson XCVIII.)

Sich an Etwas gewöhnen, to accustom one's self to some-  
thing. (Lesson XCVIII.)

Sich an Etwas erinnern<sup>26</sup>, to remember something. Er-  
innern Sie sich an Ihr Versprechen? do you remember  
your promise? Ich erinnere mich daran, I remember it.  
(Obs. D. Lesson LXXIII.)

An Einen Gott glauben<sup>27</sup>, to believe in one God. (See  
Lesson LXXII.)

*Obs.* An governs the Dative to designate rest, and  
the Accusative to denote motion or direction. (See  
Lessons XXIX. and XXXII. and further on *the Govern-  
ment of Prepositions.*)

THE FOLLOWING VERBS REQUIRE THE PREPOSITION auf.

1) With the Dative:

Auf seiner Meinung bestehen\*, oder verharren, to persist  
in one's opinion.

<sup>25</sup> Schreiben also requires the person in the Dative without a  
preposition. (See Lesson XXXII.)

<sup>26</sup> Sich erinnern governs the Genitive without a preposition. (See  
Lesson LXXIII. and page 141.)

<sup>27</sup> Glauben also requires the person in the Dative. (See Lesson  
LXXII.)

Beruben, to rest upon, to be founded upon. Ihre Behauptung beruht auf einem Irrthume, your assertion is founded upon an error.

Auf einem Instrumente spielen <sup>28</sup>, to play upon an instrument. (Lesson C.)

2) With the Accusative:

Auf Jemanden oder Etwas ankommen\*, to depend upon some one or something. Es kommt auf Sie an, it depends upon you. Es kommt auf sein Glück an, it concerns his fortune.

Auf einen Brief (eine Frage) antworten<sup>29</sup>, to answer a letter (a question). (Lesson XXXI)

Sich auf Etwas beziehen\*, to refer to a thing.

Auf Etwas deuten, to allude to something.

Sich auf Etwas legen, to occupy one's self with a thing, to study a thing. Er legt sich auf die Wissenschaften, he studies the sciences.

Sich auf Jemanden oder Etwas verlassen\*, to rely upon some one or something. Ich verlasse mich auf Sie, I rely upon you. Er verläßt sich auf mein Versprechen, he relies upon my promise.

Auf Etwas rechnen, to calculate upon something.

Sich auf eine Sache verstehen\*, to be a judge of something. (Lesson XCVI.)

Auf Jemanden oder Etwas vertrauen, to confide in some one or something.

Jemanden auf Etwas vertrösten, to give one fair hopes of something.

Arbeit, Geld, Zeit u. s. w. auf Etwas verwenden, to spend work, money, time, &c. upon anything.

Auf Etwas verzichten, or Verzicht thun\* oder leisten, to renounce or to give up any thing.

<sup>28</sup> Spielen also requires the thing in the Accusative. (See Lesson C.)

<sup>29</sup> Antworten requires the person in the Dative. (See Lesson XXXI. and page 150.)

Auf Jemanden warten<sup>30</sup>, to wait for some one. Wir wollen auf Sie warten, we will wait for you. (Lesson XLIX.)

Auf Etwas zielen<sup>31</sup>, to aim at any thing.

*Obs.* Auf governs the Dative to designate rest, and the Accusative to denote motion or direction. (See Lesson XXXII. and further on the *Government of Prepositions.*)

THE FOLLOWING VERBS GOVERN THE PREPOSITION *in*.

1) With the Dative:

Bestehen\*, to consist. Seine Krankheit besteht nur in der Einbildung, his illness is but imaginary (consists only in his imagination).

Sich in Jemanden irren, to mistake some one. Sie irren sich in mir, you mistake me.

In einer Sache mit Jemandem übereinstimmen, to agree with some one in a thing.

*Obs.* Future tenses equally require the preposition *in*, with the Dative, the same as past tenses require the preposition *vor*, with the Dative. (See *Obs.* p. 163.) Ex. Ich werde in einer Stunde abreißen, I shall depart in an hour.

In einem Jahre wird er ankommen, he will arrive in a year.

2) With the Accusative:

Sich in Etwas schicken oder fügen, to accommodate one's self to something, to submit to something.

Sich in Etwas mischen, to meddle with something. (Lesson LXXXII.)

Sich in Jemanden verlieben, to fall in love with some

30 Erwarten, to expect, governs the Accusative. (See Lesson XLIX. and p. 149.)

31 Zielen, in the signification of *to tend to, to allude to*, requires the preposition *nach* with the Dative. *Nach Etwas zielen*, to tend to something. See p. 156.

one. Er hat sich in sie verliebt, he has fallen in love with her; sie ist in ihn verliebt, she is in love with him. In Etwas willigen oder einwilligen, to consent to a thing. (Lesson XCVI.)

Theilen oder eintheilen, to divide. Etwas in drei Theile theilen, to divide something in three.

*Obs. A.* The prepositions ohne, without; statt or anstatt, instead of, require in German zu before the infinitive, whilst in English they are construed with the present participle. Ex. Ohne Etwas zu sagen, without saying any thing. (Lesson LX.) Dieser Mann spricht, anstatt zu hören, this man speaks instead of listening. (Lesson XXXVIII.)

*Obs. B.* The preposition in governs the Dative to designate rest, and the Accusative to denote direction. (See Lesson XXXI., and further on *the Government of Prepositions.*)

---

EXERCISES. 264.

A courtier (ein Herr vom Hofe) requested Louis XII. (verlangen von Einem) to confiscate (die Einziehung) the goods (das Gut) of a rich burgher (der Bürger) of Orleans, who had openly (öffentlich) declared (sicherklären) against this prince before he came to the throne (die Thronbesteigung). "When he offended me," said Louis XII., "I was not his king. By this (dadurch, daß ich es ward) I am become his father. I must forgive and defend (schützen) him."—They wished to persuade this prince (Jemanden überreden) to take vengeance on those who had annoyed him (Einem Verdruß machen) whilst (zur Zeit) he was only duke of Orleans. He answered: "The king of France does not revenge the injuries (wegen der Beleidigungen) offered (zufügen) to the duke of Orleans."

265.

A courtier (ein Herr vom Hof), being at a feast (das Gastmahl) with an archbishop (der Erzbischof) of low ex-

traction (von sehr niedriger Geburt), but who owed his elevation (die Würde) to his extraordinary talents (das seltene Talent, pl. =e), was provoked at the freedom (fühlte sich durch die Freimüthigkeit beleidigt) with which the prelate (der Prälat) contradicted his opinions (eine Meinung bestreiten\*).—"You would not do amiss," said the courtier, "to remember from what you sprang (die Herkunft)." "I remember it perfectly," returned (versetzen) the archbishop, "and am moreover aware, that had I entertained sentiments like those you have just shown (daß bei solchen Gesinnungen, wie Sie eben äußern), I should have tended (hüten) swine all my life."

266.

A stammerer (der Stammer, Stotterer) inquired (sich erkundigen) on entering a town (bei seiner Ankunft in einer Stadt) about some place he wished to go to. The citizen whom he asked, happening also to stammer (welcher gleichfalls stotterte), answered him to the best of his ability (so gut als möglich), but stammering still (stotterte aber beständig). The stranger, convinced (in der Meinung) that the other meant to insult (verspotten) him, began to abuse him (sich in Scheltworte über Jemanden ergießen\*). The other, imagining on his side (von seiner Seite), that the stranger only stuttered to imitate him (Einem nachäffen), returned his abuse with usury (erwiderte sie ihm reichlich). They would probably not have been satisfied with words (bei den Schimpfreden stehen bleiben\*), had not some one of the neighbourhood (ein Mann aus der Nachbarschaft), hearing the object of their quarrel (sich um die Ursache eines Zankes erkundigen), reconciled (ausöhnen) them by showing the stranger (Einem begreiflich machen), that what he had taken (halten\*) for an insult (für Beschimpfung), was a natural defect (der Naturfehler). They could not help (sie konnten nicht umhin) laughing at this singular coincidence (das sonderbare Zusammentreffen).

## AN EASY RECKONING (die schnell bezahlte Rechnung).

On (bei) his arrival in a large town, a poor gentleman (der Edelmann) learnt (vernehmen\*) that an innkeeper had been fined ten crowns (fürzlich zu einer Strafe von zehn Thalern verurtheilt worden sey) for (weil) having given a gentleman a box on the ear. He accordingly resolved (den Entschluß fassen) to go and lodge (einkehren) at this same innkeeper's, and remained there three or four days, so that the bill amounted to (sich belaufen\* auf, *with Accusative*) six crowns. When he was going to take his departure (sich verabschieden wollen), the landlord (der Wirth) observed to him (Jemanden erinnern) that he had not yet paid his bill (daß er seine Zechе noch schuldig sey) and requested him to do so (er möchte sie bezahlen). "I am most willing to do so (ich wollte es gern thun)," said the gentleman, "but I have not sixpence (keinen Heller haben). I know of only one way of satisfying (befriedigen) you: give me a box on the ear, and return me what is over (und geben Sie mir das Uebrige heraus); for I only owe six crowns, and a box on the ear is worth (kosten) ten."

One day, as Charles XII. of Sweden was walking near (in der Nähe von) Leipsic, a countryman threw himself at his feet (sich Einem zu Füßen werfen\*), asking him to do him justice on a grenadier (Jemanden um Gerechtigkeit gegen einen Grenadier ansehn) who had carried off (wegnehmen\*) the dinner of his family. The king sent for (vor sich kommen lassen\*) the soldier, and said to him, with severity (mit ernster Miene): "Is it true that you stole this man's dinner?" "Sire (allergnädigster König)," said the soldier, "I have not done him so much harm as your majesty (Eure Majestät) did his master: you took (entreißen)\* a kingdom (das Königreich) from him, and I only took a turkey (der wälsche Hahn) from this fellow (der Schlingel)." The king gave the countryman ten ducats (der Ducaten), and forgave the soldier on consideration of the fearlessness (wegen der Furchtlosigkeit) of

his reply (die Antwort), saying to him: "Remember (Du magst bedenken), my friend, that if I took a kingdom from king Augustus, I kept (behalten\*) none of it for myself."

A stranger being seated next to Lord N. (neben Einem sitzen\*) at the play, saw two ladies come into a box. "Can you tell me," said he, turning to Lord N. (sich an Jemanden wenden), "who that hideous woman (Affengesicht) is?" "It is my wife," coolly (kaltblütig) answered the nobleman. „No, sir (gnädiger Herr)," continued (fortfahren\*) the stranger in confusion (ganz bestürzt), "I am not speaking of the elderly (ältlich) lady, I mean that young owl (die Nachteule)" (pointing to a young lady with her). "That is my daughter," quietly (ganz gelassen) answered Lord N.

269.

A man, who piqued himself (sich Etwas auf Etwas einbilden) on his economy (sparsam zu seyn), heard that one of his neighbours was a better manager (es noch mehr wäre) than himself. Being anxious to ascertain the fact (sich davon überzeugen), he called on him one evening. "Neighbour," said he, as he entered, "I have heard that no one is a better manager than you; and as I pique myself (stolz auf Etwas seyn oder sich rühmen) on being a tolerable one myself, I wish to talk over (sich unterhalten\*) with you a few of the means you employ (to save your money)."—"If such be the motive (die Veranlassung oder der Beweggrund) of your visit," answered the neighbour, "pray (belieben), sit down, and we will talk on the subject:"—at the same time he extinguished (auslöschen) the lamp (die Lampe) and said: "We do not want any light (das Licht) to talk; we shall be less disturbed (zerstreut) in the dark."—"Ah, this lesson (die Lehre) alone is sufficient (genug seyn\*)," exclaimed the other, "I perceive I am but a novice yet compared with you (neben Ihnen nur ein Schüler)," and he retreated (weggehen\*) groping (tappen) his way (to the door). This last (der Letztere) was so economical,

that to save (sparen) ink he never dotted his i's (feinen Punkt über das i setzen) when he wrote.

A young nobleman (ein junger Herr), joking (scherzen) one day with his valet, called him a good-for-nothing fellow (der schlechte Diener oder Taugenichts). The man (dieser) answered: "No wonder (das ist ganz natürlich), Sir, (for) you know the proverb (das Sprichwort) (says): Like master like man (wie der Herr, so der Diener)."

270.

A young man, named (Namenſ) Pelsoni, had the misfortune to lose his father and mother when he was only ten years old. As his uncle always treated him very ill (mißhandelt werden von), he ran away (aus dem Hause entlaufen\*) He had traversed (durchreisen) many countries when he reached the court (an dem Hofe ankommen\*) of a certain prince whom he had the good fortune to please, and who took him into his service. He promised in time to promote him (ihn mit der Zeit — zu befördern oder gelangen zu lassen) to honour in his court (zu Ehrenstellen an seinem Hofe), if he did his duty (seine Schuldigkeit thun\* oder beobachten), and to hang (hängen lassen) him if he failed in it (sie nicht thun\* oder beobachten). At the end of some time (nach einiger Zeit), however, having had the misfortune to displease (mißfallen\*) the princess, he was turned out of the palace (aus dem Palaste jagen).

He resolved (beschließen\*) in this extremity (die äußerste Noth) to seek out a friend of his father's (zu Einem gehen oder Jemanden auffuchen) who lived in a small town fifty leagues off (von da). But, alas (leider)! on arriving there, he learnt that he was dead (gestorben sey). Without friends or money Pelsoni knew not what to do (wozu er sich entschließen sollte), when to complete his disasters (zum größten Unglücke) he fell ill (krank werden\*). His situation (der Zustand, die Lage) was distressing (fritisch werden\*). He could neither send for (kommen lassen) a doctor nor an apothecary (der Apotheker); nevertheless (dennoch oder nichts desto weniger) he recovered (genesen\*) at the end (nach Verlauf) of a few days.

## CONTINUATION (die Fortsetzung) OF THE LIFE (die Lebensbeschreibung) OF PELONI.

He started for (reisen nach) America where lived a rich cousin of his, (who was) a merchant. Hardly had the vessel reached the open sea (kaum war er auf der offenen See) when a furious tempest assailed it (so erhob sich ein entsetzlicher Sturm). A thunderbolt (der Donner) fell on the vessel (in das Schiff schlagen\*) and set it on fire (in Flammen setzen). The crew (das Schiffsvolk) threw themselves (springen\*) into the sea in the hopes of escaping by swimming (sich mit Schwimmen retten). Peloni did the same (es ebenso machen), and happily reached (glücklich erreichen) the shore, resolving (sich entschlossen) to return to his native town (die Vaterstadt). But, alas! it no longer existed (nicht mehr seyn\*); an earthquake (das Erdbeben) had swallowed it up (verschlingen\*). He knew not what to do (was er thun sollte). In a state of despair (ganz trostlos) he enlisted as a soldier (sich anwerben lassen\* oder Soldat werden\*). He was conducted to the regiment. He was made to turn about right and left (man ließ ihn sich rechts und links wenden), to take aim (anschlagen), to fire (schießen), and (moreover) received (man gibt ihm) thirty strokes of the cane (die Stockschläge).—Disgusted with (überdrüssig) military exercises (die militärische Uebung), he deserted (desertiren). He had not gone above two leagues when four Bulgarian dragoons (der bulgarische Dragoner) overtook him (einholen), tied his hands behind his back (ihn die Hände auf den Rücken binden\*) and led him to a dungeon (das finstere Gefängniß). He was asked which he should prefer (lieber haben\*), being whipped (Spießruthen laufen\*) thirty-six times, by (durch) the whole regiment, or to receive at once (auf einmal) twelve balls (die bleierne Kugel) in his head. He would willingly have dispensed with both (er wollte keins von beiden); but finding he must make a choice (er mußte eine Wahl treffen), he determined (sich entschließen\*) to undergo thirty-six lashes (Spießruthen laufen\*).

## CONTINUATION.

The regiment contained (aus Etwas bestehen\*) two thousand men. (*Obs. D. Lesson LXVII*) He underwent (aushalten\*) parading twice along the files (zwei Gänge), and at the third (als man zum dritten schreiten wollte), Peloni, perfectly exhausted (konnte Peloni nicht mehr fort, und) requested as a favour (als Gnade begehren) that he should be shot at (Einem eine Kugel vor den Kopf schießen\*). His request was granted (diese Gnade erhalten\*). His eyes were bandaged (zubinden\*) and he knelt down (niederknien lassen\*).—The prince happening to pass (vorbeikommen\*) at this instant, pardoned him (Jemanden begnadigen oder Einem Gnade bewilligen). A few days after (darauf) a battle was fought (eine Schlacht liefern). The two armies (die Armee oder das Heer, pl. =e) were in presence (einander gegenüber stehen\*), the drums were beating (wirbelten die Trommeln), the trumpet blowing (man blies die Trompete), and the cannon (die Kanone) thundering (donnern) and overturning (zu Boden stürzen oder niederreißen\*) several thousand men on each side. Then (hierauf) the musketry and bayonets (das Musquetenfeuer und das Bayonett) made great ravages (große Verwüstungen anrichten). Peloni walked (schreiten\*) over (über with Accusative) heaps (der Haufen) of the (von) dead (der Todte) and dying (der Sterbende). Those who were half burned (der Halbverbrannte) entreated (schreien\*) to be killed entirely (man sollte sie vollends tödten). Brains were strewn (zerstreut liegen\*) on the ground (die Erde) near mutilated arms and legs (neben abgehauenen Armen und Beinen). The French were victorious (den Sieg erhalten\*), Peloni was made prisoner and (und Peloni wurde als Gefangener) carried (führen) to France where he married a rich widow (die Wittwe).

## ANSWER. (See p. 66.)

I am sorry (es thut mir sehr leid), my dear L., that I cannot have the pleasure (daß ich das Vergnügen nicht

genießen kann) to spend this afternoon (den Nachmittag zubringen\*) with you. Mrs. B. has sent us word (sagen lassen\*) that she intends coming to see (besuchen) us to-day with two of her nieces (mit zwei von ihren Nichten), who are anxious (welche—wünschen) to become acquainted with me (meine Bekanntschaft machen). But I fear I shall not appear very agreeable (Einem ein unfreundliches Gesicht machen), as I shall feel inclined to punish them for (um sie dafür zu bezahlen, daß) depriving me of the pleasure I had anticipated (welches ich—würde gehabt haben) in your company and that of your friends. Pray amuse yourself to your heart's content (machen Sie sich recht lustig); but do not dance too much, as (denn) that is bad for one (zu viel ist ungesund). Yours affectionately (Ihre Freundin)

EMILY.

274.

The bearer of this (der Ueberbringer dieses) is Mr. Rosenthal, whom (dessen) I have so often mentioned (Erwähnung thun\*) to you in my letters. I recommend him to your friendship. After all I have told you of him (da ich Ihnen so viel Gutes von ihm gesagt habe) you will not wonder at my request (Sie werden nicht zweifeln, daß er derselben würdig ist). Pray endeavour (Suchen Sie gefälligst) to make his stay (der Aufenthalt) in your town as agreeable as possible (als es Ihnen möglich ist). You will be amply repaid for any trouble you may take on his account (es wird Sie nicht gereuen), by his delightful conversation (denn Sie werden so viel Vergnügen an seinem Umgange finden), which I feel almost disposed to envy you (daß ich Sie deswegen beneiden würde, wenn); I remain (ich nicht in der That wäre Ihr), &c.

275.

My dear Sir (Hochgeehrter Herr, Werthester Freund), In my present difficulty (in der Noth, worin ich mich gegenwärtig befinde) I know not to whom to apply, unless (sich an Niemanden anders zu wenden wissen\*) to my best friend, and you know you are that man (der sind Sie). I am in great want of (sehr nothwendig brauchen) fifty

ducats (der Ducaten). Might I beg you (dürfte ich Sie wohl bitten) to lend me them? I will most gratefully (mit vielem Dank) return (wieder zustellen) them as soon as I shall have received a check (meinen Wechsel) which I daily (von Tag zu Tag) expect. In hope of receiving a favourable (in Erwartung einer geneigten) answer, I am, dear sir, yours faithfully (habe ich die Ehre, mit hochachtungsvoller Ergebenheit zu seyn Ihr), &c.

#### ANSWER.

Your friendship (die Freundschaft, womit Sie mich beehren) has always appeared so valuable to me (ist mir jederzeit unendlich schätzbar gewesen) that I have long since wished (und ich habe schon lange gewünscht) to prove by my deeds how highly I prize it (Sie durch die That davon überzeugen zu können). I therefore feel great pleasure (mit vielem Vergnügen) in enclosing (überschicke ich Ihnen also hierbei) the fifty ducats you ask; (adding that) there are more at your service (es stehen noch mehr zu Diensten), if you want them. You have only to say a word (Sie dürfen nur befehlen); for you know how sincerely I am (wie sehr ich bin) yours (Ihr aufrichtiger Freund, &c.

276.

#### ANOTHER ANSWER.

Sir, You will excuse (mir verzeihen) my not sending you (daß ich Ihnen—nicht schicke) the fifty ducats that you have asked me for. I might perhaps have done it had you returned me the money that I lent you last winter, and of which I have so often reminded you (zurückfordern). I must tell you that I am no longer to be duped by your fair promises, and your assurances of friendship (mich durch Ihre schönen Versprechungen und Freundschaftsversicherungen länger herumführen zu lassen). I am in want of my money, and you must be so good (und Sie werden so gütig seyn) to satisfy (befriedigen) me; else (wo nicht) I shall apply (sich deshalb wenden) to your father, who will not be a little surprised at what I shall write of your misconduct (die schlechte Aufführung).

My cousin has just told me that you have sold the German dictionary (das Wörterbuch) I lent you. Is this possible (sollte es möglich sein)! If you wish me to abstain from doing something (daß ich Etwas thue) exceedingly disagreeable to you (das Ihnen gar kein Vergnügen machen wird); you will send me this very day (heute noch) my (own) dictionary, or one (ein anderes) that is as good as mine. It will depend on you (es hängt von Ihnen ab) whether I shall longer (noch) style myself (nennen soll) your friend — Zornig.

## HUNDRED AND TENTH LESSON. — Hundert und zehnte Section.

### 6. THE ADVERB, das Umstands- oder Nebenwort.

Adverbs are invariable, except that some admit the degrees of comparison, as in English. (See Lesson XLI.) An adverb is generally added to a verb, an adjective, or another adverb, to modify and determine its signification. Ex.

1. Sie sprechen langsam, you speak *slowly*.
2. Sie ist sehr liebenswürdig, she is *very* amiable.
3. Sie sprechen sehr langsam, you speak *very slowly*.

The German adverbs are *primitive* or *derivative*, *simple* or *compounded*.

#### I. *Derivative Adverbs* are:

1. All adjectives employed adverbially. Ex.

<i>Adverbs.</i>	<i>Adjectives.</i>
Der Schüler ist fleißig, the scholar is assiduous;	Der fleißige Schüler, the assiduous scholar.
Die Wahrheit ist heilsam, truth is salutary;	Die heilsame Wahrheit, beneficial truth.
Das Thier ist nützlich, the animal is useful.	Das nützliche Thier, the useful animal.

*Obs. A.* Thus every German adjective may be employed adverbially.

2. Those formed from another word to which the letter *s* is added. Ex.

Rechts, to the right hand,	from recht, right.
Links, to the left hand,	„ link, left.
Theils, partly,	„ der Theil, the part.

*Obs. B.* When the primitive word ends in *t* or *ft*, *ens* must be added in order to form an adverb from it. Ex.

Erstens firstly, in the first place,	from der Erste, the first.
Zweitens, secondly,	„ der Zweite, the second.
Letstens, lastly, lately,	„ der Letzte, the last.
Benigstens, at least,	„ das Benigste, the least.

(See Note 4. Lesson XLI.)

*Obs. C.* All substantives, indicating *time*, may be used adverbially in the genitive, with or without the article. Ex.

Des Morgens or Morgens, in the morning.

Des Abends or Abends, in the evening.

Des Mittags or Mittags, at noon.

Des Nachts or Nachts, in the night. (See Note 6, p. 114.)

Des Mittwochs or Mittwochs, on Wednesday.

3. Those preceded by the negative particle *un*, as:

Unmöglich, impossible,	from möglich, possible.
Unlängst, not long ago.	„ längst, long ago.

## II. Compound Adverbs are formed:

1. From two adverbs, as:

Dahin, thither; from da, there, and hin, forth, forward, an adverb expressing motion or direction from the person who speaks towards another place. (Lessons XXIX and LII.)

Hierher, hither; from hier, here, and her, to this place, an adverb expressing motion towards the person who speaks. (Lesson LII.)

Dorthin, to that place; from dort, there, yonder, and hin, forth. (Lesson LII.)

2. From an adverb and a substantive, as:

Himmelwärts, towards heaven; from der Himmel, heaven, and wärts, towards, an adverb expressing direction.

Niemals, never; from nie, never, and Mal, genitive of the substantive Mal, time.

3. From an adverb and a pronoun, as:

Ehedessen, formerly; from ehe, before, and dessen, genitive of the demonstrative pronoun das.

Hier selbst, here, in this place; from hier, here, and selbst, self.

4. From an adverb and a preposition, as:

Darin, in it, therein; from da, there, and in, in.

Vorgestern, the day before yesterday; from vor, before, and gestern, yesterday.

Uebermorgen, the day after to-morrow; from über, over, above, and morgen, to-morrow.

5. From two substantives, as:

Scherzweise, in jest, by way of jest; from der Scherz, the jest, and die Weise, the manner.

Stufenweise, by steps, by degrees, gradually; from die Stufe, the step, the degree, and die Weise, the manner.

6. From a substantive and an adjective, viz.

Meistentheils, for the most part; from meist, most, and Theils, genitive of the word der Theil, the part.

Größtentheils, for the greatest part; from größt, superlative of groß, great, and the genitive of der Theil.

7. From a substantive and a pronoun, viz.

Diesseits, this side; from dies, this, and die Seite, the side.

Jenseits, that side; from jener, that, and die Seite.

Allerdings, indeed, certainly; from all, all, and das Ding, the thing.

Deßfalls, for this reason, on that account; from deß, genitive of the demonstrative pronoun das, and Falls, genitive of the word der Fall, the case.

8. From a substantive and a preposition, viz.

Ueberhaupt, in general; from über, over, above, and das Haupt, the head, the chief.

Nachmittags, in the afternoon; from nach, after, and the genitive of der Mittag, mid-day, noon.

9. From a pronoun and a preposition, viz.

Nachdem, after that; from nach, after, and dem, dative of das, that.

Seitdem, since that time, since then; from seit, since, and dem, dative of das, that.

Unterdessen, in the mean time, meanwhile; from unter, under, and dessen, genitive of das, that.

10. From two prepositions, viz.

Durchaus, absolutely; from durch, through, and aus, out.

Inzwischen, in the meanwhile; from in, in, and zwischen, between.

There are several kinds of adverbs, viz

### 1. ADVERBS OF TIME, Nebenwörter der Zeit.

They are used to answer the questions wann? when? seit wann? since when? wie bald? how soon? wie lange? how long? bis wann? till what time? wie oft? how often? zu welcher Zeit? at what time?

Abends, des Abends, in the evening.	Augenblicklich, instantly.
Alle Tage, every day.	Bald, soon.
Allezeit, jederzeit, immer, always, at all times.	Bald darauf, soon after.
Als, when.	Bei hellem Tag, at broad daylight.
Alsdann, then.	Bei Zeiten, zeitig, frühzeitig, betimes, in good time, soon.
Auf einmal, at once.	Beständig, stets, continually.
Auf immer, for ever.	Bis auf diesen Tag, till this day.
Auf's längste, längstens, at the longest, at the furthest.	Bis her, hitherto, till then.
	Bis hierher, hitherto.

- Bis jetzt, till now.  
 Bisweilen, zuweilen, sometimes.  
 Da, damals, then, at that time.  
 Dann, alsdann, then.  
 Dann und wann, von Zeit zu Zeit, now and then.  
 Des Morgens, Morgens, in the morning.  
 Des Nachts, bei Nacht, at night.  
 Des Tags, bei Tage, in the day-time.  
 Eben, soeben, just, just now.  
 Eben recht, just in time.  
 Ehedem, vormals, ehemals, formerly.  
 Ehestens, auf's eheste, as soon as possible, at the soonest.  
 Einmal, einst, eines Tages, once, one time, one day.  
 Einzwischen, in the mean while.  
 Erst, only, but, not before, not till.  
 Erst, eben, only now, just now, not before now.  
 Ewig, ever, eternally.  
 Früh, early, in the morning, soon.  
 Für jetzt, for the present.  
 Gegenwärtig, presently.  
 Geschwind, quickly.  
 Gestern, yesterday.  
 Gestern Abend, last night.  
 Gleich, immediately.  
 Hernach, nachher, afterwards.  
 Heute, to-day.  
 Heute zu Tage, now-a-days, in this age.  
 Heute über acht Tage, this day sen'night (to come); heute vor acht Tagen, this day sen'night (ago).  
 Hinfort, henceforth.  
 Immer, always.  
 Indessen, unterdessen, in the mean time.  
 In Eile, eilends, hastily, in haste.  
 In Kurzem, in a short time, shortly.  
 In's Künftige, künftighin, in der Zukunft, in future.  
 Inzwischen, in der Zwischenzeit, in the mean while.  
 Jährlich, annually, every year.  
 Je, jemals, ever.  
 Jedesmal, every time.  
 Je eher, je lieber, the sooner, the more agreeable.  
 Jetzt, now, at present.  
 Kurz hernach, a short time after.  
 Künftig, künftighin, in's Künftige, in der Zukunft, in future.  
 Kürzlich, vor Kurzem, lately, not long ago.  
 Lange, a long while.  
 Längst, vorlängst, long ago.  
 Längstens, auf's Längste, at the longest.  
 Letztes, leztthin, lately, not long ago.  
 Manchmal, bisweilen, zuweilen, sometimes.  
 Mittag, zu Mittag, at noon.  
 Monatlich, monthly.  
 Morgen, to-morrow.  
 Morgen früh, to-morrow morning.  
 Nach dem Abendessen, after supper.  
 Nachher, hernach, afterwards.  
 Nachmittags, in the afternoon.  
 Nächstens, next time, at the next opportunity.  
 Neulich, lately, recently.  
 Nie, niemals, never.  
 Noch, still, yet, as yet.  
 Nun, nunmehr, now, by this time.  
 Oft, oftmals, öfters, often.  
 Ohne Aufschub, without delay.  
 Plötzlich, suddenly, all of a sudden.  
 Recht, to the purpose, opportunely; eben recht, in the very nick of time.  
 Schon, already.  
 Schon lange, long ago, long since.  
 Seitdem, since that time, since then.  
 Seit Kurzem, not long ago.  
 Selten, seldom, rarely.

Sobald, immediately, presently;	Vor Alters, of old, anciently.
sobald als, as soon as.	Vordem, vor diesem, heretofore,
Sobald als möglich, as soon as	formerly.
possible.	Vorgestern, the day before yester-
Sogleich, immediately, directly.	day.
Sonst, ehedessen, formerly.	Vorher, zuvor, before previously.
Spät, late.	Vor Kurzem, lately, not long ago.
Stets, beständig, continually, al-	Vormals, ehemals, sonst, formerly.
ways.	Vormittags, in the forenoon.
Täglich, daily, every day.	Vor Zeiten, in former times, in
Uebermorgen, the day after to-	times of yore.
morrow.	Wann? when?
Um den andern Tag, einen Tag	Wöchentlich, weekly, every week.
um den andern, every other day.	Zu gelegener Zeit, seasonably, to
Um Mitternacht, at midnight.	the purpose, in time.
Unaufhörlich, immerfort, incen-	Zur bestimmten Zeit, at the time
santly, continually.	appointed, very à-propos.
Ungefähr, about, nearly.	Zu rechter Zeit, } in time, oppor-
Unlängst, not long ago.	Zur rechten Zeit, } tunely, sea-
Unverhofft, unexpectedly, un-	sonably.
awares.	Zur Unzeit, } unseasona-
Unversehens, inopinately.	Zu unrechter Zeit, } bly, at an in-
Von nun an, von jetzt an, from	Zur unrechten Zeit, } convenient
this time forth, henceforth.	time.
Von einem Tage zum andern, from	Zusehends, visibly.
one day to another.	Zwischen heute und morgen, be-
Von Tag zu Tag, from day to day.	tween to-day and to-morrow.
Von ungefähr, by chance.	Zwischen hier und Ostern, between
Von Zeit zu Zeit, from time to	this and Easter.
time.	

## 2. ADVERBS OF PLACE, Nebentwörter des Ortes.

They are used to answer the questions wo? where (expressing rest)? wohin? whither (expressing motion)? woher? whence? where from? wodurch? through what place? wie weit? how far?

Allda, daselbst, there, in that place.	Außen, on the outside, without,
Allenthalben, allerwärts, aller-	abroad.
wegen, überall, every where.	Außerhalb, outwardly, without
Anderwärts, anderwärts, elsewhere,	doors.
somewhere else.	Außwendig, outwardly.
Anderwoher, from another place,	Bei Seite, auf der Seite, aside,
from elsewhere.	apart.
Anderwohin, to another place.	Bei Tische, at table.
Auf der Seite, bei Seite, aside,	Bis dahin, bis daher, so weit, to
apart.	that place, thither, so far.

- Bis hierher, to this place, hither.  
 Da, there (not very distant. See the Adverbs of Motion, *Obs.* and the Demonstrative Adverbs).  
 Da außen, draußen, without, out of doors.  
 Daher, thence, from thence.  
 Dahin, thither, to the place.  
 Da innen, drinnen, darinnen, therein, in it, within.  
 Da ist er (es), there he (it) is.  
 Da ist (steht) sie, there she is.  
 Da sind wir, here we are.  
 Da oben, dort oben, droben, there above.  
 Da unten, drunten, there below.  
 Diesseits, hüben, this side.  
 Dort, dorten, there, yonder (at a greater distance than da).  
 Dorthier, from that place, from yonder.  
 Dorthin, to that place, thither.  
 Drüben, jenseits, that side.  
 Fern, weit, far, remote, distant.  
 Gegenüber, opposite.  
 Heim, daheim, home, at home  
 Hier, hither. (See the Adverbs of Motion.)  
 Hier, here. (See the Demonstrative Adverbs.)  
 Hier außen, here without.  
 Hierher (more commonly hieher), hither, to this place.  
 Hierhin, to this place, in this direction.  
 Hier in der Nähe, near this place.  
 Hier innen, here within.  
 Hiernächst, next to this.  
 Hier und da or hier und dort, here and there.  
 Hier unten, below here, here below.  
 Hin, thither. (See the Adverbs of Motion hereafter.)  
 Hinten, behind.
- Hintenan, hintenher, backwards, behind others.  
 Hinter einander, one after another.  
 Hin und her, backwards and forwards, to and fro.  
 Hoch, high.  
 Hüben (diesseits), this side.  
 Im Grunde, really.  
 Innen, within.  
 Innerhalb, inwardly.  
 Inwendig, within, on the inside.  
 In Sicherheit, sheltered.  
 Irgendwo, somewhere.  
 Jenseits (drüben), that side.  
 Links, to the left hand.  
 Nach Hause, (direction) home.  
 Nahe, near.  
 Nirgend, nirgendß, nirgendwo, nowhere.  
 Oben, above.  
 Obenan, at the top.  
 Rechts, to the right hand.  
 Rückwärts, rücklings, backwards, from behind.  
 Seitwärts, sidwards.  
 Seyd Ihr schon hier? are you here already?  
 Siehe da! da ist, behold! see!  
 Siehe hier! hier ist, loo here! lo!  
 So weit, so far.  
 Ueberall, everywhere.  
 Ueberdieß, überdem, außerdem, besides.  
 Unten, below.  
 Untenan, at the lowest place.  
 Unterwegs, by the way, on the way.  
 Von außen, from without.  
 Von der andern Seite, from the other side.  
 Von dieser Seite, this side.  
 Von einer Seite, on one side.  
 Von hier, from here, hence.  
 Von hier an, to begin by this place.  
 Von vorn, from the front.  
 Von weitem, von fern, from afar.  
 Vorbei, vorüber, by, before.  
 Vorn, in front.

Vorwärts, forwards, on.	Zugegen, present.
Weit, fern, far.	Zu Hause (expressing rest), at home.
Wo? where? (See <i>Obs. C. Lesson LIV.</i> )	Zur linken Hand, on the left hand.
Woher (wo—her)? whence, from where?	Zur rechten Hand, on the right hand.
Wohin (wo—hin)? whither, where-to?	Zur Seite, by the side of, near.

### 3. ADVERBS OF MOTION, Nebenwörter der Bewegung.

The adverbs *her* and *hin* may accompany all verbs expressing motion or direction from one place to another, as: *gehen*, to go; *kommen*, to come; *schicken*, to send, &c. By means of certain prepositions compound adverbs are formed from them, when to the idea of place we wish to add that of motion towards, and motion from the person who speaks (see Lesson LII.) as:

PREPOSITIONS.	ADVERBS of motion to a place.	ADVERBS of motion from a place.
Ab, off, from, down;	herab,	hinab, down.
An, to, near, at;	heran,	hinan, near to.
Auf, upon, up;	herauf,	hinauf, up, upwards.
Aus, out ( <i>ex</i> in Latin);	heraus,	hinaus, out.
Bei, by, at, near;	herbei,	— hither.
Ein (for in), in;	herein,	hinein, into.
Nach, after, to;	hernach,	— after.
Ueber, over, above;	herüber,	hinüber, over, across.
Um, around;	herum,	— round, about.
Unter, under, beneath;	herunter,	hinunter, down.
Vor, before;	hervor,	— forth.
Zu, to ( <i>ad</i> in Latin);	herzu,	hinzu, to, towards.

*Obs.* *Her* and *hin* are joined to other adverbs of place by which they are immediately preceded, as:

Adverbs of rest.	Adverbs of motion to a place.	Adverbs of motion from a place.
Da, there;	daher, thence;	dahin, thither.
Dort, yonder;	dorther, from yonder;	dorthin, to that place.
Hier, here;	hierher, hither;	hierhin, to this place, in this direction.
Oben, above;	obenher, from above;	obenhin, in the above direction.
Unten, below;	untenher, from below;	untenhin, in the direction below.
Wo, where;	woher, whence, where-from;	wohin, whither, where-to.

#### 4. DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERBS, *zeitigende Nebenwörter.*

From *hier*, here, and *da*, there, compound adverbs are formed by means of certain prepositions governing the dative or accusative. In these adverbs *hier* and *da* stand instead of the neuter gender, dative and accusative of the demonstrative pronoun: *dieser*, *diese*, *dieses* (*der*, *die*, *das*), which is never joined to a preposition (see *Rule*, Lesson LXVI.), as:

PREPOSITIONS.	ADVERBS	ADVERBS
	<i>compounded from hier and a preposition.</i>	<i>compounded from da and a preposition.</i>
An, to, near, at;	<i>hieran</i> , on this, at this, hereon;	<i>daran</i> , thereon <sup>1</sup> on it, by that.
Auf, up, upon;	<i>hierauf</i> , upon this, hereupon;	<i>darauf</i> , upon it, thereupon, after that.
Aus, out;	<i>hieraus</i> , from this, hence, hereby;	<i>daraus</i> , thence, from that, whereout.
Bei, by, at, near;	<i>hierbei</i> , at this, in this, herein;	<i>dabei</i> , by that, thereby, hereby.
Durch, through, by;	<i>hierdurch</i> , by this, hereby, through here;	<i>dadurch</i> , thereby, by that, through that.
Für, for;	<i>hierfür</i> , for this, for it;	<i>dafür</i> , for that, for it, instead of it.
Gegen, towards, against;	<i>hiergegen</i> , against this;	<i>dagegen</i> , against that, in return, on the contrary.
In or ein, ( <i>in</i> Latin), in;	<i>hierin</i> , <i>hierein</i> , herein, in this;	<i>darin</i> , <i>darein</i> , therein, in that, within.
Mit, with;	<i>hiermit</i> , herewith, with this;	<i>damit</i> , therewith, with that, by it.
Nach, after, to;	<i>hiernach</i> , after this, hereafter;	<i>darnach</i> , after that, by that, for it, according to.
Ueber, over, upon;	<i>hierüber</i> , over here, on this account;	<i>darüber</i> , over that, above it, on that account.
Um, around, for.	<i>hierum</i> , about this, concerning this;	<i>darum</i> , about that, concerning that, therefore.
Unter, under, amongst;	<i>hierunter</i> , under this, among these things;	<i>darunter</i> , under that, in that matter, among them.

<sup>1</sup> Here it may be noticed that when the preposition begins with a vowel, with *n* or *w*, the letter *r* is added to the adverb *da*, for the sake of euphony. (See *Obs. A.* Lesson XXXI.)

ADVERBS

ADVERBS

PREPOSITIONS.

*compounded from hier and a preposition.*      *compounded from da and a preposition.*

Von, of from ;	hiervon, hereof, from this ;	davon, thereof, from that, of that, off, away.
Vor, before ;	hiervor, herebefore, before this ;	davor, before that, before it, of it.
Wider, against ;	hierwider, hereagainst, against this ;	darwider, against that, against it.
Zu, to ( <i>ad</i> in Lat.) ;	hierzu, hereto, to this ;	dazu, to that, to it, besides, moreover.
Zwischen, between ;	hierzwischen, between this or these ;	dazwischen, between them, between it, among them.

5. INTERROGATIVE ADVERBS, fragende Nebenwörter.

Seit wann? since what time?	Wie lange ist es? how long is it?
Wann? when?	Wie oft? how often?
Warum, why? on what account?	Wie sehr? how much?
wherefore?	Wie so? how so?
Weshwegen? on what account?	Wie theuer? what is the price?
wherefore? for what reason?	Wieviel? how much?
Wie? how?	Wie vielmal? how often? how many times?
Wie alt? how old?	Wo? where?
Wie groß? of what size?	Woher? whence? from where?
Wie hoch? of what height?	Wohin? whither? where to?
Wie lange? how long?	

6. RELATIVE ADVERBS, beziehende Nebenwörter.

The adverb wo, where, like hier and da (see the Demonstrative Adverbs), forms compound adverbs with certain prepositions governing the dative or accusative. In these wo takes the place of the dative and accusative of the pronoun interrogative and relative: welcher, welche, welches, or was. (See *Obs. C. Lesson LIV.* and *Rule, Lesson XLVI.*) as:

PREPOSITIONS.

COMPOUND ADVERBS.

Nu, to, near, at ;	woran <sup>2</sup> , whereon, whereat, at what, by what.
Auf, up, upon ;	worauf, whereupon, on which, on what.
Aus, out ;	woraus, wherefrom, whence, from what, out of which.

<sup>2</sup> It will be useful to remember that when the prepositions begins with a vowel, or if the letter r is added to the adverb wo.

PREPOSITIONS.

COMPOUND ADVERBS.

Bei, at, near;	wobei, whereby, whereat, wherein, in which.
Durch, through, by;	wodurch, through what, whereby, by what.
Für, for;	wofür, for what, for which, wherefore.
Gegen, towards, against;	wogegen, against what, in return for which, for what.
In or ein, in;	worin, wherein, wherein, in which, in what.
Mit, with;	womit, therewith, with which.
Nach, after, to;	wornach, whereafter, after what.
Ueber, over, upon;	worüber, whereon, over what, upon which, at which.
Unter, under, a- mongst;	worunter, under which, among which.
Von, of, from;	wovon, whereof, of which, of whom, of what.
Vor, before;	wovor, before which, for which, from which.
Zu, to;	wozu, whereto, whereat, for which, to which, for what.

7. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY. Nebenwörter der Menge.

Außerst, extremely, exceedingly, greatly.	Höchst, at the most extremely.
Außerordentlich, extraordinarily.	Nicht viel, not much.
Desto, um so viel, the, <i>e. g.</i> je größer, desto besser, the greater, the better.	Noch, still, more.
Desto besser, so much the better.	Sehr, recht, very, much, exceed- ingly.
Eben so viel, just as much.	Sehr wenig, very little.
Ganz, gänzlich, entirely.	So viel, so much, as much.
Ganz und gar, quite, totally.	Ueberaus, ungemeyn, exceedingly, extremely, uncommonly.
Gar, very, quite.	Unendlich, infinitely.
Gar zu viel, quite too much.	Viel, much.
Genug, enough.	Wenig, little.
Genugsam, hinlänglich, sufficient- ly.	Zu, too.
Haufenweise, in heaps, in crowds.	Zusehends, visibly.
Hinlänglich, genugsam, sufficiently.	Zu sehr, zu stark, too much.
	Zu viel, too much.
	Zu wenig, too little.

8. ADVERBS OF QUALITY AND MANNER, Nebenwörter der Eigenschaft, Art und Weise.

Almost all adjectives used adverbially, *i. e.* when they form the predicate of a proposition (See Lesson XX) belong to these adverbs.

Anders, otherwise, in another manner.	Auf diese Art or Weise, in this manner.
--	--

Aus Scherz, jocosely, in jest, by way of jest.	Nach Wunsch, as one could wish.
Aus Verdruss, out of grief.	Öffentlich, publicly, in public.
Aus Versehen, inadvertently, by a blunder.	Recht, rightly.
Bislig, justly, equitably, reasonably.	Sachte, softly, slowly, gently.
Billigermassen, justly, fairly.	Schlimm, bad, badly.
Desto schlimmer, so much the worse.	Schlimm genug, bad enough.
Frei, freely, frankly.	So, so, thus, in that manner, in such a manner.
Freiwillig, voluntarily, of one's own accord.	So, so, so so, toleably.
Gemächlich, commodiously.	So hin, indifferently.
Gern, willingly.	Stark, strongly, stoutly.
Gewöhnlich, generally, commonly.	Uebel, schlecht, badly, ill. (See Note 3. Lesson XLVII.)
Gut, wohl, well. (See Note 2, Lesson XLVII.)	Um die Wette, in emulation of, with a contention who shall do best.
Heimlich, secretly.	Umsonst, vergeblich, in vain, for nought, to no purpose.
Heimlicher Weise, in secret.	Unbesonnener Weise, inconsiderately, thoughtlessly.
Immer ärger, worse and worse.	Un gern, unwillingly, with reluctance.
Immer besser, better and better.	Vergeblich, umsonst, in vain, to no purpose.
Immer schlechter, worse and worse.	Vorzüglich, particularly, preferably, chiefly.
Leicht, easily.	Wider Willen, reluctantly.
Leichtlich, lightly, easily.	Wohl, gut, well. (See Note 2, Lesson XLVII.)
Mit Fleiß, intentionally, purposely.	Ziemlich, tolerably.
Mit Gewalt, violently, with violence.	Zu Fuß, on foot.
Mit Recht, with right, rationally.	Zu Land, by land.
Mit Unrecht, wrongfully, unjustly.	Zu Pferd, on horseback.
Mit Vorsatz, intentionally, on purpose.	Zu Wasser, by sea.
Mit Widerwillen, reluctantly, with reluctance.	

### 9. ADVERBS OF COMPARISON, Nebenwörter der Vergleichung.

Also, thus, so.	Gleich, equally.
Am meisten, most.	Gleichfalls, ebenfalls, likewise, also.
Am wenigsten, the least.	Gleichsam, as it were, as if, even as if.
Auch, also.	Höchstens, at the most.
Beinahe, fast, almost, nearly.	Insonderheit, besonders, particularly.
Deßgleichen, likewise.	
Ebenso, as, just so, after the same manner.	
Fast, beinahe, nearly, almost.	

Je—je, je—desto, the—the. (See Lesson Cl.)	Nur, only, but.
Je mehr, the more.	Noch so viel, ever so much, so much more.
Je weniger, the less.	So, as.
Je mehr er arbeitet, desto (je) weniger hat er, the more he works, the less he has.	Sogar, selbst, even.
Je eher, je (desto) lieber (besser), the sooner, the better.	Sonst, else, otherwise.
Je weniger er arbeitet, je (desto) mehr hat er, the less he works, the more he has.	So viel, as much.
Raum, scarcely, hardly, no sooner.	So viel—wie, as much as.
Mehr, more.	Ueberdies, überdem, besides.
Mehr—als, more—than.	Uebrigens, for the rest, besides.
Meistens, meistentheils, mostly, for the most part.	Um so viel mehr, so much the more.
Merkslich, perceptibly, considerably.	Vielmehr, much more, rather.
	Vornehmlich, chiefly, especially.
	Weder mehr—noch weniger, neither more nor less.
	Weniger, less.
	Wenigstens, at least, at the least.
	Wie, how, as, like.

### 10. ADVERBS OF ORDER AND NUMBER, Nebenwörter der Ordnung und der Zahl.

Abermal, abermals, again, once more.	Halb, by halves, by half way.
Allerlei, allerhand, of all kinds, of all sorts.	In der Ordnung, in order.
Alles zusammen, the whole, all together.	In Unordnung, out of order.
Allmählig, by degrees, gradually.	Jenes Mal, that time.
Anfangs, anfänglich, in the beginning, at first.	Kein einziges Mal, not once.
Auf einmal, at once, at one bout.	Nach Allem, after all.
Das erste Mal, the first time.	Nach und nach, by degrees.
Das letzte Mal, the last time.	Noch einmal, nochmals, once more.
Dieses Mal (diesmal), this time.	Schritt vor Schritt, step by step.
Einmal, once, one time, one day, a little.	So oft, so often.
Ein einziges Mal, only once.	Theils, partly.
Einer nach dem Andern, one after the other.	Und so weiter (u. s. w.) and so forth, and so on, et cætera, &c.
Einzelu, singly, one by one.	Unter einander, confusedly, promiscuously, one with another, together.
Endlich, at last, finally.	Vielmal, oftmal, mehrma, or vielmals, oftmals, mehrmals, frequently, often.
Erstens, zuerst, firstly, in the first place.	Von Neuem, neuerdings, anew, afresh, again, once more.
Erstlich, at first.	Von Stadt zu Stadt, from town to town.
Ferner, weiter, further, furthermore.	Vor allen Dingen, above all, before all, first of all.

Wieder, again, afresh, back, in return.	Zweitens <sup>3</sup> , secondly.
Zweierlei, of two different sorts.	Zulezt, at last, lastly, finally.
Zweimal, twice.	Zum ersten Mal, for the first time.
Zweimal nach einander, twice repeated.	Zurück, back, backwards.

### 11. ADVERBS OF AFFIRMATION, NEGATION, AND DOUBT, Nebenvörter der Bejahung, der Verneinung und der Ungewißheit.

Allem Anschein nach, to all appearance, likely.	Ich glaube ja, I believe so.
Allerdings, certainly, indeed.	Ja doch, yea.
Auch, also.	Kaum, scarcely.
Auch nicht, neither. Ich auch nicht, nor I neither.	Keineswegß, by no means.
Bei meiner Treue, } faith, upon	Nein, no. Ich sage nein, I say no.
Bei meiner Seele, } my faith,	Nicht, not.
by my soul.	Nicht doch, nay, not surely.
Bei weitem, by far.	Nicht ganz, (nicht gänzlich), not quite.
Doch, dennoch, jedoch, yet, nevertheless, however.	Nicht mehr, no more, no longer.
Durchaus nicht, by no means, not on any account.	Ich schlafe nicht mehr, I do not sleep any longer.
Ferner, further, furthermore.	Nichts, nothing.
Folglich, consequently, therefore.	Nichts desto weniger, nevertheless.
Freilich, surely, to be sure, of course.	Nicht sogleich, not immediately.
Gar nicht, not at all.	Noch nicht, not yet.
Gar nichts, nothing at all.	Ohne Zweifel, freilich, allerdings, no doubt, indeed, certainly.
Ganz und gar nicht, by no means.	Schlechterdings, by all means, absolutely.
Gewiß, gewißlich, certainly, surely.	Schwerlich, hardly, scarcely.
Gleichwohl, nevertheless, notwithstanding.	Sicherlich, surely.
Gingegen, dagegen, on the contrary.	So wahr ich ein ehrliches Mädchen bin, as sure as I am an honest girl.
Im Gegentheil, on the contrary.	So wahr ich ein rechtschaffener Mensch bin, as sure as I am an honest man.
Im geringsten nicht, not in the least.	Unfehlbar, infallibly.
In der That, indeed.	Unstreitig, incontestably, indubitably.
Indessen, however.	Vermuthlich, probably.
In Wahrheit, in truth.	Vielleicht, perhaps.
Ja, yes.	

<sup>3</sup> And so on, as: drittens, thirdly; viertens, fourthly, &c. (See the Distributive Numbers, page 41.)

Wahrhaftig, wahrlich, positively, Weit gefehlt, far from. Es fehlt  
truly, in truth, certainly. nicht viel mehr, not far from it.  
Wahrscheinlich, likely, probably. Wirklich, actually, really.  
Weder—noch, neither—nor. Wo nicht, else, if not, unless.  
Weder Sie noch ich, neither you Zwar, indeed, to be sure, it is  
nor I. true.

*Obs. A.* In the following and similar expressions (which see in Lesson LXVII.) nicht is used in German when it is not used in English:

Es ist über ein Jahr, seitdem ich ihn nicht gesehen habe. It is above a year since I saw him.

*Obs. B.* Several adjectives, derived from adverbs, cannot be employed as adverbs. They are formed in three ways, viz.

1. By changing their termination for ig, as:

ADVERBS.	ADJECTIVES.	<i>Examples.</i>
Übermals, again;	abermälig, which takes place a second time;	der abermälige Angriff, the fresh assault.
Allerseits, on every side;	allseitig, which takes place on every side;	das allseitige Bestreben, the endeavour of all sides.
Bald, soon;	baldig, which will soon take place;	die baldige Antwort, the speedy answer.
Bisher, hitherto;	bisherig, what has hitherto taken place;	das bisherige Wetter, the weather we have hitherto had.
Da, there (not very distant);	daßig, being at that place;	der daßige Garten, the garden of that place.
Dort, yonder (at a greater distance);	dortig, being yonder, at that place;	das dortige Haus, that house there.
Diesseits, this side;	diesseitig, which is on this side;	der diesseitige Theil, the part situated on this side.
Gestern, yesterday;	gestrig, which took place yesterday;	das gestrige Wetter, the weather of yesterday.
Heute, to-day;	heutig, which takes place to-day;	Ihr heutiges Versprechen, your promise of to-day.

ADVERBS.	ADJECTIVES.	<i>Examples.</i>
Hier, here;	hiesig, of this place;	ein hiesiger Bürger, a citizen of this place.
Nachmals, subse- quently;	nachmalig, which is done afterwards, sub- sequent;	die nachmalige Krank- heit, the subsequent illness.
Nochmals, once more;	nochmalig, which hap- pens again;	das nochmalige Verspre- chen, the reiterated promise.
Oben, above.	obig, foregoing, above- said;	die obige Bemerkung, the foregoing obser- vation.
Vorher, before, pre- viously;	vorherig, which takes place before;	die vorherige Schuld, the previous debt.
Vormals, former- ly;	vormalig, former;	mein vormaliger Freund, my former friend.

2. By changing their termination for r, as:

ADVERBS.	ADJECTIVES.	<i>Examples.</i>
Hinten, behind;	hinter, which is behind;	das hintere Zimmer, the back-room.
Innen, within;	inner, interior, inner;	die innere Abtheilung, the interior division.
Oben, above;	ober, upper, superior;	der obere Theil des Hau- ses, the upper part of the house.
Unten, below;	unter, being below, in- ferior;	der untere Theil, the under part.

*Obs. C.* In the word morgen, to-morrow, the termina-  
tion is not changed for ig, but the letter d is joined in  
order to form an adjective, as: der morgende Tag, the  
day of to-morrow.

*Obs. D.* The following adverbs differ in their signi-  
fication and application from their corresponding words  
in English:

Auch, also is used,

1. As in English, as:

Ich habe auch an ihn geschrieben, I also wrote to him.

2. For *even*, *e. g.*

Auch der Weiseste kann irren, *even* the wisest man may err.

3. For *ever*, when preceded by *who*, *how*, or *what*, *e. g.*

Wer es auch seyn mag, whoever it may be.

Wäre er auch noch so reich und mächtig, however rich and powerful he may be.

Was er auch sage, whatever he may say.

4. In the following expression:

Und ich auch nicht, nor I neither.

---

Erst, first, is used:

1. As in English, *e. g.*

Ich will erst sprechen und dann lesen, I will *first* speak and then read.

2. For *not before*, *e. g.*

Er ist erst gestern angekommen, he did not arrive till (*i. e.* not before) yesterday.

Ich soll ihn erst morgen sehen, I am to see him only (or not till, not before) to-morrow.

3. For *no more than*, *e. g.*

Er hat erst ein Kapitel gelesen, he has read only (no more than) one chapter.

Erst einmal, erst zweimal, *no more than* once, *no more than* twice.

---

Schon, already, is used,

1. As in English, *e. g.*

Sie schläft schon, she is already asleep.

2. For *not later than*, *e. g.*

Er ist schon gestern angekommen, he arrived yesterday  
(i. e. not later than yesterday).

Ich soll es schon jetzt haben, I am to have it not later  
than now.

3. For *as much as*, e. g.

Schon dreimal hat er mich darum gebeten, he has asked  
me for it *as much as* three times.

4. As an expletive, and may then be explained by  
*yet, certainly*, e. g.

Er wird sich schon bessern, he will (yet) mend.

Er wird es Sie schon wissen lassen, he will (certainly)  
let you know it.

---

Noch, still, yet, is used:

1. As in English, e. g.

Sie schläft noch, she is still asleep.

2. For *not later than*, e. g.

Ich habe ihn noch gestern gesehen, it was but yesterday  
that I saw him (i. e. not later).

Er soll noch heute ankommen, he is to arrive this very  
day (i. e. not later).

Er soll noch diese Woche abreisen, he is to set out within  
this week (i. e. not later).

3. For *more*, e. g.

Wollen Sie noch eine Tasse Thee trinken? do you wish to  
drink another (one more) cup of tea?

Ich will es ihm noch einmal sagen, I will tell it him once  
more.

Noch dreimal, three times more.

4. For *however* it is used with *so*, e. g.

Wenn er auch noch so reich wäre, *however* rich he should be.

Wenn ich es auch noch so gut möchte, *however* well I  
should do it.

Gern, willingly, is quite peculiar to the German language, and is expressed in English by *to like, e, g.*

Ich habe ihn gern, I *like* him.

Trinken Sie gern Wein? do you like wine?

Sprechen Sie gern deutsch? do you like to speak German? (Lesson LVI.)

---

Ja, yes, is used:

1. As in English.

2. As an expletive, and then it often changes the German affirmative form into the interrogative form in English; *e. g.*

Ich habe es Ihnen ja gesagt, did I not tell it you?

Thun Sie es ja nicht, do not do it on any account.

Sagen Sie es ja Niemandem, do not tell it to any body.

Er hat Ihnen ja geantwortet, has he not answered you?

Ich kenne ihn, er ist ja mein Freund, I know him; is he not a friend of mine?

---

Wohl, well, differs from gut, good, inasmuch as the former applies to what pleases our feelings, and the latter to what is good in itself; *e. g.*

Wohlthätig, charitable.

Wohlwollen, to wish well.

Er befindet sich wohl, he is well.

Ich bin wohl, I am well.

Sie werden wohl daran thun, you will do well in doing it.

Er sieht gut aus, he has a good appearance.

Gut handeln, gut schreiben, gut sprechen und gut lesen, to act, to write, to speak, and to read well.

Er ist gut, aber sie ist besser, he is good, but she is better.

It is used as an expletive; *e. g.*  
 Haben Sie wohl je so Etwas gehört? Have you ever heard  
 such a thing?

For the Syntax of the Adverbs, and the place which they are to occupy in a sentence, see Lesson CII. and for their Degrees of Comparison, Lesson XLI.

---

## EXERCISES ON THE ADVERBS.

277.

When Columbus announced (ankündigen) the existence of a new hemisphere (eine neue Halbkugel), previous to the discovery of (ehe—entdeckt wurde) America, he was told (gegen Jemanden behaupten) that there could be none. When he had discovered it, people said (gab man vor) it had been known to others long before him (sie sey es schon lange gewesen); and those even who did not deny his discovery (Einem Etwas streitig machen), sought to diminish (herabsetzen) the merit of it by representing it as an easy enterprise (sie als leicht vorstellen). This celebrated navigator (der berühmte Seefahrer) was one day rudely told so by one of the company (war man so unhöflich, es ihm selbst zu sagen) at a large dinner party (als—sich einst mit einer zahlreichen Gesellschaft bei Tische befand). To confound (beschämen) his envious companions (seine Neider) he proposed to them (Einem aufgeben\*) to make an egg stand (ganz gerade—zu stellen) on a plate. None of them having succeeded (gelingen\*, verb. impers. gov. Dative), he knocked off (wegschlagen\*) the end (die Spitze) of the egg and made it stand (es hinstellen). The spectators (der Anwesende) said: "In that way (auf diese Art) it is easy enough (sehr leicht)." "Undoubtedly," he replied, "but none of you thought of it (auf Etwas verfallen\*)." 3

A German and a Frenchman were walking together when they met a pig (auf ein Schwein stoßen\*). As the animal approached (gerade auf Jemanden zu laufen\*) grunting continually (das wiederholte Grunzen), the German asked the Frenchman (veranlaßte den D., zum Fr. zu sagen):

“Do you not hear, how it says (wie es schreibt) *Oui, oui?* One would think (man sollte glauben) it spoke French?” —“You are right,” answered the Frenchman, “but he pronounces it as many Germans (do), that is, very ill.”

278.

A young man liked to sleep (in the morning), whilst his brother, who was assiduous (emstig) at his work, had no pleasure (sah nirgends Vergnügen) except in his workshop (die Werkstätte). The latter (dieser) having one day gone out very early found a purse well filled with money (ein ziemlich gespickter Beutel). He ran (eilen) to his brother to inform him of his good luck (sein Glück erzählen), and said to him: “See, Louis, what is got (was man dabei gewinnt) by rising early?” “Faith (wahrlich)!” answered his brother, “if the person to whom it belongs had not risen earlier than I, he would not have lost it.”

A clergyman (der Pfarrer) who was preaching one Sunday afternoon (an einem Sonntage Nachmittags) remarked (gewart werden\*) at (gegen) the end of his sermon (die Predigt) that a man (der Bürger) asleep at the foot of the pulpit (unten an der Kanzel), snored (schnarchen) pretty loudly (ziemlich laut), and that this furnished matter for conversation to (Jemanden zum Sprechen veranlassen) two women who were sitting near him. “Ladies,” said the clergyman, “do not talk so loud, or you will waken your neighbour.”

279.

A poet (der Dichter) went to call on (wollte—besuchen) a nobleman. The latter, having perceived him as he was near entering his house (als er eben in's Haus treten wollte), called out to his servant (seiner Magd zurufen\*), loud enough for the poet to hear (so, daß es der Dichter hören konnte): “Tell him (*Obs. E. No. 3, Lesson XCIII.*), I am not at home.” The servant did so, and the poet retired (fortgehen\*). Some days after, the nobleman knocked at the door (vor die Thür kommen\*) of the poet, intending to call on him and to consult him (Jemanden um Rath fragen) on (wegen) business (eine Angelegenheit).

"I am not at home," said the poet, without opening the door. "How so (wie)!" exclaimed (erwiedern) the nobleman, "you are not at home and yet (doch) you speak to me!" "Will you not take my own word (Sie wollen mir selbst nicht glauben)?" inquired (versetzen) the poet; "yet I took (glauben) that of your servant the other day.—Be it known unto you (Sie müssen wissen), Sir, that I am at home, but not to (für) you."

— One warm summer's day (an einem sehr heißen Sommertage) Marshal Turenne (der Marschall von Turenne) stood at a window in his ante-room (sah in seinem Vorzimmer zum Fenster hinaus) in a short jacket (das Westchen) and a cap (mit einer Mütze). One of (von) his servants came in (kam herein) and, deceived by his dress, took him for (und hielt ihn, durch den Anzug getäuscht, für) the scullion (der Beifisch), with whom he was very intimate (mit Einem auf einem sehr vertrauten Fuße stehen\*). He accordingly came up softly (er näherte sich ihm von hinten), and gave him with no light hand (und versetzte ihm mit seiner schweren Hand) a slap behind (einen derben Schlag). The person thus accosted (der Betroffene) immediately turned round (sich umwenden\*), and the trembling valet beheld (und der zitternde Bediente erblickte) his master's countenance. In his alarm, he threw himself at his feet (ganz bestürzt fiel er ihm zu Füßen), and said: "My lord, I thought it was George." "And if it (wenn es auch) had been George," exclaimed (sagen) Turenne, rubbing himself (sich reiben\*), "you ought not to have struck (zuschlagen\*) so hard."

¶ Louis XI. one day went down into the kitchen at Plessis-les-Tours (in dem Schlosse von Plessis-les-Tours). He there found a lad of (von) about fourteen or fifteen, who was turning the spit (den Bratspieß drehen). The lad (der junge Bursche) was good-looking (gut gewachsen), and had besides an appearance of cleverness (und sein gescheides Gesicht verrieth) which seemed to fit him for other employment (daß er zu andern Verrichtungen tauglich sey). The king asked him from whence he came,

who he was, and what (wieviel) he earned (verdienen). The young turnspit (der Rädchenjunge) who did not recognise him, answered without the smallest hesitation (die geringste Verlegenheit): "I am from Berry, my name is Stephen, a turnspit by profession (bin meines Handwerks ein Koch), and I earn as much as the king."—"What (wieviel) does the king earn?" asked Louis. "His livelihood (so viel er braucht)," answered Stephen, "and I mine (und ich verdiene auch, was ich brauche)."—This clever and open (offen) answer so far won him (erwerben\*) the king's good graces (die Gunst, use it in the Sing.) that he made him his valet (zu seinem Kammerdiener), and loaded (überhäufen) him with benefits (die Wohlthat).

281.

Passing through (auf ihrem Zuge durch) America, the Spaniards (das spanische Volk) acquired (annehmen\*) a dark and pitiless (unbarmherzig) character. This ferocity (die Rohheit) was more felt (sich äußern) at Cuba than elsewhere. Hatvey, one of the islanders (von den Insulanern), who had struggled the hardest to defend his freedom (seine Freiheit mit der größten Anstrengung vertheidigen), was defeated (überwinden\*), captured (fangen\*), and condemned (verurtheilen) to be burnt alive (lebendig). When this prince was fastened (binden\*) to the stake (an den Pfahl), a missionary (der Missionär) came to exhort him (zu Einem kommen\* und ihn ermahnen) to become a Christian, assuring him that his change of religion (die Religionsänderung) would procure him Paradise (das Paradies). The cacique inquired (fragen): "Are there any Spaniards in the Paradise which you paint to me in such glowing colours (mit glühenden Farben malen)?" "Certainly," replied the monk (der Mönch), "but only good ones." "The best is good for nothing (taugt nichts)," answered Hatvey, "I cannot consent (sich entschließen\*) to go where (an einen Ort zu gehen, wo) I might meet (befürchten müssen\*—anzutreffen\*) a single Spaniard (auch nur einen). Talk therefore no more to me of your religion, and let me die."

HUNDRED AND ELEVENTH LESSON. — Hundert und  
elfte Section.

7. THE PREPOSITION, das Vor- oder Verhältnißwort.

Prepositions are invariable. They are used to express the different relations between the words. They are called prepositions because they generally stand before the nouns or pronouns which they govern; *e. g.* Ich gehe mit meinem Bruder, I go *with* my brother. Er wohnt bei mir, he lives *with* me. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book lies *upon* the table. Sie reisen nach Deutschland, they go *to* Germany.

Prepositions are:

1. Either radical words, as: auf, upon; mit, with.
2. Or derived words, as: außer, without, derived from auß; nächst, next, derived from nahe, near; zwischen, between, derived from zwei.
3. Or compound words, such as: anstatt, instead of, composed of an, on, near, at, and Statt, place, stead; diesseit, on this side of, composed of diese Seite, this side; jenseit, on the other side of, composed of jene Seite, that side. (*Obs. B. Lesson LII.*)
4. Or words taken from other parts of speech, such as: während, during, taken from währen, to last; vermöge, by virtue of, taken from Vermögen, power, faculty.

Some prepositions govern always the same case, others sometimes one, sometimes another case.

I.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH ALWAYS GOVERN THE GENITIVE.

Anstatt or statt, instead of.	Jenseit, on the other side of.
Diesseit, on this side of.	Halben or halber <sup>1</sup> , on account of.

<sup>1</sup> Halben is used when the case which it governs is preceded by an article or a pronoun; otherwise halber is used, as may be seen in the examples hereafter.

Außerhalb, without, on the out- side of.	Mittelsit or vermittelsit, by means of.
Innerhalb, within, on the inner part of.	Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
Oberhalb, above, on the upper part of.	Unweit or unfern, near, not far from.
Unterhalb, below, on the lower side of.	Bermöge, by dint of, by the power of, by means of.
Kraft, by the power of, in vir- tue of.	Während, during.
Laut, according to, conformably to.	Wegen, because of, on account of.
	Um—willen, for the sake of.

*Obs. A.* Halben and halber are always put after the case which they govern. When halben is used with the genitive of personal pronouns, the letter t is substituted for the letter r; *e. g.* meinethalben, on my account; seinethalben, on his account; except: unserthalben, on our account, and eurethalben, on your account, where the letter t is added. (See *Obs.* Lesson LXXXII.)

*B.* Wegen may precede or follow its case. Ex. Wegen seines Fleißes or seines Fleißes wegen, on account of his assiduity. This preposition unites with the genitives of personal pronouns in the same way as halben; *e. g.* deinetwegen, on thy account. (See *Obs.* Lesson LXXXII.)

*C.* Um—willen is divided, and the case which it governs is always put between the two component parts. Ex. Um des Friedens willen, for the sake of peace. This preposition is combined with the genitives of the personal pronouns like halben and wegen; *e. g.* um meinewillen, for the sake of me.

*D.* Ungeachtet may precede or follow its case. Ex. Ungeachtet seines Reichthums or seines Reichthums ungeachtet, notwithstanding his riches.

EXAMPLES OF THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE  
GENITIVE.

Statt meiner gehe Du hin, go thou thither instead of me. An des Fürsten Statt, instead of the prince.

Jemanden an Kindes Statt annehmen, to adopt some one.

Diesseit des Flusses, on this side of the river. Jenseit der Brücke, on the other side of the bridge.

Der Freundschaft halben, on account of friendship. Alters halber, on account of old age. Seiner Tugend halben, on account of his virtue.

Außerhalb der Stadt, beyond town. Er geht außerhalb der Mauern spazieren, und ich innerhalb derselben, he walks outside of the walls of the town, and I inside of them. Er war oberhalb der Straße, und ich unterhalb derselben, he was on the upper part of the street, and I on the lower part of it.

Er muß kraft seines Amtes so handeln, in virtue of his office he is obliged to act thus.

Laut Ihres Briefes, according to your letter.

Bermitteltst seines Beistandes, by means of his assistance.

Ungeachtet seiner Geschicklichkeit or seiner Geschicklichkeit ungeachtet, notwithstanding his ability. Dessen ungeachtet, notwithstanding this.

Unweit der Stadt, not far from town.

Bermöge des königlichen Befehls, by power of the royal command.

Während des Krieges, during the war. Während meines Aufenthalts in Berlin, during my stay in Berlin.

Man schätzt ihn wegen seines Fleißes, und liebt ihn seiner Tugend wegen, he is esteemed on account of his industry and beloved on account of his virtue.

Thun Sie es um meines Freundes willen, do it for the sake of my friend.

---

II.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN ONLY THE DATIVE.

Aus, out of.	Nebst, { together with.
Außer, out of, on the outside of, except.	Sammt, \
Bei, close by, by, near, with.	Nach, after, to, in the direction of, towards, according to.
Binnen, within <sup>2</sup> .	Nächst, next to.
Entgegen, towards, so as to meet, opposed to, against, contrary to.	Zunächst, next to, nearest to.
Gegenüber, opposite to.	Seit, since.
Gemäß, conformable with, according to.	Von, from, of, by.
Mit, with.	Von—an, { from, since.
	Von—auf, }
	Zu, to, at, on.
	Zuwider, against, in opposition to.

*Obs. A.* Außer is construed with the Genitive in the following expression: außer Landes seyn, to be out of the country.

*B.* Entgegen, gegenüber, gemäß and zuwider always stand immediately after the case which they govern. Ex. Er geht seinem Freunde entgegen, he goes to meet his friend. Er saß mir gegenüber, he sat opposite me. Das ist mir zuwider, that is contrary to me, I have an aversion to that. Ihrem Wunsche gemäß, according to your wish.

EXAMPLES OF THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Ich komme aus dem Garten, I come from (out of) the garden. Aus langer Erfahrung, from long experience. Was ist aus ihm geworden? what has become of him?

Er wohnt außer der Stadt, he lives out of town. Außer Ihnen fehlte Niemand, nobody was wanting except you.

Er ist bei mir, he is with me. Er steht bei mir, he

<sup>2</sup>. Binnen is used only in reference to time, as may be seen by the examples hereafter.

stands by or near me. Bei der ersten Gelegenheit werde ich Sie besuchen, I shall go to see you on the first opportunity. Bei diesen Worten, at these words. Bei Seite legen, to put aside. Bei Tage, in the day-time. Bei Hofe seyn, to be at court.

Binnen acht Tagen soll dieses geschehen, this is to take place within eight days. Binnen dieser Zeit, within this time.

Ich wohne der Kirche gegenüber, I live opposite the church.

Jemanden mit offenen Armen empfangen, to receive any one with open arms (*i. e.* very amicably). Mit wem sprechen Sie? to whom do you speak? Mit Kugeln laden, to load with balls. Sind sie mit ihm zufrieden? are you satisfied with him? Mit einem Sohne niederkommen, to be confined with a son. Was machen Sie mit diesem Gelde? what do you do with this money?

Die Mutter nebst ihrer Tochter, the mother together with her daughter. Der Hauptmann sammt seinen Soldaten, the captain together with his soldiers.

Ich gehe nach der Stadt, I go to town. Er fragt nach Ihnen, he inquires after you. Er handelt nach den Gesetzen, he acts according to the laws. Thun Sie das nach Ihrem Gefallen, nach Ihrer Gewohnheit, do this according to your pleasure, according to your habit<sup>3</sup>.

Nächst Dir ist er mir der Liebste, after you it is he whom I like best. Er saß nächst ihr or ihr zunächst, He sat very near her.

Er ist seit einem Monate hier, he has been here this month. Ist es schon lange, seitdem Sie meinen Bru-

<sup>3</sup> In the signification of *according to*, nach may equally be placed after its case. Ex. Allem Anscheine nach, according to all appearances; meiner Ueberzeugung nach, according to my conviction; immer der Nase nach, always straight forward.

der nicht gesehen haben? Is it long since you saw my brother<sup>4</sup>?

Der König von Frankreich, the king of France. Die Königin von England, the queen of England. Ich komme von meinem Schwager, meiner Schwägerin, I come from my brother-in-law, my sister-in-law. Ich habe Vieles von Ihnen gelernt, I have learnt a good deal of you. Von wem ist die Rede? of whom do they speak?

Von meiner Jugend an, from my youth (upwards). Von diesem Augenblicke an, from that instant. (See Lesson XCI. *Obs. C.*)

Ich ging zu meinem Bruder, aber fand ihn nicht zu Hause, I went to my brother, but did not find him at home. Er wohnte zu Paris, he lived in Paris. See Lessons XXVIII. and LVIII.)

Handle nie den Gesetzen zuwider, never act against the laws. (See Lesson CIII.)

The following lines contain most of the prepositions governing the Dative, and may be used to assist the memory of the learner.

### Daphnis an die Quelle.

Nach Dir schmacht' ich, zu Dir eil' ich, Du geliebte  
Quelle, Du!  
Aus Dir schöpf' ich, bei Dir ruh' ich, seh' dem Spiel der  
Wellen zu;  
Mit Dir scherz' ich, von Dir lern' ich heiter durch das  
Leben wallen,  
Angelacht von Frühlingsblumen und begrüßt von  
Nachtigallen. (Ramler.)

<sup>4</sup> Seit must not be mistaken for vor. We can say: er ist seit einem Jahre krank, todt, he has been ill, dead this year; but not: er ist seit einem Jahre gestorben, for that would signify, he has been dying all this year. We must therefore say: er ist vor einem Jahre gestorben, he died a year ago; er war vor (not seit) zwei Jahren hier, he was here two years ago.

*Daphnis to the Fountain.*

I sigh for thee, I hasten to thee, beloved fountain!  
 I draw water from thee, I rest by thee, and watch the  
 rippling of the wave;  
 I play with thee, and from thee I learn to pass un-  
 ruffled through life,  
 Cheered by the flowers of spring, and greeted by the  
 nightingale.

III.

PREPOSITIONS WHICH GOVERN ONLY THE ACCUSATIVE.

Durch, through, by, by means of.	Dhne, }	without.
Entlang, along.	Sonder, }	
Für, for.	Um, for, around, about.	
Gegen (gen) <sup>5</sup> , to, towards, against.	Wider, against, in opposition to.	

EXAMPLES.

Er fuhr durch die Stadt, he drove through the town.  
 Durch sein Geld verschaffte er sich Gönner und Freunde,  
 by means of his money he procured protectors and  
 friends. Durch alle Jahrhunderte, through all  
 ages. Durch das ganze Jahr, or das ganze Jahr  
 hindurch, all the year through. Sich einen Weg  
 durch die Feinde bahnen, to make one's way through  
 the enemy. (See Lesson C.)

Den Weg entlang, along the road.

Er ging für seinen Bruder in den Krieg, he went to  
 the war for his brother. Für Sie was das eine Klei-  
 nigkeit, that was a trifle for you. Das ist eine zu schwere  
 Last für mich, this is too heavy a burden for me.  
 Wie viel haben Sie für dieses Buch bezahlt? how  
 much have you paid for that book? Ich habe einen  
 Thaler dafür bezahlt, I paid a crown for it. (See  
 Lessons LXIX. and LXXVIII.)

Gegen den Strom schwimmen, to swim against the  
 stream. Das Haus liegt gegen Morgen, gegen

<sup>5</sup> Gen is a contraction of gegen, and used only in poetry, e. g.  
 Sie hoben die Augen gen Himmel, und flehten ihn um Hilfe, they  
 lifted their eyes to heaven and implored his aid.

Mittag, gegen Abend, the house is exposed to the east, to the south, to the west. Ich komme gegen Abend, I shall come towards evening. Er betrügt sich übel gegen seinen Wohlthäter, he behaves ill towards his benefactor. Pflichten gegen den Nächsten und gegen uns selbst, duties towards our fellow-creatures and towards ourselves. Was bist du gegen ihn? what art thou compared to him? Ein Zwerg gegen einen Riesen, a dwarf against a giant. (See Lessons LXXV. and XCI.)

Was ist das Leben ohne einen Freund? what is life without a friend? Er kann nicht leben ohne Dich, ohne ihn, ohne Sie, he cannot live without thee, without him, without you. (See Lesson C.)

„Dann wirst Du sonder Furcht und Grau'n  
Dem Tod entgegenseh'n.“ (Hölty.)

“Then wilt thou contemplate death without fear or terror.”

Um die Kirche, um die Stadt gehen, to go round the church, round the town. Rings um mich blühte die Natur, nature bloomed around me. Es ist eine schöne Sache um den Fleiß, industry is a fine thing. Um den andern Tag, every second day. Jemanden um Verzeihung bitten, to ask any one's pardon. Ich weiß um die Sache, I am privy to it. Er kam um zwölf Uhr wieder, he returned at twelve o'clock. (See um—wissen, and Lessons LIV. LXXVIII. LXXXII. and XCVIII.)

Was haben Sie wider meinen Freund? what have you against my friend? Du sündigest wider Gott, wider die Geseze, wider Dein Gewissen, thou sinnest against God, against the laws, against thy conscience. (See Lessons XCI. and XCVIII.)

The following lines contain all the prepositions governing the Accusative.

Philemon an seinen Freund.

Durch Dich ist die Welt mir schön, ohne Dich würd'  
 ich sie hassen,  
 Für Dich leb' ich ganz allein, um Dich will ich gern er-  
 blassen;  
 Gegen Dich soll kein Verläünder ungestraft sich je vergeh'n,  
 Wider Dich kein Feind sich waffnen; ich will Dir zur  
 Seite steh'n.

It is through thee that the world appears beautiful to  
 me, without thee I should hate it;  
 I live for thee only, and for thee I would willingly die;  
 No slanderer shall ever attack thee unpunished,  
 No enemy shall ever arm himself against thee; I will  
 stand by thy side.

PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING VARIOUS CASES.

I. The following prepositions govern the *Genitive* and the *Dative*.

Längs, along.

Trog, in spite of.

Zufolge, in consequence of.

EXAMPLES.

Längs des Weges or längs dem Wege, along the  
 road. Längs des Gestades or längs dem Ge-  
 stade, along the shore. Er fuhr längs des Ufers  
 hin, he went along the coast. Er reiste längs den  
 Ufern des Rheins, he travelled along the borders  
 of the Rhine. (See Lesson C.)

In sublime style entlang is sometimes employed with  
 the Genitive instead of längs.

Wir hatten schon den ganzen Tag gesagt  
 Entlang des Waldgebirgs, u. s. w. (Schiller.)

We had already hunted the whole day  
 Along the mountain forest, &c.

Trog des schlechten Wetters, oder trotz dem schlechten Wetter ist er ausgegangen, he went out in spite of the bad weather. Trotz aller oder allen Gefahren, in spite of all dangers.

*Obs.* In elliptical sentences Trotz is considered as a substantive and always construed with the Dative. Ex. Trotz dem, der mir widersteht, I bid defiance to him who shall resist me; instead of: Trotz sey dem geboten, u. s. w., I defy him, &c.

Zufolge governs the Genitive, when it precedes its case, and the Dative, when it follows it. Er that dieses zufolge meines Auftrages, oder meinem Auftrage zufolge, he did this in consequence of my commission.

*Obs.* With personal pronouns this preposition always follows its case. Ex. Ihnen zufolge, according to you.

## II. Prepositions governing the *Dative* and *Accusative*.

They govern the Dative when rest or motion in a state of permanent locality (*i. e.* motion within a place) is implied; and the Accusative when motion or direction from one place or object to another is expressed. (See Lesson XXIX.)

An, on, near to, against.

Auf, upon.

Hinter, behind.

Neben, beside, at the side of.

Ueber, over, above, beyond.

Unter, under, beneath, among.

Zwischen, between.

Vor, before, ago, (Latin *ante* or *coram*).

In, in (Latin *in*).

### OBSERVATIONS.

A. An, with the Accusative, expresses direction towards a person or object, but where there is no entrance. Ex. Er schrieb an den König, an seinen Freund, an mich, he wrote to the king, to his friend, to me. Er stellte die Leiter an die Mauer, he placed the ladder against the wall. Ich gehe an den Fluß, I go to the river. (See Lesson XXXII.)

**B.** In, with the Accusative, expresses direction into the centre or interior of a place. Ex. Ich gehe in die Kirche, in die Schule, I go to church, to school. Er geht in das Vorrathshaus, he goes into the storehouse. (See Lessons XXXI and LXXXI.)

**C.** Auf, with the Accusative, expresses direction to the upper part of a place. Ex. Auf das Dach steigen, to mount upon the roof. Auf also governs the Accusative in the signification of *for*. Ex. Er läßt sich auf den Winter einen neuen Rock machen, he gets a new coat made *for* the winter. Auf Jemanden warten, to wait *for* some one. Er hat mir das Buch nur auf eine Stunde geliehen, he lent me the book only *for* an hour. Er hat seine Abreise auf den ersten dieses Monats festgesetzt, he fixed his departure *for* the first instant. Vorrath auf viele Jahre, store *for* many years; auf einen Monat, *for* one month; auf kurze Zeit, *for* a short time. Auf is also employed with the Accusative when it may be explained by *in consequence of, according to*. Ex. Auf Ihren Befehl, at your command. Auf sein Wort, upon his word. Auf Ihre Verantwortung, upon your responsibility. Say also, auf Regen folgt Sonnenschein, auf den Winter der Sommer, rain is followed by sunshine, the winter by the summer; ich komme auf Ostern zu Ihnen, I shall come to you at Easter; and, auf den Ball, auf's Feld, auf das Land, auf die Hochzeit, auf die Universität gehen, to go to the ball, to the field, to the country, to the wedding, to the university.

**D.** Ueber governs the Accusative when it signifies on the subject or matter of a thing. Ex. Ueber eine Materie schreiben, to write on a subject. Er hat ein Buch über die Rechenkunst geschrieben, he wrote a book on arithmetic. Er predigte über das Evangelium, he preached on the gospel. It is the same when this preposition expresses a moral superiority. Ex. Das geht über meinen Verstand, that is above my reach. Der Schüler geht nicht über den Meister, the scholar is not above the master. (See Lesson LXXIX.)

EXAMPLES.

*Dative.*

*An.*

*Accusative*

Die Reihe ist an mir, it is my turn.	Die Reihe kommt an mich, my turn comes.
Er arbeitet an seinem Werke, he is occupied with his work.	Er geht an die Arbeit, he goes to work.
Er rächte sich an ihr, he revenged himself upon her.	Ich schrieb an ihren Vater, I wrote to her father.
Sie haben schlecht an mir gehandelt, you behaved badly towards me.	Ich werde mich deswegen an Sie halten, I shall rely upon you concerning it.
Zweifeln Sie nicht an meiner Freundschaft, do not doubt of my friendship.	Ich habe eine Bitte an Sie, I have a request to make to you.
Sie haben kein Recht an ihm, you have no right over him.	Er stieß sich an einen Stein, he knocked himself against a stone.
Ich nehme Theil an Ihren Leiden, I take part in your sufferings.	Ich denke immer an Dich, I think always of thee.
Sie starb an den Blattern, she died of the small pox.	Man gewöhnt sich leicht an eine Sache, one soon gets accustomed to a thing.
Es liegt nicht an mir, it does not depend upon me.	Erinnern Sie sich an Ihr Versprechen, remember your promise.

*Auf.*

Auf mir ruht die ganze Last, the whole burden rests upon me.	Ich rechne auf den Beifall meines Vorgesetzten, I reckon upon the approbation of my superior.
Er ist auf der Jagd, auf der Reise, he is hunting, on a journey.	Er geht auf die Jagd, he goes to hunt.
Ich besteh, beharre auf meiner Meinung, I persist in my opinion.	Es kommt auf Dich an, that depends upon thee.
Er hält sich kaum auf den Beinen, he can scarcely hold himself upon his legs.	Ich lege mich auf die Wissenschaften, I apply myself to the sciences.
Seyen Sie auf Ihrer Hut, be upon your guard.	Ich stütze mich auf Dich, I lean upon thee.

*Hinter.*

Er steht hinter der Thür, he stands behind the door.	Stelle dich hinter die Thür, place thyself behind the door.
--	---

*Dative. Hinter (cont.). Accusative.*

Er lacht hinter meinem Rücken, he laughs at me when my back is turned.      Wirf das Papier hinter den Schrank, throw the paper behind the press.

*Neben.*

Er saß neben mir, Dir, Ihnen, he sat near me, near thee, near you; er stand und ging neben mir, he stood and walked beside me.      Setzen Sie sich neben mich oder neben meinen Bruder, sit near me or near my brother; er stellte sich neben mich, Dich, Sie, he placed himself beside me, beside thee, beside you.

Er spazierte neben der Wahrheit vorbei, he passed by truth (had no regard for truth).      Man will den Sohn neben seinem Vater begraben, they wish to bury the son by the side of his father.

*Über.*

Er wohnt über mir, he lives above me.      Er hält sich über mich auf, he finds fault with me.

Er schlief über dem Lesen ein, whilst reading he fell asleep.      Ich habe die Aufsicht über Dich, I have control over thee.

Das Gemälde hängt über der Thür, über dem Spiegel, the picture is placed over the door, over the looking-glass.      Hänge das Gemälde über die Thür, über den Spiegel, place the picture over the door, over the looking-glass.

Es schwebt ein Gewitter über der Stadt, a storm has gathered over the town.      Der Segen komme über Dich, may a blessing come to thee.

Sie liegen immer über den Büchern, you are quite a book-worm.      Er setzt sich über Alles hinweg, he is above minding any thing.

*Unter.*

Er steht unter mir, he is under me.      Ich rechne (zähle) ihn unter meine Freunde, I count him amongst my friends.

Unter der Larve der Freundschaft, under the mask of friendship.      Der Wohlthätige theilt Geld unter die Armen aus, the generous man distributes money amongst the poor.

Die Vögel unter dem Himmel, the birds beneath the heavens.      Unter die Augen kommen, to appear before one.

Unter andern heißtes, amongst other things they say.      Unter die Leute bringen, to divulge.

*Dative.*      *Unter* (cont.)      *Accusative.*

Wehe dem Volke, das unter dem Joch eines Tyrannen lebt!  
 woe to the people who live under the yoke of a tyrant!

Stelle dich unter den Baum,  
 place thyself under the tree.

*Zwischen.*

Sie saß zwischen mir und dem Fremden, she sat between me and the stranger.  
 Er trat zwischen mich und ihn, he stepped between me and him.

Seyen Sie Richter zwischen uns beiden, be judge between us.  
 Er stellte den Stuhl zwischen die beiden Tische, he placed the chair between the two tables.

Es ist ein großer Unterschied zwischen dem Dativ und dem Accusativ, there is a great difference between the Dative and the Accusative.  
 Wenn die Erde zwischen die Sonne und den Mond tritt, so entsteht eine Mondfinsterniß, when the earth passes between the sun and the moon an eclipse of the moon takes place.

*Vor.*

Vor allen Dingen, above all things.  
 Die Pferde vor den Wagen spannen, to put the horses to the carriage.

Ihr Bild schwebt mir stets vor den Augen, her picture is constantly before my eyes.  
 Hüte Dich, daß es nicht vor die Ohren Deines Vaters komme, take care that thy father does not hear of it.

Er sitzt vor dem Hause, he sits before the house.  
 Er stellte sich vor den Spiegel, he placed himself before the glass.

Er stand vor mir auf, he stood up before me; er nahm den Hut vor mir ab, he took off his hat to me.  
 Er führte mich vor den Eingang des Hauses, he conducted me to the entrance of the house.

Er verbarg sich vor seinem Feinde, he hid himself from his enemy.  
 Er trat vor mich, vor Dich, vor Sie, he stepped before me, before thee, before you.

*In.*

Er ist im Garten, he is in the garden.  
 Ich gehe in den Garten, I go into the garden.

Er geht in der Stube auf und ab, he walks up and down the room.  
 Sie geht in die Schule, she goes to school.

Ich habe mich in ihm geirrt, I have been mistaken in him.  
 Sie slicht Blumen in den Kranz, she puts flowers in the garland (makes a garland of flowers).

<i>Dative.</i>	In (cont.)	<i>Accusative.</i>
Sie stand in tiefen Gedanken, she stood in deep thought (s).		Sie versiel in tiefe Gedanken, she fell into a profound meditation.
Ich lese die Antwort in Ihren Augen, I read the answer in your eyes.		Die Thränen traten ihr in die Augen, the tears came into her eyes.
Er wird in einem Monate ab- reisen, he will leave in a month.		Das fällt in die Augen, that strikes the eye.
Er hat es in einer Stunde verfertigt, he finished it in an hour.		Ich setze mein Vertrauen in Dich, in Sie, I place my confidence in thee, in you.

The following verses contain all the prepositions governing the Dative and Accusative.

An den Mond.

Auf Dich blicket, auf Dir weilet oft mein Aug' in  
süßer Lust;  
An Dir hast' ich, an Dich send' ich manch Gefühl aus  
froher Brust.  
In Dich setzet, in Dir findet meine Phantasie viel Scenen,  
Unter die sie gern sich träumet, unter denen dort die  
schönen  
Seelen, über diese Erd' erhöht, über Gräbern wandeln.  
Vor mich tritt dann, vor mir steht dann der Entschluß,  
recht gut zu handeln.  
Zwischen diesen Sträuchen sitz' ich, zwischen sie  
stiehlt sich Dein Strahl.  
Neben mich sinkt, neben mir ruht sie, die Freundin  
meiner Wahl;  
Hinter mich still hingeschlichen, stand sie lachend hinter mir,  
Und wir reden von den Sternen, unsern Lieben und von Dir.

To the Moon.

My eyes look towards thee, they often rest in sweet  
enchantment on thee;  
I remain bound to thee, and many a thought escapes  
to thee from my joyful bosom.

My fancy places in thee, and finds in thee, many  
 scenes  
 Amongst which she likes to dream; amongst them the  
 beautiful  
 Souls that have risen from earth, hover over their  
 graves.  
 The firm resolve to act aright then presents itself to  
 me, and stands before me.  
 I sit amongst these bushes; between them steal thy  
 rays.  
 The beloved of my choice comes near me, and sits  
 by me;  
 She had crept in silence behind me, and stood smiling  
 there,  
 And we talk of the stars, of those we love, and of  
 thee.

COMPOUND PREPOSITIONS.

Compound prepositions must be divided, and the case which the preposition governs placed between the two component parts. (See Lesson XCI.) The most important of these prepositions are the following:

Auf — <i>es</i> , upon.	Unter — <i>weg</i> , under.
Auf — <i>zu</i> , { towards.	Von — <i>an</i> , { from, since.
Nach — <i>zu</i> , {	Von — <i>auf</i> , {
Hinter — <i>her</i> , { after, behind.	Von — <i>aus</i> , { from.
Hinter — <i>drein</i> , {	Von — <i>her</i> , {
Ueber — <i>her</i> , upon.	Vor — <i>her</i> , before.
Ueber — <i>weg</i> , over.	Vor — <i>hin</i> , in front of.
Um — <i>her</i> , around.	Vor — <i>weg</i> , before — away.
Um — <i>wissen</i> , for the sake of.	&c. &c.

EXAMPLES.

Er stürzte auf mich *es*, he sprang upon me.  
 Ich lief auf ihn *zu*, I ran towards him.  
 Wir gingen nach der Stadt *zu*, we walked towards the town.  
 Wir gingen hinter der Reiterei *her* (oder *drein*), we followed the cavalry.  
 Er fiel über mich *her*, he fell upon me.  
 Die Kugel ging über meinen Kopf *weg*, the ball passed over my head.

Sie standen um den Wagen her, they stood around the carriage.

Ich habe es um Ihres Herrn Bruders willen gethan, I did it for the sake of your brother. (See Lesson LXXXII.)

Das Wasser läuft unter der Brücke weg, the water flows under the bridge.

Von meiner Jugend an, von Jugend auf, from my youth up; von nun an, henceforward; von diesem Augenblicke an, from that moment. (See *Obs. C.* Lesson XCI.)

Er schrieb mir von Berlin aus, he wrote to me from Berlin.

Von Alters her, from all antiquity.

Er ging vor mir her, he walked before me.

Er stellt sich vor den Wagen hin, he places himself in front of the carriage.

Sie liefen vor mir weg, they ran away before me.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

A. When in English a relative pronoun is understood, the preposition may be put quite at the end of the sentence. This is not the case in German where a transposition of the preposition is not allowed<sup>6</sup>. Ex. Der Mann, von welchem ich sprach, the man I spoke of (for, the man *of whom* I spoke). Die Stellen, auf die er sich bezieht, the passages he refers to (instead of, *to which* he refers).

B. Nor is the preposition transposed with interrogative pronouns, as is often the case in English. Ex. Nach wem fragen Sie? *whom* do you inquire after? Für wen haben Sie dieses Buch gekauft? *Whom* did you buy this book for? Von wem haben Sie es bekommen? *Whom* did you receive it from?

C. When the same preposition belongs to several nouns, connected, or not, by one of the conjunctions und, and, oder, or, it may either be repeated before

<sup>6</sup> The preposition must, however, not be mistaken for a part of a separable compound verb, which in simple tenses must stand at the end of the sentence. Ex. Ich schlug die mir überschieden Geschenke aus, I refused the presents which were sent to me.

each noun, or be placed only before the first. Ex. Durch List, Betrug und Verrätherei, or: durch List, durch Betrug und durch Verrätherei, through cunning, fraud, and treachery. But when the substantives are connected by other conjunctions, the preposition must be repeated before each of them. Ex. Entweder durch Güte oder durch Gewalt, through goodness or force. Weder durch Güte noch durch Strenge, neither through mildness nor severity.

*D.* It is incorrect to use two prepositions one after another. Say therefore: ich komme von Hause, I come from home, and never: von zu Hause, u. s. w.

*E.* It is not sufficient to know how to translate the prepositions literally; for a phrase which in English demands such a preposition may in German require one totally different. Some phrases also require a preposition in German without demanding one in English, and *vice versâ*. We shall therefore first give a few examples in which the same preposition occurs in both languages, and then point out how certain English prepositions must be translated into German, and some German prepositions into English.

1. The following are the same in English and in German.

He is <i>on</i> my side.	Er ist auf meiner Seite.
<i>On</i> both sides.	Auf beiden Seiten.
To be <i>on</i> the road, <i>on</i> the journey.	Auf dem Wege, auf der Reise seyn*.
To go <i>on</i> a journey (to set out).	Sich auf den Weg, auf die Reise machen oder begeben*.
To lean <i>on</i> one's elbow.	Sich auf den Ellbogen stützen.
<i>On</i> my word, <i>on</i> my honour.	Auf mein Wort, auf Ehre.
To be <i>out of</i> fashion (to be no longer in fashion).	Aus der Mode gekommen sein.
To work <i>by</i> candlelight.	Bei Licht arbeiten.
<i>By</i> moonlight.	Bei'm Mondschein.
<i>Till</i> ten o'clock.	Bis zehn Uhr.
<i>Through</i> much entreaty (by dint of entreaties).	Durch vieles Bitten.
To live <i>in</i> Paris, <i>in</i> London, <i>in</i> Berlin.	In Paris, in London, in Berlin leben.
To put one's hand <i>into</i> one's pocket.	In die Tasche greifen*.

To be <i>in</i> the theatre.	Im Theater seyn*.
To have something <i>in</i> one's head.	Etwas im Sinne haben*.
To put <i>in</i> practice (to execute).	In's Werk setzen.
To keep <i>in</i> check.	Im Zaume halten*.
<i>In</i> many respects.	In vielen Stücken.
<i>In</i> plenty, <i>in</i> quantity.	In Menge.
Leave me <i>in</i> peace.	Lassen Sie mich in Frieden.
Daphne was transformed <i>into</i> a laurel tree.	Daphne wurde in einen Lorbeerbaum verwandelt.
He threw his hat <i>in</i> the air.	Er warf seinen Hut in die Luft.
<i>In</i> jest (for jest).	Im Scherze, zum Scherz.
This drawing was done <i>with</i> a pen, <i>with</i> a pencil.	Diese Zeichnung ist mit der Feder, mit der Bleifeder gemacht.
This embroidery was done <i>with</i> a needle.	Diese Stickerei ist mit der Nadel gearbeitet worden.
<i>With</i> open arms.	Mit offenen Armen.
To point some one out <i>with</i> the finger.	Mit dem Finger auf Jemanden zeigen.
<i>With</i> all one's strength.	Mit aller Gewalt.
The man <i>with</i> the large nose.	Der Mann mit der großen Nase.
A cravat <i>with</i> lace.	Ein Halstuch mit Spitzen.
To advance <i>with</i> long steps.	Sich mit großen Schritten nahen.
To load <i>with</i> gifts, praise, favours.	Mit Gütern, Lobsprüchen, Gunstbezeigungen überhäufen.
He armed himself <i>with</i> a sword, a pistol, a lance, <i>with</i> patience, courage, &c.	Er bewaffnete sich mit einem Degen, einer Pistole, einer Lanze, mit Geduld, Muth u. s. w.
A picture ornamented <i>with</i> diamonds, a watch set <i>with</i> pearls.	Ein mit Diamanten geschmücktes Portrait, eine mit Perlen besetzte Uhr.
To strike <i>with</i> the hand, to kick <i>with</i> the foot.	Mit der Hand, mit dem Fuße schlagen*, stoßen*.
To work <i>with</i> the head.	Mit dem Kopfe arbeiten.
It is all over <i>with</i> him.	Es ist aus mit ihm.
Away <i>with</i> this business!	Weg mit der Sache!
To assist one <i>with</i> deed and counsel.	Einem mit Rath und That beistehen*.
<i>With</i> a good conscience.	Mit gutem Gewissen.
To bear <i>with</i> patience.	Mit Geduld ertragen*.
I am very much pleased <i>with</i> this young man.	Ich bin mit diesem jungen Menschen sehr zufrieden.
<i>After</i> two months.	Nach zwei Monaten.
<i>Without</i> my knowledge.	Ohne mein Wissen.
<i>Under</i> the date of the first instant.	Unter dem ersten dieses (Monats).
I have heard it <i>from</i> several persons.	Ich habe es von mehreren Personen gehört.

He comes <i>from</i> Paris.	Er kommt von Paris.
<i>From</i> here to Vienna.	Von hier nach Wien.
<i>From</i> time to time.	Von Zeit zu Zeit.
<i>From</i> house to house.	Von Haus zu Haus.
I come <i>from</i> home.	Ich komme von Hause.
He came <i>from</i> my brother.	Er kam von meinem Bruder.
<i>From</i> morning till evening.	Vom Morgen bis zum Abend.
<i>From</i> top to bottom.	Von Grund aus.
To summon <i>before</i> a court.	Vor Gericht belangen (fordern).
To go <i>to</i> bed, <i>to</i> table.	Zu Bette, zu Tische gehen*.
To invite <i>to</i> dinner.	Zu Tische laden*.
To give occasion <i>to</i> something.	Gelegenheit zu Etwas geben*.
To invite <i>to</i> dinner or <i>to</i> supper.	{ Zum Mittag- oder Abendessen einladen*.
To work one's self <i>to</i> death.	{ Zu Gast bitten*.
To take something <i>to</i> heart.	Sich zu Tode arbeiten.
To have a right <i>to</i> something.	Etwas zu Herzen nehmen*.
Success <i>to</i> you! (God speed you well!)	Ein Recht zu Etwas haben*.
To be invited <i>to</i> a wedding.	Glück zu!
To have a competency <i>to</i> live on.	Zu einer Hochzeit gebeten werden*.
Happiness <i>to</i> the king! (long live the king!)	Zu leben haben*.
To fall <i>to</i> one's lot or share.	Glück zu dem Könige!
	Zu Theil werden*.

2. In the following phrases the German prepositions are not the same as in English.

The preposition ABOUT is rendered:

a) by bei. Ex.

I have no money *about* me. Ich habe kein Geld bei mir.

b) by gegen. Ex.

It was *about* night. Es war gegen Abend.

c) by in. Ex.

He is somewhere *about* the house. Er ist irgendwo im Hause.

What do they cry *about* the streets? Was ruft man in den Straßen aus?

d) by mit. Ex.

To be *about* any thing. Mit Etwas beschäftigt seyn\*.

e) by über. Ex.

There are divers opinions *about* it. Es gibt darüber verschiedene Meinungen.  
 He was jeered *about* his comical figure. Man machte sich über seine komische Gestalt lustig.

f) by um. Ex.

His friends were *about* him. Seine Freunde waren um ihn.  
 To take a turn *about* the town. Einen Gang um die Stadt machen.

g) by wegen. Ex.

I shall speak to him *about* that business. Ich werde wegen dieser Sache mit ihm sprechen.

The preposition ACCORDING TO is rendered:

a) by nach. Ex.

To dress *according to* the fashion. Sich nach der Mode kleiden.  
*According to* the eyesight. Nach Augenmaß.  
*According to* his wish. Nach seinem Wunsche.  
*According to* your orders. Nach Ihrem Befehle.  
*According to* his mind. Nach seinem Sinne (Kopfe).  
 To live *according to* one's fancy. Nach seinem Kopfe leben.

b) by various expressions. Ex.

*According to* custom. Wie es der Gebrauch mit sich bringt.  
 To go *according to* the times. Sich in Zeit und Umstände schicken.  
*According as* you deserve. Je nachdem Sie es verdienen.  
*According as* they shall see occasion. In so fern sie es schicklich oder rathsam finden werden.

The preposition AGAINST is rendered:

a) by an. Ex.

To dry a thing *against* the fire. Etwas an dem Feuer trocknen.  
 The picture hangs *against* the wall. Das Gemälde hängt an der Mauer.

b) by mit. Ex.

To do something *against* one's inclination. Etwas mit Widerwillen thun\*.

c) by vor. Ex.

To keep on one's guard *against* some one. Sich vor Einem hüten.

The preposition **AMONGST** is rendered:

a) by mit. Ex.

Thou, Lord, art *amongst* them. Du, Herr, bist mit ihnen.

b) by unter. Ex.

To receive some one *amongst* Jemanden unter die Zahl seiner  
the number of his friends. Freunde aufnehmen\*.

*Amongst* the number of the Unter der Zahl der Todten.  
dead.

*Amongst* other employments. Unter andern Geschäften.

He rushed *amongst* the naked Er stürzte sich unter die entblößten  
swords. Schwerter.

The preposition **AT** is rendered:

a) by an. Ex.

There is some one *at* the door. Es ist Jemand an der Thür.

To be *at* the window. An dem (am) Fenster stehen\*.

*At* the end of the year. Am Ende des Jahres.

b) by auf. Ex.

To be *at* the point of death. Auf den Tod krank seyn\*.

*At* Easter, *at* Midsummer. Auf Ostern, auf Johannis.

*At* my risk. Auf meine Gefahr.

*At* my command. Auf meinen Befehl.

*At* once. Auf einmal, auf der Stelle.

*At* random. Auf's Gerathewohl, auf gut  
Glück.

c) by bei. Ex.

They are *at* table. Sie sind bei Tische.

To take some one *at* his word. Jemanden bei'm Worte halten\*.

To be *at* hand. Bei der Hand seyn\*.

*At* his departure. Bei seiner Abreise.

*At* these words he wept. Bei diesen Worten weinte er.

d) by für. Ex.

*At* a shilling a bushel. Den Scheffel für einen Schilling.

e) by in. Ex.

*At* the battle of Lützen. In der Schlacht bei Lützen.

f) by mit. Ex.

*At* break of day. Mit Tagesanbruch.

To sell *at* a loss. Mit Schaden verkaufen.

*g) by über. Ex.*

*At the noise he awoke.* Ueber dem Lärm erwachte er.  
*At table.* Ueber Tisch.

*h) by um. Ex.*

*At what o'clock?* Um wieviel Uhr?  
*At six o'clock.* Um sechs Uhr.  
*At the sixth hour.* Um die sechste Stunde.  
*At midnight.* Um Mitternacht.

*i) by unter. Ex.*

*At the sound of the trumpets and kettle-drums.* Unter Trompeten- und Paukenschall.  
*At the sound of the cannon.* Unter Lösung der Kanonen.

*k) by von. Ex.*

*I was surprised at this news.* Ich bin von dieser Nachricht überrascht worden.

*l) by vor. Ex.*

*To lie at anchor.* Vor Anker liegen\*.

*m) by zu. Ex.*

*He lives at Paris.* Er wohnt zu Paris.  
*He is not at home.* Er ist nicht zu Hause.  
*At the commencement.* Zu Anfang.  
*At the same hour.* Zu derselben Stunde.  
*At the same time.* Zu gleicher Zeit.

The preposition **BESIDE OR BESIDES** is rendered:

*a) by außer. Ex.*

*There was nobody besides those two.* Außer diesen beiden war Niemand da.  
*Beside the miseries of war.* Außer den Unfällen des Krieges.  
*Besides that.* Außer diesem.

*b) by zu. Ex.*

*Sit down beside me.* Setzen Sie sich zu mir.

The preposition **BY** is rendered:

*a) by an. Ex.*

*To perceive a thing by a person's countenance.* Einem Etwas an der Miene ansehen\*.  
*To know a person by his speech.* Jemanden an der Sprache erkennen.

b) by mit. Ex.

He enriched himself *by* my losses. Er hat sich mit dem bereichert, was ich verloren habe.

c) by nach. Ex.

To sell *by* the ell, *by* weight. Nach der Elle, nach dem Gewichte verkaufen.

d) by um. Ex.

To increase *by* one half. Um die Hälfte vermehren.  
Dearer *by* four crowns. Um vier Thaler theurer.

e) by von. Ex.

He has seen this part played *by* Lekain and Talma. Er hat diese Rolle von Lekain und von Talma spielen sehen.  
He is esteemed *by* every one, and beloved *by* all those who know him. Er wird von Jedermann geachtet und von Allen geliebt, die ihn kennen.  
He is despised and hated *by* all good persons. Er wird von allen ehrlichen Leuten verachtet und gehaßt.  
Tired *by* the journey. Von der Reise müde.

f) by zu. Ex.

*By* half. Zur Hälfte.

The preposition FOR is rendered :

a) by auf. Ex.

*For* ever. Auf immer.

b) by nach. Ex.

To look *for* something. Nach Etwas suchen.

c) by um. Ex.

To buy *for* ready money. Um baares Geld kaufen.  
*For* honour's sake. Es ist um die Ehre zu thun.  
To cry *for* vengeance. Um Rache schreien\*.

d) by vor. Ex.

To weep *for* joy. Vor Freude weinen.  
To be out of one's mind *for* joy (to be wild with joy). Vor Freude außer sich seyn\*.

e) by zu. Ex.

To take the measure *for* a dress. Das Maß zu einem Kleide nehmen\*.  
 To take *for* a wife. Zur Frau nehmen\*.

The preposition FROM is rendered:

a) by an. Ex.

He hindered me *from* writing. Er hinderte mich an Schreiben.

b) by aus. Ex.

He is *from* Dresden. Er ist aus Dresden.  
*From* France. Aus Frankreich.  
*From* his own impulse. Aus eigenem Antriebe.  
 A quotation *from* Aristoteles' Poetics. Eine Stelle aus der Poetik des Aristoteles.  
 It is clear *from* Scripture. Es ist klar aus der Schrift.  
*From* hate. Aus Haß.  
*From* mental conviction. Aus innerlicher Ueberzeugung.  
*From* a nobler cause. Aus einer edleren Ursache.

c) by nach. Ex.

*From* his dress he seemed to have been a soldier. Seiner Kleidung nach schien er Soldat gewesen zu seyn.  
 Two months *from* that time. Nach zwei Monaten.

d) by vor. Ex.

He does not hide anything *from* me. Er verbirgt Nichts vor mir.

The preposition IN is rendered:

a) by an. Ex.

I have (find. lose) *in* you (in him) a faithful friend. Ich habe (finde, verliere) an Ihnen (an ihm) einen getreuen Freund.  
 To surpass some one *in* courage. Jemanden an Muth übertreffen\*.

b) by auf. Ex.

What is that called *in* German, *in* English? Wie heißt das auf deutsch, auf englisch?  
*In* the open field. Auf freiem Felde.

c) by bei. Ex.

*In* the day-time. Bei Tage (des Tags oder während des Tags).  
*In* the night. Bei Nacht.

*In* broad day-light. Bei hellem Tage.  
 To find some one *in* good health. Jemanden bei guter Gesundheit antreffen\*.

d) by mit. Ex.

To arrive *in* a post chaise. Mit der Post kommen\*.  
*In* one word. Mit einem Worte.  
 To deal *in* something. Mit Etwas handeln.  
*In* golden letters. Mit goldenen Buchstaben.

e) by nach. Ex.

*In* my opinion. Nach meiner Meinung.  
 To observe time *in* dancing. Nach dem Takte tanzen.

f) by um. Ex.

To vie with one *in* running. Um die Wette laufen\*.  
 To be dressed *in* the fashion. Sich nach der Mode kleiden.

g) by unter. Ex.

To sleep *in* the open air. Unter freiem Himmel schlafen\*.  
*In* the reign of Augustus. Unter der Regierung des Augustus.  
 To cast something *in* one's teeth. Einem Etwas unter die Nase reiben\*.

h) by vor. Ex.

To appear *in* court. Vor Gericht erscheinen\*.  
*In* former times. Vor Zeiten.

i) by zu. Ex.

*In* this age (now a days). Heut zu Tage.  
 To come *in* time. Zu rechter Zeit kommen\*.  
*In* your behalf. Zu Ihrem Besten.  
 To have trust or confidence *in* some one. Vertrauen zu Einem haben\*.  
*In* reward, *in* recompense. Zur Vergeltung (Belohnung).

The preposition *IN SPITE OF* is rendered:

a) by wider. Ex.

*In spite of* me. Wider meinen Willen.

b) by zu. Ex.

*In spite of* you. Euch zum Troze.  
*In spite of* thee. Dir zum Troze.  
*In spite of* your teeth. Dir zum Aerger.

The preposition **of** is rendered :

a) by **an**. Ex.

The thing *of* itself. Die Sache **an** (und für) sich (selbst).  
 What is the reason *of* it? (what **an** liegt es?  
 occasions it?)

b) by **auf**. Ex.

To make much *of* any one (*of* Viel **auf** Jemanden (**auf** Etwas)  
 any thing). halten\*.

c) by **aus**. Ex.

To lose sight *of*. Aus den Augen verlieren\*.

d) by **in**. Ex.

To take care *of* something. Etwas **in** Acht nehmen\*.

e) by **nach**. Ex.

It makes ten crowns *of* our Es macht **nach** unserm Gelde zehn  
 money. Thaler.

It makes &c. *of* French money. Es macht **nach** französischem Gelde  
 u. s. w.

In the year one thousand five Im Jahre ein tausend fünf hun-  
 hundred and eleven *of* the dert und elf **nach** der Erschaf-  
 creation of the world, *of* the fung der Welt, **nach** der Er-  
 building of Rome. bauung der Stadt Rom.

f) by **um**. Ex.

You have deserved well *of* Sie haben sich **um** Ihr Vaterland  
 your country. verdient gemacht.

g) by **von**. Ex.

He speaks always *of* the losses Er spricht immer **von** seinen Ver-  
 he has sustained. lusten.

Fear nothing *of* me. Fürchten Sie Nichts **von** mir. .

The king *of* France. Der König **von** Frankreich.

The capital *of* England. Die Hauptstadt **von** England.

Large *of* body and little *of* Groß **von** Körper und klein **von**  
 mind. Geist.

*Of* one's own accord (freely). **Von** freien Stücken.

The fable *of* the wolf and the Die Fabel **von** Wolf und vom  
 lamb. Lamm.

One *of* them. Einer **von** ihnen.

London is south *of* York. London liegt im Süden **von** York.

All that is left *of* him. Alles, was **von** ihm übrig ist.

*Of* right. **Von** Rechts wegen.

That is a matter *of* course. Das versteht sich **von** selbst.

*h) by vor. Ex.*

<i>Of</i> all things.	Vor allen Dingen.
<i>Of</i> old.	Vor Alters, vor diesem.
<i>Of</i> late.	Vor Kurzem (neulich, kürzlich).

*i) by zu. Ex.*

The love <i>of</i> glory.	Die Liebe zum Ruhme.
---------------------------	----------------------

The preposition **ON** or **UPON** is rendered:

*a) by an. Ex.*

<i>On</i> what does it depend (what is the cause of it)?	Woran liegt es?
London is seated <i>upon</i> the Thames.	London liegt an der Themse.
<i>Upon</i> the frontiers.	An den Grenzen.
<i>On</i> the first day.	Am ersten Tage.

*b) by auß. Ex.*

<i>Upon</i> a mere suspicion.	Auß bloßem Verdacht.
-------------------------------	----------------------

*c) by bei. Ex.*

That depends <i>upon</i> you (that is your concern).	Es steht bei Ihnen.
<i>Upon</i> all occasions.	Bei allen Gelegenheiten.
<i>Upon</i> our lives.	Bei unserem Leben.
<i>Upon</i> his coming.	Bei seiner Ankunft.
<i>Upon</i> pain of death.	Bei Todesstrafe.
To be put <i>on</i> bread and water.	Bei Wasser und Brod sitzen.

*d) by für. Ex.*

<i>On</i> my part.	Für meinen Theil.
--------------------	-------------------

*e) by in. Ex.*

To reflect <i>on</i> one's self.	In sich gehen*.
<i>Upon</i> the whole, <i>upon</i> the whole matter.	Im Ganzen (nach Allem).
<i>On</i> the contrary.	Im Gegentheil.

*f) by mit. Ex.*

<i>On</i> purpose.	Mit Fleiß (vorsätzlich).
--------------------	--------------------------

*g) by unter. Ex.*

<i>Upon</i> condition.	Unter der Bedingung.
<i>On</i> this condition.	Unter dieser Bedingung.
<i>On</i> easy terms.	Unter leichten Bedingungen.
To be <i>on</i> one's way.	Unter Weges seyn*.

*h*) by von. Ex.

He lives *upon* bread and milk. Er lebt von Brod und Milch.  
*Upon* which they live. Wovon sie leben.

*i*) by zu. Ex.

To sit well *on* horseback. Gut zu Pferde sitzen\*.  
 To travel *on* foot, *on* horseback. Zu Fuße, zu Pferde reisen.  
 To throw *on* the ground. Zu Boden (zur Erde) werfen\*.  
*On* the right hand. Zur Rechten.

The preposition **TILL** (for *to*) is rendered :

*a*) by bis auf. Ex.

*Till* this moment. Bis auf diesen Augenblick.

*b*) by bis zu. Ex.

*Till* this day. Bis zu dem heutigen Tage.  
*Till* fifty years of age. Bis zum fünfzigsten Jahre.

The preposition **THROUGH** is rendered :

*a*) by aus. Ex.

*Through* fear. Aus Furcht.  
*Through* thirst of gold. Aus Golddurst.

*b*) by vor. Ex.

*Through* fatigue I can walk Ich kann vor Mattigkeit nicht  
 no longer. mehr gehen.  
 He fell asleep *through* weak- Er schlief vor Mattigkeit ein.  
 ness.

The preposition **TO** is rendered :

*a*) by an. Ex.

To set the hand *to* the plough. Hand an's Werk legen.

*b*) by auf. Ex.

To go *to* the post. Auf die Post geben\*.  
 To put one's money out *to* in- Sein Geld auf Zinsen geben\*.  
 terest.  
 To pay attention *to* something. Auf Etwas Acht geben\*.  
 Reply *to* my question. Antworten Sie auf meine Frage.  
 To the hour, *to* the minute. Auf die Stunde, auf die Minute.

*c*) by bis. Ex.

A man of from twenty *to* thirty Ein Mann von zwanzig bis drei-  
 years of age. ßig Jahren.  
 To the height of four inches. Bis zur Höhe von vier Zoll.  
 From top *to* toe. Von Kopf bis zu Fuß.

*To the bottom!* Bis auf den Grund.  
*To the value of a shilling a day.* Bis zum Belauf eines Schillings für den Tag.

d) by für. Ex.

*That is lost to me.* Dies ist für mich verloren.  
*A fervent charity to all men.* Eine inbrünstige Liebe für alle Menschen.  
*Keep your company to yourself.* Bleibe für Dich.

e) by gegen. Ex.

*To be ungrateful to some one.* Undankbar gegen Jemanden seyn\*.  
*He complains to me.* Er beschwert sich gegen mich.

f) by in. Ex.

*To go to the theatre.* In's Theater gehen\*.  
*To tell to one's face.* Einem in's Gesicht sagen.

g) by mit. Ex.

*His strength is equal to his courage.* Seine Stärke kommt mit seiner Tapferkeit überein.

h) by nach. Ex.

*The road to Paris, to the town.* Der Weg nach Paris, nach der Stadt.  
*The journey to France, to India &c.* Die Reise nach Frankreich, nach Indien, u. s. w.

i) by vor. Ex.

*To take off one's hat to some one.* Den Hut vor Einem abnehmen\*.  
*To give audience to some one.* Jemanden vor sich lassen\*.

k) by various expressions. Ex.

*I have no enmity to that.* Ich bin der Sache nicht abgeneigt.  
*There is no devil equal to the hypocrite.* Es gibt keinen größern Scheinheiligen als den Teufel.  
*The flower is sharp to the taste.* Die Blume hat einen scharfen Geruch.  
*This is no prejudice to you.* Dies bringt Ihnen keinen Schaden.  
*That is nothing to me.* Dies geht mich nichts an.  
*That is to herself.* Das geht sie an.  
*As to that.* Was dies betrifft.  
*It remains to know (it is yet to be known).* Es fragt sich noch.

The preposition **UNDER** is rendered:

**a) by bei. Ex.**

*Under* the extremity of torture. Bei dem höchsten Grade der Marter.  
*Under* pain of death. Bei Todesstrafe.  
*Under* the present disposition Bei der gegenwärtigen Lage der Dinge.

**b) by durch. Ex.**

To be *under* an oath. Durch einen Eid gebunden seyn\*.

**c) by mit. Ex.**

To return *under* protest. Mit Protest zurückkehren.  
 To tread *under* foot. Mit Füßen treten\*.

**d) by von. Ex.**

To lie *under* a distemper. Von einer Krankheit befallen seyn\*.

**e) by various expressions. Ex.**

He is *under* great affliction. Er ist sehr bekümmert.  
 To be *under* an obligation. Verbunden seyn\*.  
*Under* age. Unmündig.  
 He left an evidence *under* his own hand. Er hinterließ ein eigenhändig geschriebenes Zeugniß.  
*Under* promise of marriage. Versprochen, verlobt.

The preposition **WITH** is rendered:

**a) by an. Ex.**

He finds fault *with* it. Er hat Etwas daran auszusetzen.

**b) by auf. Ex.**

A duel is fought *with* swords, Man schlägt sich (im Duell) auf  
 sabres, pistols, &c. den Degen, den Säbel, auf  
 Pistolen u. s. w.  
 To be angry *with* one. Auf Jemanden böse seyn\*.

**c) by aus. Ex.**

He did it *with* a good intention. Er hat es aus guter Absicht gethan.

**d) by bei. Ex.**

*With* the ancients. Bei den Alten.  
*With* men. Bei den Menschen.  
 To be in favour *with* one. Bei Einem in Gnade stehen\*.

e) by durch. Ex.

To cure a disease *with* fasting. Eine Krankheit durch Fasten heilen.

f) by nebst. Ex.

*With* other epithets of the like *With* other epithets of the like Neben andern ähnlichen Beisamen.

g) by um. Ex.

It is all over *with* him (he is *Es* ist um ihn geschehen. undone).

h) by von. Ex.

He was seized *with* horror. Er ward von Schrecken ergriffen.  
*With* all my heart. Von ganzem Herzen.  
 Surrounded *with* the sea. Von der See umgeben.

i) by vor. Ex.

To tremble *with* cold, *with* Vor Kälte, Zorn, u. s. w. zittern.  
 rage, &c.  
 To weep *with* sorrow. Vor Kummer weinen.

k) by all sorts of expressions. Ex.

It is enough to make one die *Es* ist zum Todtlachen.  
*with* laughing.  
 To put up *with* or to be satisfied *with*. Vorlieb nehmen\*.  
 They are all one *with* us. Sie sind Alle unserer Meinung.  
 Did that business succeed *with* him? Ist ihm die Sache gelungen?  
 Things do not go well *with* him. Seine Sachen stehen schlecht.  
 It is *with* us as *with* the French. *Es* geht uns wie den Franzosen.  
 That is of little avail *with* me. Das hilft mir wenig.  
 It is a usual thing *with* him. *Es* ist so sein Gebrauch.  
 He parted *with* all he had. Er gab Alles hin, was er hatte.

3. The following expressions require a preposition in German without demanding one in English:

He is still alive. Er ist noch am Leben.  
 As much as I possibly can. So viel an mir ist.  
 Farewell, till we meet again. Auf Wiedersehen.  
 A thought struck me. Ich kam auf den Gedanken.  
 To walk backwards and forwards. Auf- und abgehen\*.  
 To consider a thing (out of consideration for a thing). Auf Etwas Rücksicht nehmen\*.  
 To laugh heartily. Aus vollem Halse lachen,

To learn a thing thoroughly.	Eine Sache aus dem Grunde lernen.
When the opportunity offers.	Bei Gelegenheit.
As far as Mannheim.	Bis Mannheim.
To consider proper.	Für gut halten*.
To esteem one's self happy.	Sich für glücklich halten.
To declare some one innocent.	Jemanden für unschuldig erklären.
I believe you my friend.	Ich halte Sie für meinen Freund.
Near, afar off.	In der Nähe, in der Ferne.
Thoughtlessly, inconsiderately.	In den Tag hinein (unbedacht- samer Weise).
Sword in hand.	Mit dem Degen in der Hand.
His strength equals his courage.	Seine Stärke kommt mit seiner Tapferkeit überein.
To seize one's sword.	Nach dem Degen greifen.
To go home.	Nach Hause gehen*.
I let no one touch my books.	Ich lasse Niemanden über meine Bücher.
Several times successively, re- peatedly.	Einmal über das andere.
To hug one, to embrace one.	Einem um den Hals fallen*.
To make some one lose his money.	Jemanden um sein Geld bringen*.
To fine some one twenty crowns.	Jemanden um zwanzig Thaler strafen.
It is so much the better.	Es ist um so viel (oder desto) besser.
Every other day.	Einen Tag um den andern.
To set sail.	Unter Segel gehen*.
Mr. Riesenbergr.	Herr von Riesenbergr.
To do something again (anew).	Etwas von neuem thun*.
Te abhor a thing.	Einen Abscheu vor Etwas haben*.
To end.	Zu Ende gehen*.
He is burdensome to me.	Er ist mir zur Last.
To take as witness.	Zum Zeugen nehmen*.
To profess the Christian religion.	Sich zur christlichen Religion be- kennen*.
To be elected pope.	Zum Papste erwählt werden*.
That does not matter (no matter).	Das hat nichts zu sagen.

4. The following expressions demand a preposition in English without requiring one in German.

The father- <i>in-law</i> .	Der Schwiegervater.
The mother- <i>in-law</i> .	Die Schwiegermutter.
The brother- <i>in-law</i> .	Der Schwager.
The sister- <i>in-law</i> .	Die Schwägerin.
In heaps, in crowds, in great number.	Hausenweise,

A friend <i>of</i> old.	Ein alter Freund.
<i>Of</i> late.	Neulich, neuerlich, kürzlich.
The best <i>of</i> men.	Der beste Mensch.
A doctor <i>of</i> physic, <i>of</i> law.	Ein Doctor der Arzneikunde, der Rechte.
He is ten years <i>of</i> age.	Er ist zehn Jahr alt.
The town <i>of</i> London.	Die Stadt London.
He is a friend <i>of</i> mine.	Er ist mein Freund.
<i>Of</i> set purpose.	Abichtlich.
<i>Of</i> necessity.	Nothwendig.
<i>Of</i> all things.	Vornehmlich, hauptsächlich.
To go <i>on</i> horseback.	Reiten*.
You bestowed many kindnesses <i>on</i> me.	Sie haben mir viel Güte erwiesen.
<i>On</i> a sudden	Plötzlich.
He is <i>upon</i> his departure (ready to set out).	Er ist reisefertig.
He took an office <i>upon</i> him.	Er übernahm eine Stelle.
<i>To</i> my knowledge.	Meines Wissens.
<i>To</i> set pen <i>to</i> paper.	Die Feder ergreifen*.
<i>To</i> be <i>with</i> child.	Schwanger seyn*.
<i>With</i> all speed.	Unverzüglich, eiligst.

The learner has only to study the preceding examples well, together with those we gave in the Government of the Verbs (see p. 139 and seqq.) to have a thorough knowledge of this part of speech.

---

EXERCISES. 282.

TEA.

Tea is made (wird gemacht) of the leaves of a shrub (der Strauch) that grows in Japan, in China, &c. When this shrub is in blossom (blühen), its leaves are of a yellowish white (gelblichweiß), indented (gezackt) and pointed (spitzig); but they gradually (nach und nach) become of a dark green (dunkelgrün). They are gathered (man sammelt sie) two or three times in the spring (das Frühjahr), and are dried (trocknen) to be exported to Europe. The freshest tea is the best. The leaves of the first crop (die Ernte oder Einsammlung) are the most delicate (fein und zart); on this account they are very expensive (theuer), and are known (bekannt) by the name of Im-

perial tea (Der Kaiserthee), or flower of tea (Der Blumen-  
thee). This, however, seldom reaches (kommen nach) Eu-  
rope; that which we receive under this name is gene-  
rally the second crop. Tea has been known in Europe  
since the beginning of the sixteenth century, and the  
Dutch were the first who introduced it among us (und  
die Holländer haben ihn uns zuerst gebracht). It has several  
names according to its value (die Güte); the two most  
usual sorts are green tea and Bohea (Theebu). It is  
said (Lesson CII.) to dissipate (niederzuschlagen\*) the va-  
pours which mount to the head, to strengthen (stärken)  
the memory, and to brighten the intellect (den Geist  
aufheitern).

283.

### COFFEE.

Coffee is the seed of a fruit like a cherry (kirschendähnlich),  
produced by a tree which was formerly only known in  
Arabia Felix, from whence it has been transplanted into  
many hot climates. There are now coffee plants (Der  
Kaffeebaum) even in several countries of Europe; but  
they only attain there to (allein sie sind nur) the height  
of six or seven feet; whereas in Arabia they reach to  
(seyn\*) about forty feet. The coffee-tree is always covered  
with (voll) fruits and flowers. The fruit is full of juice  
(Der Saft), and contains a pod (und dient einer Schale  
zur Hülle) wherein is the bean called the coffee-bean  
(die Kaffeebohne). When this kernel (Der Kern) is fresh,  
it is yellowish (gelblich) grey or of a light green (bläß-  
grün). The pods are dried on mats (die Matte) in the  
sun, and are then broken (zerknirschen) by rollers (die  
Walze) to extract (herausfallen\*) the beans. They are  
then again dried, and thus sent to Europe where they  
have only been in use (woselbst ihr Gebrauch erst—bekannt  
ist) since the sixteenth century. The Arabian coffee is  
called Mocha coffee (Levantischer Kaffee); it is (welcher—  
ist) the best. This drink (das Getränk) is most unwhole-  
some (ungesund) when taken too strong and in too great  
a quantity; taken in moderation (sonst) it helps (erleich-  
tern) digestion (die Verdauung).

## THE PEARL FISHERY (die Perlenfischerei).

Pearls are as much esteemed (geschätzt werden\*) as precious stones (der Edelstein). They are found in shells (die Muschel) somewhat resembling (einige Ähnlichkeit haben\* mit) an oyster (die Auster). Each shell contains a small animal (*Rule 2, Lesson LV.*) that has pearls all over its body when it is diseased (krank). The most considerable (beträchtlich) pearl-fisheries are carried on (betreiben\*) in the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans (die Ost- und Westindischen Meere.) The pearl-fishery is the hardest (mühsam) and most perilous (gefährlich) trade (die Arbeit), after that of mining (der Bergbau). The people who dive (sich hinunterlassen\*) to the bottom of the sea to collect (aufsammeln) the pearl-oysters (die Perlenmuschel) are called divers (der Taucher). They are taught (diese gewöhnt man) from their infancy to hold in (an sich halten\*) their breath. The nose and ears of the diver are stopped (zustopfen), a cord is fastened round his waist (der Leib), and one end thereof is made fast (festgemacht) to the boat (das Schiffchen). To one of his feet is attached (binden\*) a weight of twenty or thirty pounds to make him go to the bottom as fast as possible (damit er desto geschwinder auf den Boden komme). As soon as he has reached this, he loosens (lösmachen) with a knife from the rocks (der Felsen) the oysters (die Muschel) which he puts into a basket. As soon as this is filled (voll), or if the diver sees a shark (der Hai) coming, or if he has no longer breath enough (nicht mehr Athem genug haben\*) to remain under water, he unties (lösbinden\*) the stone fastened to his foot, and shakes the cord as a signal for the others (um dadurch ein Zeichen zu geben,) to pull him up (daß man ihn heraufziehen soll), which is done (welches—geschieht) instantly. The oysters are opened with a knife, or are allowed to putrefy (man läßt sie faulen), when they open of their own accord (von selbst). The pearls are then taken from the shells (die Schale). They differ (verschieden seyn\*) in (an) size, form, colour, and brilliancy (der Glanz); and it is according to this dif-

ference (die Verschiedenheit) that they have received (hat man ihnen—gegeben) various names, and are more or less valuable (und verschiedenen Werth).

285.

### LETTERS.

You wish to know, my dearest cousin, how (womit) I spend my time, and what are my pursuits (womit ich mich beschäftige). The account of my pleasures is but short (nicht viel von Belustigungen zu erzählen haben\*). I am constantly employed in perfecting myself (sich vervollkommen) in the knowledge necessary for a person in my station of life (in meinem Stande zu wissen nothwendig ist), and one day is like another to me (gleichet bei mir dem andern). Yet I never feel ennui; on the contrary, I have some pleasant moments, and those which are passed in writing to you are the pleasantest.

286.

My dearest brother! I beg you to send me, as soon as possible, the books which I asked for in my last letter, as I am in great want of them. If you have not yet bought them, you can buy them at N.'s, Frederick Street. I am told that he is an honest man, and takes no unfair advantage of any body (Niemanden überfordern). You will purchase at the same time, if you please, at B.'s three yards (die Elle) of green cloth at five crowns a yard, and ten yards of hollands (holländische Leinwand) at a crown a yard. I hope that you will comply with my request (die Bitte gewähren) and that you will send me the above-mentioned things (Alles) this week by the coach (die Schnellpost), properly packed (wohl eingepackt). I am in the mean time (indessen) yours, &c.

287.

Herewith you will receive all (hier ist Alles) you asked for. I bought the books at N.'s. The price (sie kosten), as you will see by the enclosed bill (wie Du aus beiliegender Rechnung ersiehst), is twenty crowns, ten groshes,

which, with the cloth and hollands, amount to (machen oder betragen \*) forty-five crowns ten groshes. You will be so kind as to take the earliest opportunity of returning me what I have advanced (die Auslage übermachen), for you are aware (wissen\*) that I have to support (erzählen) a wife and ten children, besides my mother-in-law who is blind.

You have often promised to come to see me; why do you not come (und kommst doch nicht)? Pray come soon (thue es bald), or I shall arrive at your house, bag and baggage (mit meiner ganzen Haushaltung). Yours, &c.

288.

My dearest friend (Freundin), I delight in all your letters, especially in those that you write to me in German. I only wish I could (ich wollte nur, ich wäre im Stande) answer them as they deserve (angemessen). You perceive that I still make many mistakes, and I know not how to avoid them (wie ich sie vermeiden soll). Pray correct those you find in this letter, and return it me, when you have an opportunity (gelegentlich). You will thereby much oblige your friend, &c.

289.

#### ANSWER.

I received with great pleasure your German letter, and understand all that you say in it. I showed it to my master, who admired the style. If your friend, said he, goes on writing such letters as that, she will soon know German as well as I. He recommends you reading the works of Campe, Wieland, Kotzebue, Goethe, and Schiller.

I am much obliged to you for your invitation to the wedding, but I regret (es thut mir aber sehr leid) that I cannot accept it. I have now too many engagements (die Beschäftigung) to be able to come (die mich daran verhindern). You will not doubt my inclination (an dem guten Willen zweifeln). I remain, dear—(denn Sie wissen, wie sehr ich bin), yours, &c.

ANOTHER ANSWER.

I received yesterday the German letter which you wrote me. I was going to (ich wollte ihn sogleich) correct it, but I found too many mistakes (zu viele Fehler) in it. Learn to decline and conjugate well, and study the principles of the language, for you will otherwise never learn it properly. If you follow this friendly advice, you will shortly be able to write a German letter with few or no (gar keine) mistakes.

A LETTER FROM SOLOMON GESSNER TO HIS SON.

*Zurich, 24th April 1784.*

Your letter, my dear son, afforded us all the greatest pleasure; it has especially had the most beneficial effect on (besonders war er von der besten Wirkung für) your mother, who was constantly thinking of you with the tenderest solicitude (die zärtlichste Besorgniß). She was delighted (von Freude belebt seyn \*), and quite comforted (beruhigt) on receiving the joyful intelligence of your being well (daß es Dir wohl geht), and that you had taken better measures (sich besser einrichten) for the rest of your journey.

The first days (after you left) were sad (trübe); you were constantly talked of, and tears were frequently in our eyes (und fast immer mit beneßten Augen). Henry would then slip in some funny remark (warf dann einen närrischen Einfall dazwischen), which caused a strange mixture (das sonderbare Gemisch) of tears (das Weinen) and laughter (das Lachen). All is now calmer without your being less thought of. Henry daily proposes (ausbringen \*) your health affectionately (aus wahrer zärtlicher Liebe) at dinner. Your portrait is often taken down (herlangen) to be kissed all round (zum Küssen herumbiegen \*); if this sentimental scene is not shortly put an end to (aufhören), your picture will resemble that of John Huss in the church of Constance.

How pleased I am to perceive the delight (wie sehr freut mich das lebhafteste Vergnügen) with which you mention the pictures you saw at Augsburg and at Munich. I recognise that real enthusiasm (der Enthusiasmus) for the arts, which, gradually more and more developed (immer mehr belebt) by (the works of) the great masters, will make the happiness of your life. I should never have more enjoyed seeing you than on your entering for the first time (der erste Eintritt) the gallery of Schleissheim.

Whatever charms the works of the first masters may possess in your eyes (so sehr Dich die Kunst großer Meister entzückt), never allow yourself to be fascinated so as to neglect nature (so laß Dich doch nie von der Natur ablocken). Study in each (artist) the best manner of best expressing her beauty (worin er jene am glücklichsten erreicht hat), and always return to her (wieder zu ihr selbst zurückkehren). You run the chance of becoming a mannerist by attaching yourself too exclusively to such or such a master (zu viel Anhänglichkeit an diesen oder jenen gibt immer zu viel Manier), and this you will perceive to be true (den Beweis davon) when you go to Dresden. You will find that the pictures there (an verschiedenen) have more of the manner of Dietrich, than a resemblance to nature (immer mehr nach D. als nach der Natur riechen). Never forget, my dear son, never lose sight for a day (keinen Tag, keine Stunde), of the fact that the first years of your studies, if properly employed (wohl zugebracht), will lay the foundation of your happiness in life (das Glück Deines Lebens ausmachen); for it is by improving them as you ought that you will become (und daß es von diesen abhängt, es dahin zu bringen) some day your country's and your father's pride (daß—auf Dich stolz seyn dürfen). Be happy and keep well your affectionate (Dein Dich zärtlich liebender) father.

PORTRAIT (Charakterſchilderung) OF WALLENSTEIN,  
extracted from "the thirty years' war" by Schiller.

Nothing was farther from Wallenstein's mind than the thought of repose, when he returned to the silence of private life (der Privatſtand). He was surrounded (umgeben\*) in his solitude (die Einſamkeit) by the pomp of a king, which seemed to bid defiance to the decree of his humiliation (dem Urtheilsſpruch ſeiner Erniedrigung Hohn zu ſprechen). Six gates (die Pforte) led to the palace which he inhabited at Prague, and a hundred houses were thrown down (mußten niedergeriſſen werden) to make room for the court yard of the castle (um dem Schloßhofe Raum zu machen). Similar palaces were erected in (auf) his numerous domains (das Gut). Gentlemen (der Kavalier) of the noblest families vied with each other for the honour (um Etwas wetteifern) of serving him, and imperial chamberlains (der kaiſerliche Kammerherr) were seen to resign the golden key to fill (bekleiden) the same office near Wallenstein. He kept sixty pages, educated by the best masters; fifty trabants (der Trabant) kept guard in (bewachen) his anti-room (das Vorzimmer). He had never less than a hundred guests at his table (ſeine Tafel zählte nie unter hundert Gäſten), and his steward (der Haushofmeiſter) was a man of the first quality (die vornehme Standesperſon). When he travelled (reiſte er über Land) a hundred carriages with four or six horses conveyed his suite and baggage (ſo wurde ihm ſein Geräth und Gefolge auf hundert vier- und ſechſpännigen Wägen nachgefahren); his court followed (folgte ihm) in sixty carriages (die Karoſſe) accompanied by (mit) fifty led horses (das Handpferd). The richness (die Pracht) of his liveries (die Liverei), the splendour (der Glanz) of his equipages (die Equipage), and the elegance (der Schmuck) of his apartments correſponded (gemäß ſeyn\*) to this style of magnificence (der übrige Aufwand). Six barons and as many knights (der Ritter) were in constant attendance on his person (ſeine Perſon umgeben\*) to obey his every bidding (jeden Wink vollziehen\*). Twelve patrols

(die Patrouille) took their rounds (die Runde machen) about the castle, to prevent the slightest noise (um jeden Lärm abzuhalten). Silence was necessary to his ever-active brain (sein immer arbeitender Kopf brauchte—). No noise (das Geräusch) of carriages was allowed to approach (nahe kommen dürfen\*) his habitation, and it often happened that (nicht selten) the streets were closed (sperrten) with chains. His company (der Umgang) was as silent (stumm) as the avenues which led to him (der Zugang). Taciturn (verschlossen), dark, and impenetrable (unergründlich), he was more saving (sparsam) of his words than profuse of gold (als seine Geschenke), and he spoke the few words which he uttered (das Wenige, was er sprach) in a forbidding tone (mit einem widrigen Tone ausstoßen\*). He never laughed; and the coldness of his temperament resisted the fascinations of pleasure (den Verführungen der Sinne widerstand die Kälte seines Bluts). Always employed and engrossed (bewegt) by vast enterprises (der große Entwurf), he denied himself (entsagen) all the vain dissipations (die leere Zerstreuung) in the midst of which (wodurch) others spend a valuable existence (das kostbare Leben vergeuden). He kept up (besorgen) himself a correspondence which extended all over Europe (der durch ganz Europa verbreitete Briefwechsel), and wrote the greater part of his memoirs (der Aufsatz) with his own hand, that he might trust as little as possible to the discretion of others. He was tall (von großer Statur) and thin, of a yellowish complexion (gelblicher Gesichtsfarbe); his hair was short and red, his eyes were small and brilliant (funkelnd). On his brow (die Stirn) sat a fearful austerity (ein furchtbarer, zurückschreckender Ernst), and nothing but the excess (das Uebermaß) of his rewards could keep round him (festhalten\*) his trembling crowd of followers (die Schaar seiner Diener).

In this pompous (prahlerisch) obscurity, Wallenstein, ever active, silently awaited (erwartete W. still, doch nicht müßig) his return to splendour, and the coming day of vengeance (seine glänzende Stunde und der Rache aufgehenden Tag). The rapid victories of Gustavus Adolphus (Gustav Adolph's reißender Siegeslauf) soon gave him a

presentiment of its dawn (das Vorgefühl desselben genießen lassen\*). He gave up none of his audacious plans. The ingratitude of the emperor had freed (befreien) his ambition (der Ehrgeiz) from a hateful bondage (der lästige Zügel). The dazzling brilliancy (der blendende Schimmer) of his private life (das Privatleben) betrayed (verrathen\*) the proud flight (der stolze Schwung) of his designs; and prodigal (verschwenderisch) as a monarch, he seemed already to reckon among his possessions (die Besizung) the objects (die Güter) of his hopes.

---

## HUNDRED AND TWELFTH LESSON. — Hundert und zwölfte Section.

### 8. THE CONJUNCTION, das Bindewort.

Conjunctions are so called because they serve to connect words and sentences, and to bring them into a certain relation with each other. Ex. Die Freude und der Schmerz, joy *and* sorrow; Du oder ich, thou *or* I; wenn es morgen schönes Wetter ist, so gehen wir auf's Land, *if* it is fine to-morrow, we shall go to the country. Here the words: und, *and*; oder, *or*; wenn, *if*; so, *then*; are conjunctions.

With regard to their etymology conjunctions are:

1. Radical words, such as: als, *as*; denn, *for*; weil, *because*; wie, *as*; wenn, *if*.

2. Words derived from others, such as: endlich, *at last*, derived from das Ende, *the end*; bevor, *before*, derived from vor, *before*; übrigens, *as for the rest*, derived from übrig, *remaining*, which in its turn is derived from über, *over*.

3. Compound words, such as: vielmehr, *rather*, derived from viel, *much*, and mehr, *more*; obschon, *although*, derived from ob, *whether*, and schon, *already*; weshalb, *on which account*, derived from wessen, *genitive of the*

interrogative pronoun *wer*, who (Lesson XXXI.) and the preposition *halben*, on account of; *dessenungeachtet*, nevertheless, derived from *dessen*, genitive of the demonstrative pronoun *dieses* (*das*), this (Lesson LXII.), and the preposition *ungeachtet*, notwithstanding.

The conjunctions are divided into as many classes as their connection and relation are effected in different ways. There are accordingly:

1. Copulative conjunctions, *verbindende oder anfügende Bindewörter*. These serve to connect the different members of sentences, as: *und*, and; *auch*, also; *sogar*, even, &c.

2. Continuing conjunctions, *fortsetzende Bindewörter*. These mark the continuation of an argument, as: *erstlich*, firstly; *erstens*, in the first place; *zum ersten*, for the first; *zweitens*, secondly; *zum zweiten*, in the second place &c.; *ferner*, besides, furthermore; *endlich*, finally, &c.

3. Circumlocutory or circumscriptive conjunctions, *umschreibende Bindewörter*. There is but one conjunction of this kind in German, namely, *daß*, *that*. It points out the subject or object of the preceding proposition. A substantive may be substituted in this place. Ex. Instead of *ich höre, daß er krank ist*, I hear that he is ill, we may say: *ich höre von seiner Krankheit*, I hear of his illness; instead of, *es ist mir lieb, daß Sie an mich denken*, I am glad that you think of me, we may say: *Ihr Andenken an mich ist mir lieb*, your remembrance of me pleases me.

4. Explicative or declarative conjunctions, *erläuternde oder erklärende Bindewörter*. They explain the different members of a preceding phrase, such as: *als*, as; *nämlich*, namely, &c.

5. Conditional conjunctions, *bedingende Bindewörter*, so called, because they serve to indicate certain conditions, as: *wenn*, if; *sonst*, otherwise; *wo nicht*, if not; *falls*, in case, &c.

6. Causative conjunctions, *begründende Bindewörter*. They indicate the relation between the cause and the effect, as: *denn*, for; *weil*, because; *da*, since; *um zu*, in order to, &c.

7. Conclusive conjunctions, *folgernde Bindewörter*. Placed in the second member of a sentence, these conjunctions indicate the consequence of what is expressed in the first member, as: *also*, then; *folglich*, consequently; *daher*, therefore, for that reason, &c.

8. Temporal or consecutive conjunctions, *zeitdeutende oder zeitbestimmende Bindewörter*. They serve to indicate certain relations of time, as: *während*, *indem*, *indessen*, *whilst*; *ehe*, before (Lat. *prius quam*); *nachdem*, after (Lat. *post quam*), &c.

9. Proportional conjunctions, *Verhältniß bestimmende oder steigernde Bindewörter*. They present the two members of a sentence in equal proportion, as: *je—je* or *je—desto*, the—the (see Lesson CI.), &c.

10. Comparative conjunctions, *vergleichende Bindewörter*. They serve to compare two propositions, as: *wie* or *gleichwie—so*, *so wie—also*, *as—so* &c.

11. Disjunctive conjunctions, *zertheilende oder sondernde Bindewörter*. They present several propositions as members of a phrase, but which are mutually separated, as: *entweder—oder*, *either—or*. (See Lesson CI.)

12. Exclusive conjunctions, *ausschließende Bindewörter*. These reject or deny all the parts of a proposition, as: *weder—noch*, *neither—nor*. (Lesson CI.)

13. Exceptive conjunctions, *ausnehmende Bindewörter*. These mark an exception, as: *außer*, *ausgenommen*, *except*; *außer daß*, *except that*, &c.

14. Adversative conjunctions, *entgegensetzende Bindewörter*. These serve to unite propositions which are opposed to each other, as: *aber*, *allein*, *but*; *sondern*, *but*, *on the contrary*; *doch*, *jedoch*, *however*, *yet*, *nevertheless*, &c.

15. Restrictive conjunctions, einschränkende Bindewörter. These limit the sense of a proposition, as: wie fern, in wie fern, so fern, in so fern als, how far, so far as, inso-much as; je nach dem, according as; nur daß, only, &c.

16. Concessive conjunctions, einräumende oder zugebende Bindewörter. They are those which nullify the apparent opposition existing between two propositions, as: obgleich, ob schon, though; wenn gleich, wenn schon, though, although; zwar, indeed, it is so, allowing it. (Lesson CI.), &c.

17. Problematical conjunctions, zweifelhafte Bindewörter. The conjunction ob, whether, is called problematical, because it only indicates as possible the idea or event expressed in the proposition.

---

In the following Alphabetical List we have endeavoured to determine the use of German conjunctions by examples.

Aber, *but*. This conjunction may stand at the beginning as well as in the middle of a member of a sentence. Ex. 1. Adversative: ich suchte ihn, aber ich fand ihn nicht, I sought him but did not find him. 2. Copulative: aber so gern ich auch gewollt hätte, but however much I might have wished it; ich wünschte aber, daß es nicht geschähe, but I should wish that it might not happen.

Allein, *but*, adversative, only stands at the beginning of a member of a sentence. Ex. Ich hoffte es, allein ich fand mich getäuscht, I hoped it, but was disappointed in my expectation.

Als, *than, as, when*. Ex. 1. Comparative: sie ist eben so tugendhaft als schön, she is as virtuous as beautiful; besser spät als nie, better late than never; mehr oder weniger als tausend Mann, more or less than a thousand men; so viel als nöthig ist, as much as is necessary. 2. Explicative: die ganze Familie war zugegen, als: der Vater, die Mutter, die Kinder, u. s. w., the whole family

was present, as, the father, the mother, the children, &c.; er zeigte sich als einen fleißigen Schüler, he showed himself an assiduous pupil; er lebte und starb als ein rechtschaffener Mann, he lived and died as an honest man. 3. Restrictive: der österreichische Kaiser als König von Böhmen, the emperor of Austria as king of Bohemia. 4. Temporal or consecutive: als er ankam, war ich mit meiner Arbeit schon fertig, when he arrived I had finished my work; kaum hatte er das Wort gesprochen, als Jedermann ihn mit Fragen bestürmte, he had no sooner pronounced this word than every body began to question him.

*Obs.* In this latter signification als must not be mistaken for wenn, *when*, which denotes an indefinite time, whilst als expresses a definite time, as is shown by the above examples. (See wenn.)

Als daß, *not to, only that, except that*, causative Ex. Er ist zu billig, als daß er sein Wort nicht halten sollte, he is too just not to keep his word; er hat keinen andern Fehler, als daß er ein wenig träge ist, he has no other defect, except that of his being a little idle.

Als ob, als wenn, *as if*, explicative. Ex. Es sieht aus, als ob (als wenn) es regnen wollte, it looks as if it would rain; er stellt sich, als wenn er Sie nicht kannte, he pretends not to know you. (See Lesson XCVII.)

Also, *so, thus, therefore, consequently*. Ex. 1. Comparative: so wie der Fluß seine Wellen an Dir vorüberführt, also geht die Zeit mit ihren Stunden und Tagen hin, as a river rolls its waves before thy eyes, so time rolls on with its hours and days; also hat Gott die Welt geliebt, thus God loved the world. 2. Conclusive: Sie haben es einmal versprochen, also müssen Sie Wort halten, since you have promised it, you must keep your word; er erbte Alles, also auch das Haus, he inherited all, consequently the house also; es ist bald zwölf, wir müssen also gehen, it will soon be twelve o'clock, therefore we must go away.

Auch, *also, even*. Ex. 1. Copulative: er hat nicht allein

sein Geld, sondern auch seine Ehre verloren, he has not only lost his money, but also his honour. 2. Concessive: wenn ich auch Alles verlöre, even if I were to lose every thing.

Auf daß, *in order that*, causative, is only used in elevated style instead of damit. Ex. Auf daß es Euch wohl gehe, in order that you may be happy; ehre das Alter, auf daß (damit) Du lange lebest, honour old age, that you mayest live long.

Außer, *ausgenommen, except, but, save*, exceptive. This conjunction is always governed by the verb of the sentence. Ex. Es war Niemand da, außer er, there was nobody there, except he; er erinnerte sich aller Vorfälle, *ausgenommen dieses Umstandes*, he remembered all the events, except this circumstance; ich sage es Niemand außer Dir, I communicate it to nobody but to thee; ich habe keinen Freund außer Dich, I have no other friend but thee; er wird abreisen, außer wenn es regnet, he will set out, unless it rains; er ist gesund, außer (nur) daß er noch ein wenig hustet, he is very well, but that he coughs a little.

Bevor, *before*, consecutive. Ex. Bevor er die Stadt verließ, nahm er noch Abschied von allen seinen Freunden, before leaving the town, he took leave of all his friends; wir wollen dieses thun, bevor er ankommt, let us do that before he comes.

Bis, *until*, consecutive. Ex. Ich werde warten, bis er abgereist ist, I will wait until he shall be gone.

Da, *since, as*. Ex. 1. Causative: da er nicht aufmerksam ist, so wird er Nichts lernen, since he is not attentive he will learn nothing. 2. Adversative: da einer genug wäre, kommen ihrer sechs, whilst one would have been enough, six come; Du zerstreuest Dich, da Du doch arbeiten solltest, thou divertest thyself, whilst on the contrary thou oughtest to work.

Daher, *therefore, thence*, conclusive. Ex. Sie schrieben nicht, daher glaubte ich, Sie wären krank, you did not

write, I therefore thought you were ill; daher hoffe ich  
or ich hoffe daher, I therefore hope.

Damit, *in order that*, causative. Ex. Ich sage es Dir,  
damit Du siehst, daß ich Dich liebe, I tell it thee, in  
order that thou mayest see that I love thee; ich warne  
Sie, damit Sie sich in Acht nehmen, I warn you, that  
you may be on your guard.

Dann (must not be mistaken for denn), *then*. Ex.  
1. Temporal: wenn der Herbst kommt, dann sollst Du an-  
fangen, when the autumn is come, thou shalt begin;  
erst ich, dann Du, first I, then thou. 2. Conditional:  
wenn Du fleißig bist, dann sollst Du ein schönes Buch be-  
kommen, if thou art industrious thou shalt have a fine  
book.

Darum, *on that account, for that reason, therefore*,  
causative. Ex. Ich liebe Dich, darum mache ich Dich auf  
Deine Fehler aufmerksam, I love thee, for that reason I  
remind thee of thy defects; er wiederholte immer, er habe  
darum nicht aufgehört, König zu seyn, weil er ein Gefan-  
gener sey, he repeated continually, that though a prisoner  
he had not ceased to be a king.

Daß, *that*. Ex. 1. Circumlocutory: ich sehe, daß Sie  
mein Freund sind, I see that you are my friend; nehmen  
Sie sich in Acht, daß Sie nicht fallen, take care not to  
fall. 2. Causative: mache es so, daß man Dich loben kann,  
do it in such a manner that you may be praiseworthy;  
ich habe es nicht verdient, daß man so mit mir verfährt, I  
have not deserved to be dealt with in such a manner.  
3. Conditional: ich thue dies mit der Bedingung, daß Du  
Wort hältst, I do this on condition of thy keeping thy  
word.

*Obs. A.* Sometimes the conjunction daß begins sen-  
tences the first member of which has been omitted. Ex.  
Daß ich es nicht eher gethan habe! why have I not done  
it sooner! (ich bereue, I regret, being understood); daß  
es Dir immer recht wohl gehen möge! mayest thou always  
be happy! (ich wünsche, I wish, being understood.)

*Obs. B.* The use of this conjunction is much more frequent in German than in English. It is required in many accessory sentences where the English use the infinitive or the present participle taken substantively. Ex. I know you *to be* my friend, ich weiß, daß Sie mein Freund sind. I am sure of his *having* done it, ich bin gewiß, daß er es gethan hat. He has lost his fortune by *trusting* too much to others, er hat dadurch sein Vermögen verloren, daß er Andern zu viel traute. Your *flattering* his vanity gives his parents much pain, daß Sie seiner Eitelkeit schmeicheln, betrübt seine Eltern sehr. (For the omission of the conjunction daß, see *Obs. C.* Lesson CI.)

Denn, *for, because.* Ex. 1. Causative: er wird schnelle Fortschritte machen, denn er ist sehr fleißig, he will make rapid progress, for he is very industrious. 2. Conclusive with *so, thus*: so bleibt es denn dabei, it is then agreed on. 3. Comparative, but only after a comparative, instead of *als, than*: wer ist mächtiger denn Gott? who is more powerful than God? fleißiger denn (better als) seine Brüder, more industrious than his brothers. 4. Conditional: es sey denn, daß er es leugne, unless it be that he should deny it; ich werde nicht ausgehen, es sey denn, daß die Noth mich zwänge, I shall not go out, unless compelled by necessity. 5. It is often used by way of amplification, in which case it has no determined signification (see *Obs. A.* Lesson XCIII.) as: was willst Du denn? for what then dost thou wish? wo hast Du denn Deinen Verstand? what then has become of thy wits?

Dennoch, *notwithstanding, nevertheless, still,* is formed of dann and auch, adversative: es sind Märchen, und dennoch glaubt man sie, they are fables, and nevertheless they are believed in.

Desto, which in English is expressed by the definite article, stands always before a comparative, and is proportional: sey aufrichtig, damit ich Dir desto gewisser glauben kann, be sincere, that I may *the* more surely believe thee; je aufrichtiger er ist, desto glaubwürdiger ist er, *the* more sincere he is, *the* more he is worthy of belief;

je mehr er hat, desto mehr will er haben, *the more he has the more he wishes to have.* (See Lesson CI)

Doch, *still, yet, nevertheless, however, but.* Ex. 1. Adversative, like dennoch: es sey übrigens hiermit, wie es wolle, so muß ich es doch (or dennoch) thun, be that as it may, I must still do it. 2. Conditional; ich will es Dir sagen, doch mußt Du mir versprechen, u. s. w. I will tell you, but you must promise me, &c. 3. Conclusive: auf diese Art weiß man doch, woran man ist, in this manner one knows at least how to act. 4. This conjunction is often used to strengthen an affirmation, a negation, a request, a complaint, a wish, &c, and may be rendered in English by *a) to be sure, certainly, indeed.* Ex. Sind Sie gestern nicht im Concert gewesen? Doch, ich war da! Were you not at the concert yesterday? To be sure I was. Es ist doch gar zu traurig! it is indeed too sad! *b) somehow.* Ex. Ich fand mich doch bald wieder, I somehow soon found my way. *c) I hope.* Es ist doch wohl nichts Böses, it is nothing bad, I hope. *d) with the affirmative ja, yes: by all means, e. g.* Ja doch, I tell you yes. *e) with the negative nicht, not: by no means, e. g.* Nicht doch, nein doch, I tell you no. 5. After an imperative it answers to the English *pray.* Ex. Sagen Sie mir doch, pray tell me. Seyen Sie doch so gut, pray, be so good. Laß mich doch in Ruhe! pray, leave me alone! So höre doch! pray, (or but) listen!

Ehe, *before,* which must not be mistaken for eher, comparative of bald (Lesson XLI.), is consecutive. Ex. Wir wollen ausgehen, ehe er ankommt, let us go out before he arrives; ehe er fortging, sagte er mir, before going away he told me.

Entweder, *either,* always followed by oder, or, in the second member of the phrase, is disjunctive. Ex. Entweder Du oder ich, either thou or I; alle lebendige Geschöpfe sind entweder Menschen oder Thiere, all living creatures are either men or animals. (See Lesson CI.)

Falls, im Falle daß, *in case that,* conditional: falls er kommen sollte, sagen Sie ihm, in case he should come, tell him.

Ferner, *farther, moreover*, continuing: ferner sprach er, moreover he said; ferner will ich hinzufügen, furthermore I have to add; es folgt ferner daraus, further, there is to be concluded from it.

Folglich, *consequently*, conclusive: ich war dabei, folglich bin ich davon unterrichtet, I was there, consequently I am informed of it.

Hingegen or dagegen, *on the other hand*, adversative: Bescheidenheit macht beliebt, dagegen (oder hingegen) Stolz verhaßt, modesty makes one beloved; pride, on the contrary, renders one odious; die Tugend ist liebenswürdig, hingegen ist das Laster (oder: das Laster hingegen ist) hasenswerth, virtue is amiable; vice, on the other hand, is hateful.

Indem, *while, as, since*. Ex. 1. Temporal: indem er das sagte, verließ er das Zimmer, while he was saying this (in saying this), he left the room; indem ich von Ihnen spreche, bringt man mir Ihren Brief, as I am speaking of you they bring me your letter. 2. Causative (in which sense weil is to be preferred): ich muß Sie um etwas mehr Geld bitten, indem ich mit dem empfangenen nicht ausreiche, I must ask you for a little more money, that which I received not being sufficient.

Indeß (indessen or unterdessen) *in the meanwhile, while, however, yet*. Ex. 1. Temporal: indeß ich mit ihm sprach, while I was speaking to him; lernen Sie indessen Ihre Lektion, learn your lesson in the meanwhile; indeß mancher Arme in Thränen schwimmt, schwelgt mancher Reiche im Ueberfluß, while many a poor man bathes himself in tears, many a rich man swims in abundance. 2. Restrictive: Ihr Verlust ist sehr groß, indessen ist er noch nicht unerseßlich, your loss is very great, yet it is not irreparable.

Je, *as, the*. Ex. 1. Explicative, with nachdem, according as: Sie können es thun oder lassen, je nachdem es Ihnen beliebt, you may do it or not, according as it pleases you; je nachdem die Umstände sind, according to circumstances. 2. Proportional, with je or desto: je edler seine Handlung

ist, je mehr verdient er unser Lob, or else, er verdient desto mehr unser Lob, je edler seine Handlung ist, the more noble his action is, the more he deserves our praise. (See Lesson CI.)

Kaum, *scarce*, consecutive: Kaum war die Sonne aufgegangen, so machten wir uns schon auf den Weg, scarcely had the sun risen when we set out.

Kaum waren die Letzten in sicherem Port,  
So rollte das letzte Getrümmer fort. (Bürger.)

Hardly were the last of them beyond the reach of  
danger,

When the last fragment was carried away.

Er war kaum von seiner Reise zurückgekommen, als er schon zu mir kam, scarce had he returned from his journey, when he came to see me.

Mithin, *consequently*, conclusive, like folglich: er ist zufrieden, mithin glücklich, he is satisfied, consequently happy.

Nachdem, *after*, temporal, is generally joined to the pluperfect of the indicative: nachdem er das gesagt hatte, ging er weg, after he had said that (after having said that), he went away.

Nämlich, *namely* (Lat. *videlicet*, viz.) explicative: es darf Keiner sonst zu ihm kommen, nämlich kein Fremder, no one else is permitted to go to see him, namely no stranger; es waren viele hohe Personen da, nämlich der Fürst B., der Graf von C., u. s. w., many high personages were there, viz. Prince B., Count C., &c.

Namentlich, *particularly*, explicative: einige Schüler machen mir viel Freude, namentlich die, welche fleißig sind, some pupils give me great pleasure, particularly those who are industrious.

Nicht allein or nicht nur, *not only*, copulative, has sondern auch in the second member of the sentence: nicht allein (nur) Sie, sondern auch Ihre Freunde, not only you, but your friends also. (See Lesson CI.)

Noch, *nor*, exclusive: weder Sie, noch ich, noch unser Freund, neither you, nor I, nor our friend. (See Lesson CI.)

Nun, *then, now*. Ex. 1. Conclusive: willst Du nicht hören, nun so magst Du fühlen, since thou wilt not listen, thou mayest then feel; um nun auf das zurückzukommen, was wir sagten, in order to return now to what we said. 2. Causative: ich habe ihn immer geliebt; nun ich aber sehe, daß er meine Liebe mißbraucht, hat sie ein Ende, I have always loved him; now, as I see that he abuses my friendship, it is at an end.

Nur, *only*. Ex. 1. Restrictive: es kostet nur einen Thaler, it costs only a crown; nur durch ausdauernden Fleiß überwindet man Hindernisse, obstacles can only be surmounted by persevering application. 2. Conditional: wie Sie befehlen, nur daß Sie mich nicht mißverstehen, as you command, provided you do not misunderstand me.

Ob, *whether*, as we have already observed, is problematical: ich weiß nicht, ob er kommen wird, I do not know whether he will come; fragen Sie ihn, ob er mich heute besuchen will, ask him whether he will call on me to-day; ich wußte nicht, ob es Dir lieb seyn würde, I did not know whether you would be glad of it. (See *Obs. G.* Lesson XCIII.)

Obgleich, ob schon, obwohl (better than wiewohl, obzwar), *though, although*, are concessive and require the word doch or so in the second member of the phrase; they can equally begin the second member of the phrase. These conjunctions are generally separated, and when the subject or case of the verb is a personal pronoun it is placed between them. Ex. Ob ich gleich sonst zufrieden bin, though I am otherwise content; obgleich arm, ist er doch zufrieden, though poor, he is nevertheless content; ich weiß es, obgleich Keiner von Euch mich davon benachrichtigt hat, I know it, although none of you have told me of it. (See *Obs. H.* Lesson XCIII.)

Oder, *or*. Ex. 1. Disjunctive, particularly when preceded by entweder (see that conjunction): dies oder

jenes, this or that; entweder ich oder meine Schwester, either I or my sister. 2. Explicative: nicht alle Menschen können Herren seyn oder Andern befehlen, all men cannot be masters, or command others.

Seitdem, *since, from the time that*, temporal: seitdem er abgereist ist, since he has set out.

So, *so, thus*, serves to connect the subsequent member of a phrase, with the foregoing when it begins with a conjunction. (See *Rule of Syntax B. Lesson LXXXIII.* and *Obs. Lesson LXXXVIII.*) So may in this case be omitted when the antecedent is not very long. Ex. Da er nicht kam, (so) ließ ich ihn rufen, as he did not come, I sent for him. It is also employed in the first member of a phrase where it is. 1. Comparative: er ist so gut wie Du, he is as good as thou; es gibt Insekten, die so klein sind, daß man sie kaum sieht, there are insects which are so minute that one can hardly see them. 2. Conditional, but seldom: so Gott will, if God please, or Please God. 3. Conclusive, for also, then, but generally with denn: so ist es denn beschlossen, it is then resolved upon; so ist es denn wahr, it is then true. 4. Concessive: so gern ich Ihnen helfen wollte, so unmöglich ist es mir, however willing I should be to assist you, it is impossible. 5. Restrictive: so viel ich weiß, ist er ein guter Mann, for aught I know, he is a good man.

So wie or gleich wie, *as*, comparative, is followed by so or also, *so*. Ex. Gleich wie das Leben angenehm ist den Glücklichen, so ist der Tod den Unglücklichen willkommen, as life is agreeable to the happy, so death is welcome to the unhappy.

Sowohl, *as well*, copulative, is followed by als, as: er kann sowohl sprechen, als lesen und schreiben, he knows how to speak, as well as to read and write; die Mutter sowohl, als die Tochter, the mother as well as the daughter; sowohl der Bruder als die Schwester, the brother as well as the sister.

Sondern, *but*. Ex. 1. Adversative: nicht Du, sondern Dein Bruder, not thou, but thy brother. 2. Copulative,

preceded by nicht nur or nicht allein, not only, and followed by auch: nicht nur seine Faulheit, sondern auch seine Unbescheidenheit macht ihn verächtlich, not only his idleness, but also his indiscretion makes him contemptible.

Sonst, *else, otherwise*, causative: mache Deine Arbeiten, sonst wirst Du bestraft, do thy task, else thou wilt be punished.

Theils—theils, *partly—partly*, copulative, or rather partitive: theils sein Fleiß, theils seine Bescheidenheit, theils sein gutes Betragen überhaupt gewannen ihm Achtung und Liebe, he gained esteem and friendship by his industry as well as by his modesty and good conduct.

Um—zu, *in order to*, causative: Du bist hier, um zu lernen, thou art here in order to learn; er ist zu edel, um sich zu rächen, he is too noble to revenge himself.

*Obs.* Um may in the second member of the phrase sometimes be omitted, and zu alone used before the infinitive, when the member of the phrase is not of a certain length; but it must never be omitted when a double meaning may be the result of its omission. Ex. Hat Ihr Bruder ein Messer, um sein Brod zu schneiden? has your brother a knife to cut his bread? Er hat eins, um es zu schneiden, he has one to cut it; sie sind ausgegangen, (um) die Löwen zu sehen, they went out to see the lions. (See Lesson XXX.) In the following phrase it would be wrong to omit it: wir dachten gar nicht daran, um uns den Genuß nicht zu verderben, we did not think of it, in order not to spoil our pleasure.

Und, *and*, copulative: der Himmel und die Erde, heaven and earth; meine Schüler sind aufmerksam und fleißig, my scholars are attentive and industrious; geht und sagt ihm, go and tell him.

Ungeachtet, *although*, is often used instead of obgleich (see this conjunction), concessive: er that es, ungeachtet ich es ihm verboten hatte, he did it, although I had forbidden it him.

Vielmehr, *much more, rather*, and viel weniger, *much less*, adversative: er kann es, wie vielmehr Du, he can

do it, much more canst thou; er kann es nicht, wie viel weniger Du, he cannot do it, much less thou.

Während, *while, during the time that*, temporal: während er von seinen guten Kindern sprach, ging ich weg, whilst he was speaking of his good children I went away.

Weder, *nor*, exclusive, requires noch in the subsequent member of the phrase: weder sie, noch ihre Schwester, neither she nor her sister; es ist weder warm noch kalt, it is neither warm nor cold. (See Lesson CI.)

Weil, *because*, causative, may stand in the first as well as the subsequent member of the phrase: weil Du nicht recht hörst, so kannst Du nichts lernen, or: Du kannst nichts lernen, weil Du nicht recht hörst, thou canst learn nothing, because thou dost not listen well.

Wenn, *if, when*, must not be mistaken for the interrogative adverb wann? when? (See Lesson LXXIII. *Obs. A.*) Ex. 1. Conditional: wenn Du warten willst, dann sollst Du es bekommen, or: Du sollst es bekommen, wenn Du warten willst, if thou wilt wait, thou shalt have it; sage mir's, wenn Du kommen willst, if thou wilt come, tell me. 2. Concessive, with gleich, auch, schon, and followed by so—doch: wenn er auch den Streit nicht angefangen hat, so hat er ihn doch unterhalten, if he did not commence the quarrel, he has at least kept it up. 3. Comparative, with als: er stellte sich, als wenn er von der ganzen Sache nichts wüßte, he pretended to know nothing of the whole affair. 4. Temporal, in which signification it must not be mistaken for als, which expresses a definite time, whilst wenn denotes time in the most indefinite manner. Ex. With als: Waren Sie zu Berlin, als der König da war? were you at Berlin when the king was there? Ich war da, als er da war, I was there when he was there. Wo waren Sie, als ich zu Dresden war? where were you when I was at Dresden? Ex. With wenn: Arbeitete Ihr Bruder, wenn Sie arbeiteten? did your brother work when you were working?

Er spielte, wenn ich arbeitete, he played when I was working. (See Lesson LXI.)

*Obs.* Wenn must never be used in indirect questions for ob, whether. (See this conjunction and *Obs. G.* Lesson XCIII.)

Wie, *as, how.* Ex. 1. Comparative: wie der Anfang, so das Ende, as the beginning, so the end; er hat eben so geendigt, wie er anfing, he has ended as he began. 2. Causative: ich wundere mich, wie Du das hast thun können, I wonder how you could do that.

*Obs.* Attention should be paid not to mistake wie for als which expresses conformity, identity, or existence, whilst wie denotes resemblance. Ex. Socrates blühte als Jüngling wie eine Rose, lehrte als Mann wie ein Engel, und starb als Greis wie ein Verbrecher, Socrates bloomed when a youth like a rose, taught when a man like an angel, and died when an old man as a criminal.

Wiewohl, see Obgleich.

Wo, *if*, is conditional, but the conjunction wenn ought to be preferred, unless immediately followed by a negation; for in this case wo is generally employed, as: wo nicht, if not. Ex. Wo Du Dich so Etwas unterstehst, so sollst Du es bereuen, if thou darest do such a thing thou shalt repent it. Wenn Du mir helfen willst, so soll es mir sehr lieb seyn; wo nicht, so werde ich allein fertig zu werden suchen, if thou wilt assist me, it will give me pleasure; if not, I shall endeavour to finish alone.

Wosern (better than dafern), *if, in case that*, is conditional and equivalent to wenn. Ex. Ich will Ihnen das Buch leihen, wosern Sie mir versprechen, es in Acht zu nehmen, I am willing to lend you the book, if you promise me to take care of it.

Wohl, *indeed, perhaps* (Latin. *quidem*), is concessive in familiar style, and equivalent to zwar, *indeed*; but seldom stands at the head of a proposition. Ich weiß wohl, daß Sie mir gut sind; aber kaum bin ich Ihnen aus den Augen, so vergessen Sie meiner, I indeed know that

you like me, but I am no sooner out of your sight, but you forget me.

Wohl hört man die Brandung, wohl kehrt sie zurück,  
Es rauschen die Wasser auf und nieder, —  
(Doch) den Jüngling bringt keines wieder.

(Schiller.)

It is true they hear the roaring of the wave and see  
it return,

The waters roll up and down,  
(But) no wave brings back the youth.

Zumal, *especially, chiefly*, followed by *da* is explicative. Ex. Sie werden nicht viel lernen, zumal da Sie oft Ihre Stunden versäumen, you will not learn much, especially as you often neglect your lessons.

Zwar, *indeed, it is so, allowing it*, is concessive in the antecedent member of a sentence, the subsequent member of which begins with one of the conjunctions: *aber, allein, doch, hingegen, nichts desto weniger*. Ex. Zwar ist er noch jung, aber er hat auch noch viel zu lernen, he is still young, it is true, but he has yet a great deal to learn; zwar kenne ich ihn noch nicht genau, doch scheint er mir Vertrauen zu verdienen, I do not know him well yet, it is true; but he appears to me to deserve confidence.

### OBSERVATIONS.

A. It has not escaped the learner's observation in the above list that there are many conjunctions which always stand at the head of a member of a phrase, such as: *daß, that; denn, for; nachdem, after; oder, or; und, and; weil, because; wenn, if, &c.*; and others which are always placed after one or more words, such as: *auch, meaning even; denn, signifying consequently, &c.*; and others again which are indifferently placed either at the head of a member of a phrase, or after one or more words, such as: *aber, but; also, then; auch, also; daher, therefore; doch, however; dennoch, notwithstanding; ent-*

weber, either; faum, scarce; zwar, indeed, &c. Let us in addition remark what follows.

It has been seen (Lesson XLIX.) that a conjunction placed at the head of a member of a phrase throws the verb to the end of the sentence (except the conjunctions mentioned Lesson LXIII. which leave the verb in its place immediately after the subject). That conjunction has the same power over the ensuing members of the phrase, when it is not repeated but understood. Ex. Wenn er mich liebte und mein Wohl aufrichtig wünschte, würde er sich anders aufführen, if he loved me, and sincerely wished my welfare, he would behave differently.

Weil Du beständig müßig gehst, immer spielst, Nichts thust, stets zerstreut bist, so kannst Du auch Nichts lernen, as thou art constantly idle, always playing, doing nothing, ever absent, it is impossible that thou shouldst learn any thing.

Da Sie ihn kennen und für ihn gut stehen, since you know him and are responsible for him.

Wenn Ihr Freund hier wäre und mich besuchen wollte, if your friend were here and would call upon me.

Da diese Sache öffentlich und besonders Ihnen bekannt ist, this affair being publicly known and since you are particularly acquainted with it.

*B.* But there are many conjunctions which must be considered as adverbs, as they do not throw the verb to the end of the sentence, but make on the contrary the nominative, or subject, go after its verb. (See transposition of the subject after its verb, *No. 8.* Lesson CV.) They are the following:

Also, *then, therefore.* Ex. Die Tugend ist liebenswürdig, also müssen wir sie lieben, virtue is amiable, we must therefore love it.

Auch, *also.* Ex. Auch sagte er das nicht, nor did he say that.

Dann or alsdann, *then.* Ex. Er kleidet sich an, dann

(or alsdann) verrichtet er sein Gebet und geht aus, he dresses, then says his prayers and goes out.

Doch, *however*. Ex. Ich bat ihn darum, doch that er es nicht, I begged him to do it, however he did not.

Endlich, *at last*. Ex. Er wurde lange verfolgt, endlich triumphirte er über seine Feinde, he was persecuted for a long time, at last he triumphed over his enemies.

Folglich, *consequently*. Ex. Sie sind unsere Vorgesetzten, folglich sind wir ihnen Gehorsam schuldig, they are our superiors, consequently we owe them obedience.

Hingegen or dagegen, *on the other hand, but*. Ex. Er verdient viel, hingegen (or dagegen) gibt er auch viel aus, he earns much, but he also spends a good deal.

Indessen, *in the mean while*. Ex. Indessen verbleibe ich Ihr Sie liebender Freund (at the conclusion of a letter), in the mean while, I remain your affectionate friend.

Raum, *scarce* (forms also an inversion in English). Ex. Raum hatte er das Wort gesprochen, als u. s. w., scarcely had he pronounced the word, when, &c.

Nachher or hernach, *afterwards, after that*. Ex. Er frühstückte, hernach (nachher) las er Etwas und ging spazieren, he breakfasted, after that he read something, and took a walk.

Nichts desto weniger, *nevertheless*. Ex. Ich verbot es ihm, nichts desto weniger that er es, I forbade it him, nevertheless he did it.

So, *so, thus, then*. Ex. Wenn man gelehrt werden will, so muß man sich viel Mühe geben, if we wish to become learned we must take much pains.

Ueberdieß or außerdem, *besides*. Ex. Er hat Talente, ueberdieß ist er sehr gelehrig, he has endowments, and besides he is very docile.

Uebrigens, *as for the rest, however*. Ex. Uebrigens ist sein Werk nur für diejenigen geschrieben, welche schon

eine vollkommene Kenntniß der Sprache besitzen, as for the rest, his work is only good for those who have already acquired a perfect knowledge of the language.

Und doch, *and notwithstanding*. Ex. Alle loben die Tugend, und doch üben sie Wenige aus, all men praise virtue, and nevertheless few practise it.

Zwar, *indeed, it is true*. Ex. Zwar versprach er es mir, doch weiß ich nicht, ob er Wort halten wird, it is true he promised it me, however I do not know whether he will keep his word.

C. It has been seen, Lesson CI., that the conjunction daß may be omitted. This omission may particularly take place after verbs expressing hope, wish, or fear. (See the Examples, Lesson CI.) But the conjunction *that* is not always translated by daß. It is rendered

a) by damit. Ex.

He does his duty only *that* he Er thut seine Schuldigkeit nur, may be praised. damit er gelobt werde.

b) by um zu. Ex.

*That* I may be brief. Um mich kurz zu fassen.

c) by weil. Ex.

Not *that* I love you less. Nicht weil ich Sie weniger liebe.

D. In the following expressions the German conjunction daß is not expressed in English:

I saw it would come to that. Ich sah, daß es dazu kommen würde.

I see he comes. Ich sehe, daß er kommt.

Without our knowing. Ohne daß wir wissen.

Mercy! Daß Gott erbarm'!

In the following, and a good many other expressions (which see in Lesson LXVII) it is rendered by *since*:

It is scarcely an hour *since* I Es ist kaum eine Stunde, daß ich saw him. ihn gesehen habe.

EXERCISES. 293.

PTOLEMY.

The Athenians had thrown down (umwerfen\*) the statues (die Bildsäule) of Ptolemy. "Let them destroy them (sie mögen es immerhin)," said he; "for they will not destroy the virtues which caused them (um derentwillen) to be erected (errichten)." (WAGENSEIL.)

294.

THE PRIESTESS (die Priesterin) THEANO.

When the Athenians had condemned Alcibiades to death (Jemanden zum Tode verdammen), all his goods (seine sämtlichen Güter) were confiscated (einziehen\*), and the priests and priestesses received the order (Jemandem auferlegen) to curse him (Jemandem fluchen). Among the latter, one was found named (mit Namen) Theano, who alone had the courage to resist the order (sich dem Befehle zu widersetzen), saying that she was a priestess to bless and not to curse. (PFEFFEL)

295.

ALEXANDER AND THE PIRATE (der Seeräuber).

It is said that Alexander (A. soll einst) was loading with reproaches a pirate (Jemandem sehr harte Berweise geben\*) who had fallen into his hands (Jemanden gefangen nehmen\*). At length the pirate said: "My trade (das Geschäft) appears to you very odious (verhaßt); and yet yours is no better than mine (es selbst nicht besser machen als ich). You traverse (durchstreichen\*) the seas with a large fleet, and are called (Jemanden nennen\*) a king and a conqueror (der Eroberer); I have but a small vessel (das Fahrzeug), and am called a pirate." (WAGENSEIL.)

296.

SOCRATES.

Socrates, the most virtuous man of heathen antiquity (der tugendhafteste von allen Heiden) was accused of im-

piety (als ein Gottesverächter angeflagt werden\*), and sacrificed (aufopfern) to the fury (die Wuth) of envy and fanaticism (die Schwärmerci). When he heard that the Athenians had condemned him to death (zum Tode verurtheilen\*) he said with his usual composure (die gewöhnliche Ruhe): "Nature has condemned them also to die (und sie hat die Natur dazu verurtheilt)." "But," exclaimed his wife, "you do not deserve such a fate (man thut Dir Unrecht)!" He answered: "Would you prefer (wolltest Du) that I should have deserved it (Jemandem Recht geschehen)?" (PFEFFEL.)

297.

### PERICLES.

In a sea-expedition, Pericles remarked <sup>1</sup> that his pilot (der Steuermann seines Schiffes), alarmed by an eclipse of the sun, was violently agitated (wegen einer Sonnenfinsterniß in die größte Bestürzung gerathen\*). Pericles threw his cloak over the man's eyes, and asked him if there were anything wonderful (etwas Außerordentliches) in what he had just done (an dieser Handlung). "No," answered the pilot, "I see nothing to wonder at (gar nichts Wunderbares)." "Well then!" said the Athenian general, "that is all that (das Nämliche) has happened (begegnet) to the sun." (THE SAME.)

298.

### THE WIFE (die Gattin) OF GROTIUS.

The illustrious (berühmt) Grotius, condemned to perpetual imprisonment (die lebenslängliche Gefangenschaft) was confined (verwahren) in the castle of Löwenstein, where he had endured great hardships for a year and a half (anderthalb Jahre begegnete man ihm daselbst mit vieler Härte). His wife, however, was allowed (Jemandem vergönnt seyn\*) to see him as often as she liked, and to bring him the linen he wanted (und mit der nöthigen Wäsche zu versehen).

<sup>1</sup> Translate: Pericles found himself once on the sea, and remarked.

The courageous (entschlossen) and prudent woman had more than once (öfters) remarked that the guards (der Wächter) omitted to examine (die Untersuchung vernachlässigen) a large trunk (die Kiste) in which the linen for the wash was generally conveyed out of the prison (die schwarze Wäsche aus dem Gefängnisse schicken). She profited by this circumstance (einen Umstand benutzen) to advise her husband to place himself in the trunk, and thus to escape (entwischen). With this view (zu diesem Endzweck) she had taken the precaution to have holes bored to admit the air (Luftlöcher bohren) at the part where the head of Grotius was to lie (wo er das Gesicht hinlegen sollte). Her measures were so well taken, that her husband, by following her instructions (der ihrem Rathe folgte), was enabled to escape (glücklich entkommen\*), and was carried in the trunk to the house of one of his friends at Gorcum. From thence he escaped to Antwerp in the disguise of a (verkleidet als) carpenter.

That Grotius should have time for his escape (um ihm nun die nöthige Zeit zu seiner Flucht zu verschaffen), and to prevent his enemies from stopping him in his flight (alle Mittel zu vereiteln, ihn wieder einzuholen), she gave out that he was ill (Jemanden für krank ausgeben\*), and under this pretence (der Vorwand) kept away (abweisen\*) all those who could have entered his prison. When she was certain (gewiß seyn\*) that her husband was in safety, she said to the guards, as she laughed at them (spottend), that the bird was flown (ausfliegen\*).

A criminal procedure was at first talked of against her (Jemandem einen peinlichen Prozeß machen wollen), and even judges were found who urged (einige unter den Richtern urtheilten sogar) that she should be detained a prisoner (einsperren) in her husband's stead; but the majority (die Mehrzahl derselben) decided in favour of conjugal affection (der ehelichen Liebe Gerechtigkeit widerfahren lassen\*). She was liberated, and every one applauded her noble conduct (und von Jedermann wegen dieser That hochgeschätzt). (THE SAME.)

THE WOMEN OF WEINSBERG.

The emperor Conrad III., who lived about the middle of the twelfth century, was besieging (belagern) Weinsberg, a small town of Wurtemberg, (im Württembergischen). The duke of Bavaria, shut up in this place (die Stadt) with his wife, held out (die Belagerung aushalten\*) with an heroic valour (die heldenmüthige Tapferkeit), and only surrendered (nachgeben\*) to an overpowering force. The irritated emperor said he would give up the town to fire and sword (Alles mit Feuer und Schwert verheeren wollen); he, however, excepted the women from the general doom (Jemandem Gnade ertheilen) allowing them to carry with them whatever (herauszugehen und dasjenige mitzunehmen, was) they had most precious (am liebsten seyn\*) The duchess, a woman of superior mind (flug), instantly seized the opportunity of saving her husband. She accordingly left the town, carrying him on her shoulders (so nahm sie ihn auf ihre Schultern), and the other women followed her example (mit ihren Männern ein Gleiches thun\*). The emperor struck by (überrascht durch) their fidelity and prudence, silenced his resentment (milderte seinen harten Sinn), pardoned the men, and thus saved the town (und die Stadt wurde gerettet).

CHARLEMAGNE IN HIS SCHOOL.

Charlemagne, who was proclaimed (ausgerufen werden\*) emperor in the year 800 ((im Jahre 800 nach Christi Geburt) was the greatest and most extraordinary genius (der geistreichste und fräftigste Mann) of his day (seiner Zeit). He understood Latin and Greek, and did not disdain (sich schämen) late in life (im männlichen Alter) to learn to write. He was most anxious (sehr viel lag ihm daran) to restore the schools (den Schulen aufzuhelfen), that the minds of the young might be instructed in (und der Jugend—einzupflanzen) useful knowledge. He called around him, with this view (er ließ daher—kommen),

learned men from Italy and Greece, and founded (einführen) even in his court a school, which was open to all the children of the officers of his household (in welche alle seine Diener — ihre Söhne schicken konnten), from the highest to the lowest (die hohen, wie die niedern). He one day entered the school-room, listened for some time, and then asked for the written compositions (sich die schriftlichen Arbeiten zeigen lassen\*) of the pupils (die jungen Leute). He put all the attentive and diligent students on his right (die Fleißigen und Kenntnißreichen mußten auf seine rechte Seite treten), and sent the lazy and ignorant (die Faulen und Unwissenden) to his left. It happened that many of the latter (daß die letzteren meist) were the children of the nobility (vornehmer Aeltern). Charlemagne, turning to the studious, but poor scholars, said: "My dear children, I rejoice in your success (ich freue mich, daß ihr so gut einschlagt); work hard (dabei bleiben\*) that you may daily become (und werdet) more learned and wise; this will be working for your true happiness (Ihr befördert dadurch Euer wahres Beste), and I am only waiting an opportunity to reward you (und zu seiner Zeit soll Euch mein Lohn nicht fehlen)." "As to you (Ihr aber)," added he, wrathfully (zornig), addressing himself to the sons of the noblemen, "you who pride yourselves on your riches and noble blood (Ihr feinen Püppchen, die Ihr Euch so reich und vornehm dünkt), and who deem it unworthy to acquire knowledge, idle and good-for-nothing boys (der unnütze Bube)! hear me: I take God to witness (ich sage es Euch bei Gott) that in spite of your birth and your handsome faces (Euer Adel und Eure hübschen Gesichter gelten nicht bei mir), you must expect nothing from me until you have made amends for (wieder gut machen) your negligence (die Faulheit) by zealous and unremitting study (der eifrige Fleiß)."

This same emperor never wore (tragen\*) any other clothes (die Bekleidung) but such as were spun and woven by his daughters.

(HEINSIUS.)

## LUCIUS QUINTIUS CINCINNATUS.

Amidst the divisions which distracted (mitten unter den Streitigkeiten) the plebeians and patricians (der Patricier und Plebejer), this Roman citizen was distinguished (sich auszeichnen) for his prudence, justice, and noble simplicity (die edle Sitteneinfalt). When his son Cæso, who had been the object of the hatred of the tribunes, was obliged to leave Rome (durch den Haß der Tribunen verfolgt, aus Rom geflüchtet), Cincinnatus, followed by his wife, retired to a small farm which he possessed (auf sein kleines Landgut) beyond the Tiber (am jenseitigen Ufer der Tiber). He there passed his life in peace and content (in stillem Frieden leben), entirely occupied with the cultivation of his field (bloß mit dem Ackerbau beschäftigt); but the value of such a man was well known (man faunte) at Rome. In consequence the following year (im folgenden Jahre), the 294th of the building of Rome (see page 226), he was elected consul (zum Consul erwählt werden\*) to restore order and tranquillity (Ruhe und Frieden) to the distracted (zerrüttet) state. The deputation from the senate (die Gesandten des Senats) brought this intelligence to Cincinnatus as he (als er eben) was working in his field (auf dem Felde), and nothing but the critical situation of his country could induce him (und nur die Noth seines Vaterlandes konnte ihn bewegen) to accept the consulate. He left his farm, and said to his wife, as he parted from her (und bei'm Weggehen sagte er noch zu seiner Gattin): "I fear, my dear Attilia, that our field will remain unploughed (unbebaut) this year."

On reaching Rome, Cincinnatus showed himself as clear-sighted as faithful (so verständig als redlich) a statesman (der Staatsmann). Thanks to the wisdom and justice of his administration (er verwaltete das Consulat mit so viel Klugheit als Gerechtigkeit), peace and order were soon restored (hergestellt werden\*). Hardly was the year of his consulate ended, when he hastened back to his farm (die ländliche Wohnung), to cultivate it as

he had done before (um sein Feld auf's Neue zu bestellen). He had been followed in this retirement by the esteem of all good men (die Achtung aller Redlichen war ihm dahin gefolgt). Two years after, the Romans having been defeated by the Æqui (von den Æquern geschlagen werden\*), named him Dictator (wurde er zum Dictator ernannt). This time, also, the deputation found him behind the plough (der Pflug). The love of his country conquered his love of retirement (die Ruhe des Landlebens). He accordingly accepted the Dictatorship (die Dictatorwürde), marched (ziehen\*) against the enemy (see Lesson XCI.), and gained (erfechten\*) a signal victory (der glänzende Sieg). His fellow citizens would fain have detained him (gern hätten ihn seine Mitbürger in Rom behalten), but he preferred a country to a town life (das Landleben dem Stadtleben vorziehen\*, Lesson XCVII). He resigned the Dictatorship (die Dictatur niederlegen), after having exercised this dignity a fortnight, being impatient to return to (und ging sogleich auf—zurück) his farm, to his wife, and to his country occupations (der Feldbau).

302.

A GOOD JOKE (der lustige Streich) APPROVED (billigen)  
BY LOUIS XIV.

A gentleman of Anjou, named Charnace, had a long avenue of trees (die Allee) leading to his castle, which was interrupted by the cottage (die Wohnung) and garden of a peasant. Both had existed (waren vorhanden) long before the avenue had been planted (pflanzen), and neither the gentleman nor his father had ever been able to induce the peasant (Jemanden zu Etwas bewegen\*) to sell them, in spite of any advantage which they had offered him as a compensation (so viel sie ihm auch dafür geboten hatten). Weary at last of the constant view of the cottage (der Edelmann, der den Anblick dieser—nicht ertragen konnte) that marred (rauben) the beauty (die Annehmlichkeit) of his avenue, he imagined (ersinnen\*) a clever way (das spasshafte Mittel) of getting rid of it (dieselbe aus dem Wege zu schaffen). The owner of the cottage was a tailor. The gentleman sent for him, and

informed him that he had some very pressing work for him to do (sehr dringende Arbeit für ihn), and that in order to be sure to have it in time (zur gehörigen Zeit), he must sleep at the castle, food and wages being given to him (wo er Kost und Schlafstätte, nebst baarer Bezahlung bekommen sollte), upon condition, however, that he should not go out (aus dem Schlosse gehen\*) before the job was done (bis Alles fertig sey). Charnace even added, that, should the work be well done, he would not confine himself to the sum he had stipulated to pay (so würde es nicht bei dem bedungenen Preise bleiben). The tailor consented (es zufrieden seyn\*) and set to work (sich an die Arbeit machen). Whilst he was thus engaged, Charnace had the plan and dimensions of the cottage and garden accurately taken (den Riß und das Maß — aufnehmen lassen), inside and outside (eben dieß geschah im Innern des Hauses). The places of the smallest pieces of furniture were distinctly marked (man zeichnete sogar die Stelle der kleinsten Mobilien bis auf's Geringste auf); the house was then taken down (abbrechen\*), and put up again (wieder aufsetzen) precisely as it was before in every respect with only this difference (gerade so wie es von innen und außen beschaffen war): it was erected four musketshots (vier Büchenschüsse weit) from the side (neben) of the avenue. The furniture was replaced (wieder an ihren Platz gestellt werden\*), the garden was arranged (wieder angelegt werden\*), the same trees were transplanted (wieder hinein gesetzt) at the same distances as they were in the previous one (mit Beobachtung der Entfernung, in welcher sie zuvor gestanden hatten), and at the same time the place where the house formerly stood was cleared and levelled (rein und eben gemacht werden\*) so that no trace (die Spur) remained of (what had been done).

303.

## CONTINUATION.

When all this had been done (ausgeführt war), Charnace paid the man and sent him away (entlassen\*) at

the beginning (beim Einbruch) of a very dark night. The tailor took his way along the avenue (durch die Allee), and reached the end (bis an's Ende durchlaufen\*); he discovered that he had left the trees behind him (daß er über die Bäume hinaus war), and then retraced his steps (wieder umkehren) to about the place where he thought his house stood; after walking backwards and forwards (er ging hin und zurück) he found nothing, and became quite bewildered (die Sache war ihm unbegreiflich). The night was spent (hingehen\*) in this fruitless search (während dieses Suchens). At last day broke (anbrechen\*), and it soon became light enough (und bald war es so hell) for him to distinguish his house had it been there; but he saw nothing; in vain did he rub his eyes and seek other objects to assure himself that it was not the fault of his eyesight that he did not perceive his cottage (daß die Schuld nicht an seinem Gesichte liege). He saw (finden\*) every thing but his house; he began to think it was some trick of the devil (der Teufel habe die Hand im Spiele), and that the cottage had been carried off by him (und habe es geholt). By dint of going backwards and forwards in every direction (nachdem er lange genug umher gegangen war) and of peering about (sich überall umsehen\*), he caught sight of (erblicken) a house that resembled his. This was a new cause of wonder (neue Ursache zur Verwunderung). He had never seen a house there before. However he approached it (darauf zugehen\*), and the nearer he came (je näher er kam) the more like it seemed (desto mehr erkannte er es als das seinige). To be certain on the subject (sich gewissermaßen überzeugen) he put his key in the lock (den Schlüssel in das Schlüsselloch stecken), turned it (aufschließen), entered, and found every thing as he had left it, and exactly (genau) in the same places. This nearly turned his brain (es ging Alles mit ihm herum); he concluded it was some piece of witchcraft (es sey Hexerei); but the peals of laughter (das Gelächter) from the inhabitants of the castle and village (der Leute aus dem Schlosse und aus dem Dorfe) soon undeceived him. He resolved on going to law (einen Prozeß anfangen wollen),

and wrote (to that effect) to the intendant (der Intendant, *Note 1*, Lesson LVI.) The story (die Sache) reached the ears of Louis XIV. (Einem zu Ohren kommen\*) who laughed at it exceedingly, and as the joke was considered good (sehr lustig finden\*), the tailor was obliged to content himself with his new abode.

304.

ANSWER OF ARISTIPPUS.

A rich citizen of Athens was much more anxious (weshalb weit mehr—beschäftigt war) to accumulate riches for his son than to form his heart and cultivate his mind (als mit der Bildung seines Herzens und seines Verstandes). He went one day to the philosopher Aristippus, and said to him: "My lord Aristippus, I hear you everywhere spoken of most honourably (Gutes von Einem sprechen hören); I wish you would instruct my son; how much would you ask to undertake his education (dafür verlangen)?" "One talent (das Talent)," answered the philosopher. — "One talent!" exclaimed the miser; "and is wit so expensive? I might buy a slave for that money."—"Buy him (so kaufe denn einen)", answered the philosopher, "and you will have two."

How many parents are like this miser! Wholly engrossed with plans for the fortune (für das äußere Glück) of their children, they neglect to cultivate their minds and hearts.

305.

FILIAL LOVE REWARDED.

The father of a young Chinese had been condemned to lose his head for several enormous crimes that he had committed during his magistracy (die Amtsführung). His son went to throw himself at the feet of the governor (der Statthalter) and entreated (beschwören\*) him to accept the offer he now made (sein Anerbieten nicht auszusprechen) of dying for his father. The mandarin asked the young man many questions (allerlei Fragen an Je-

manden thun \*) to ascertain if he spoke of his own accord (aus eigenem Antriebe). When he had assured himself of the sincerity of the youth's intentions, he wrote to the emperor, stating what had happened. The result was the father's pardon, and a title of honour for the son. But the latter constantly (standhaft) refused this distinction (die Auszeichnung), saying that his title would continually remind the world (die Leute) of his father's disgrace (der Fehltritt). The emperor, struck with admiration at such noble-mindedness (die edle Denfungsart), sent for the young man to court; he there took an especial care of him, and in time his personal merit raised him to the dignity of state minister (der Staatsminister).

306.

#### GENEROUS BEHAVIOUR OF THE ENGLISH.

John, king of France, who had been made prisoner at the famous battle of Poitiers, was treated by the prince of Wales (Wallis) with every possible respect. The prince gave him a magnificent supper (die Nachtmahlzeit) in his own tent, to which he admitted (gezogen werden \*) all the prisoners of distinction (von Rang). He waited (aufwarten) on his royal (erlaubt) prisoner, and refused to sit down at table in spite of the repeated entreaties of the king (so sehr ihn auch der König darum bat); he tried (suchen) to console the latter by telling him that, though defeated (überwinden \*), his heroic actions (die heldenmüthige That) had ensured (erwerben \*) him more glory than that which his conquerors (der Ueberwinder) had acquired. His entrance (bei seinem Einzuge) into London was almost triumphant (erwies man ihm alle Ehrenbezeugungen des Triumphes). He was mounted (sitzen \*) on a white charger (das Pferd) richly caparisoned (reich geschmückt), whilst the prince of Wales, plainly dressed (in einfacher Kleidung), rode by his side mounted on a small palfrey (auf einem gewöhnlichen Pferde neben ihm her ritt). The king and queen and the whole of the English court received him with great respect and friendship, and seeing that in his ill fortune he was not cast

down (daß sein Unglück ihn nicht niedergebeugt hatte) they bestowed on him (Einen mit Etwas überhäufen) every mark of esteem, and softened (verjüßen) his captivity by every attention (die Gefälligkeit) and honour.

307.

GENEROSITY OF LOUIS XIV.

It seems as if Providence had been pleased (es habe der Vorsehung gefallen) to reserve for Louis XIV. (Einem verschaffen) the opportunity of taking his revenge on the posterity (Einem Etwas vergelten\*) of an excellent English prince for the attention and respect paid to a king of France (John) three centuries before (dreihundert Jahre früher), when he had been made prisoner after the battle of Poitiers. James II., king of England, successor of his elder brother Charles II., having been expelled (vertrieben werden\*) from his kingdom (aus seinen Staaten) by the prince of Orange, his son-in-law, came with his wife and son, the infant (der noch ein Kind war) prince of Wales, to implore the protection of Louis XIV. (begab sich mit— zu Ludwig XIV., und flehte ihn um Hilfe an.) The unhappy queen was astonished at her reception. The king went out to meet her (Einem entgegen gehen\*), and said on approaching her (Einen mit den Worten anreden): "I am performing now but a melancholy service (Einem einen traurigen Dienst erweisen\*), but I hope soon to serve you better and more successfully."—He conducted her to the palace of St. Germain, where she found the same household awaiting her (dieselbe Bedienung), as that of a queen of France. Every luxury, and all sorts of presents in gold and silver, in plate (das Tafelgeschirr), jewellery and precious stuffs (der Stoff) had been strewed in the apartments with royal profusion (die Verschwendung), and a purse containing (mit) ten thousand Louis (der Louisd'or) lay on her toilet table (der Nachttisch). James II., who only arrived the following day, received the same attentions (mit gleicher Auszeichnung empfangen werden\*). An annual sum of six hundred thousand franks was placed at his

disposal for his household expenses (zu seiner Hofhaltung angewiesen werden\*). Besides the presents made him, the officers and guards (die Hofbedienten und die Leibwache) of the king were at his service (zu Befehle stehen\*). All this reception (diese Aufnahme) was little compared with the efforts made (im Vergleich mit dem, was man that) to replace him on the throne.

308.

THE BARBAROUS REFUSAL (Mord durch Verweigerung der Hilfe.)

A poor Irish woman, the mother of a numerous family (welche mehrere Kinder hatte), the youngest of whom was still at the breast (und unter diesen noch einen Säugling), went in the utmost distress (an Allem Mangel leiden\*) to an oatmeal seller (der Grügehändler). She told (vorstellen) her story (die Noth) to the wife of the man, who was out, and offered to leave a few clothes with her in pawn, until she should be able to pay for what she asked (als Unterpfind für die Bezahlung), a sum totally out of her power to raise at that moment (welche sie gänzlich außer Stande war, ihr auf der Stelle zu leisten). The wife of the oatmeal seller (die Händlerin) refused the clothes (die Habseligkeiten nicht annehmen\*), and sent the poor creature away without giving her any meal (ohne Grüge); she felt, however, some commiseration for the poor woman (Der Zustand dieser Frau machte ihr Mit-leiden rege). When her husband returned in the evening, she related the circumstance (was vorgegangen war) to him, and did not conceal (verhehlen) her regret (wie leid es ihr nachher gethan) at not having granted what the poor woman had so earnestly entreated her to give (worum sie so inständig gebeten), and which she appeared so much to want (so dringend nöthig haben\*). On hearing this (bei dieser Erzählung), the husband, who had immediately gone to bed (sich bei seiner Nachhausekunft zu Bette legen), instantly rose; he knew the woman of whom she spoke; he hastened to take a measure of meal ready prepared (eilends nahm er einen Topf voll gefochter Grüge),

and flew (eilen) to the dwelling of the unfortunate woman. Alas! it was too late: he found her stretched on the floor (in ihrer Stube auf dem Boden ausgestreckt), where she had just expired, from (wo sie kurz vorher vor—den Geist aufgegeben hatte) grief (der Schmerz), hunger, and despair (die Verzweiflung). She was surrounded by her weeping children (ihre Kinder schriegen um sie her) whilst she still held in her arms the youngest (welches sie stillte), who sought in vain (vergebens) with his innocent hands some nourishment (Hilfe) from her faded (welf) and cold bosom. The grief of the mealman (der Händler) can only be imagined (sich Etwas vorstellen) as he beheld (bei dem Anblicke) this melancholy sight (das traurige Schauspiel); but far greater (noch mehr aber) that of his wife who had to reproach herself with the death of a virtuous woman and the misery (das Unglück) of several little children.

---

## HUNDRED AND THIRTEENTH LESSON. — Hundert und dreizehnte Section.

### 9. THE INTERJECTION, das Empfindungswort.

The Interjection expresses the lively and sudden emotion of the mind. Interjections were the primitive sounds which marked the feelings of man, and have therefore justly been considered as the first elements of language. They were gradually combined, and led to the formation of words. Thus

From	ah! and ah!	ah!	has been formed	ächzen,	to
				groan,	to sigh.
„	weh! ah! alas!	„	„	„	das Weh, or
	Wehe, the pain, the pang.				
„	juch! hurrah, huzza!	„	„	jauchzen,	to
	shout with joy.				

Interjections, being as numerous as the emotions of our mind are varied, are of different sorts, viz.

1. Those which intimate grief; as,

Ach! ah!	Weh mir!	} woe to me!
o! o weh! o! oh! alas!	ich Elender!	
leider! alas!		

2. Such as are expressive of joy; as,

Ah! ha! ah! ha!	juch! hurra!
o! o!	juchhe! huzza!
ei! he! ay! heh!	fa! fa! gaily! merrily!
heifa! huzza!	

3. Of surprise and admiration.

Ah! ho! ho! ei! hm! hem! hm!	poß! odds!
das wäre! really!	poßtaufend! odds bodikins!
so! what!	vortrefflich! excellent!

4. Of encouragement.

Auf! auf! up!	nur frisch! getrost! unverzagt!
wohlan! well! come on!	cheer up!

5. Of indifference.

Meinethalben! meinetwegen! it is of little importance to me!	was frag' ich darnach! what is that to me!
was liegt mir daran! } was schadet mir's! } me!	was mat- ters it to gut! well! immerhin! I care not! so sey es! so be it! well and good!
was geht's mich an! what does it concern me!	

6. Of salutation and congratulation.

Glück zu! Glück auf! good luck!	heiß' Euch Gott! God bless you!
Gott gebe es! God grant it!	lebet wohl! adieu! farewell, good bye!
Gott befohlen! adieu! farewell!	
Heil Euch! good luck!	wollte Gott! would to God!

7. Of aversion and of turning some one out.

Fort! weg! hence! be gone!	pfui! fy!
packe Dich weg! pack away!	pfui doch! fy! shame! foh!
hinaus! hence! be gone!	da sey Gott vor! God forbid!
in die Wache mit ihm! take him to the watch-house!	o wie garstig! oh how ugly!

8. Of requesting silence.

St! stille! peace! silence!	schweig!	} hold your tongue!
halt ein! desist!	halt's Maul!	} hold your peace!

9. Of laughing at and contradicting.

Za so! it is so!	freilich! to be sure!
ei seht doch! ay ay!	warum nicht gar! why not indeed!
Pöffen! stuff! nonsense!	

10. Of threatening.

Es ist schon gut! it is well!	warte nur! wait!
Es soll Dir übel bekommen! I'll	weg' Euch! woe to you!
be revenged on you!	

11. Of compassion.

Das geht mir nahe! that grieves	das ist mir leid! I am sorry for it.
me to the very heart!	

12. Of affirmation and of swearing.

Gott weiß es! God knows it!	wahrhaftig! truly! surely!
Gott ist mein Zeuge! God knows	bei meiner Ehre! on my honour!
it!	so wahr ich lebe! as I live!

13. Of calling for help and of giving notice.

Hallo! hei! hollo! hallo! avast!	zurück! avaunt!
halt! stop!	weg! weg da! stand out of the
helft! zu Hilfe! help! help!	way! clear the way there!
Feuer! fire!	in's Gewehr! to arms!
halt den Dieb! stop thief! stop	Kopf weg! take heed of your
thief!	head!
Mord! Mord! murder! murder!	wer da? who are you for? who
vorwärts! forwards! on!	goes there?

14. Of all sorts of emotions.

Großer Gott! good God! O Lord!	gerechter Himmel! gracious
lack-a-day! dear heart! bless	heaven!
me!	ach Himmel! o heavens!
was für ein Glück! what hap-	Gott sey Dank! thank God!
piness!	es lebe der König! long live the
Gott Lob! God be praised!	king! God bless (or save) the
	king! huzza!

OBSERVATIONS.

A. The place of the interjections in the sentence is arbitrary; they may be placed wherever they present themselves, according to the feelings or emotions of the speaker or writer.

B. The interjections are not liable to any grammatical changes. When some are followed by a case, the verb governing such a case is either really expressed in the sentence, or has been omitted by way of ellipsis. Thus they may stand:

a) With the Nominative :

Ah, poor man!	Ach, der arme Mann! (for: ach, wie arm ist der Mann!)
Oh, what happiness!	O, welch ein Glück! (for: o, welch ein Glück ist das!)

b) With the Genitive, which stands in German only with the two interjections, ach! ah! o! oh! the word ich gedenke, *I think of*, being understood. Ex.

Ah, the blissful day!	Ach, des Wonnentags!
Oh, the fool!	O, des Thoren!
Oh, what a shame!	O, der Schande!

The interjection leider! alas! formed from das Leid, pain, also stands with the substantive Gott, God, in the Genitive. Ex.

Alas, good God!	Leider Gottes!
-----------------	----------------

c) With the Dative, which always follows the interjections, Heil! hail! wehe! woe! wohl! well! not an account of their governing such a case, but because the verb seyn, *to be*, is understood. Ex.

Hail to thee!	Heil Dir! (for: Heil sey Dir!)
Woe to thee!	Wehe Dir! (for: Wehe sey Dir!)
How happy thou art!	Wohl Dir! (for: wohl ist Dir!)

OTHER EXAMPLES OF THE INTERJECTIONS.

Den uns umschließenden Cirkel beglücken,  
Wirken so viel, als ein Jeder vermag;  
O! das erfüllet mit süßem Entzücken,  
O! das entwölket den düstersten Tag! —

(Salis.)

To contribute to the happiness of those around us,  
To exert ourselves as much as we can;  
Oh! this fills us with a sweet delight,  
Oh! this chases the clouds from the darkest day!

Der Hauptmann und der Bauer.

Der Bauer.

Herr Hauptmann, ach! was macht mein armer Sohn?  
Man schrieb mir jüngst, er sey in einer Schlacht geblieben.

Der Hauptmann.

Ei! Das hat ein Lügner Euch geschrieben;  
Er blieb nicht, denn er lief davon. (Pfeffel.)

THE CAPTAIN AND THE PEASANT.

*The Peasant.*

Alas, captain! what has become of my poor son?  
They wrote me lately word that he was left on the  
field of battle.

*The Captain.*

Faith! my friend, he must have been a liar who wrote  
you that;  
He was not left on the field of battle, for he ran away.

---

## I. ON PUNCTUATION; AND II. ON THE GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

1. The notes of interrogation (das Fragezeichen) and of exclamation (das Ausrufzeichen oder Ausrufungszeichen), the period (der Punkt, Schlusspunkt oder das Punktum), the colon (das Kolon), and the semicolon (das Semifolon) are employed in the same manner in German as in English; we have therefore only to speak of the comma (vom Beistrich oder Komma), of which the Germans make more frequent use than the English. It is used:

1. Before and after all the members of a phrase which have a different verb, if they are not connected by one of the conjunctions, und and oder. Ex.

Ich halte es für meine Pflicht, Dir das zu sagen.	I consider it my duty to tell thee this.
Ich bitte, gütigst Platz zu nehmen.	Pray sit down.
Zur Arbeit, nicht zum Müßiggang sind wir bestimmt.	We are destined to labour and not to idleness.
Ich bitte Sie, mir zu schreiben.	I beg you to write to me.
Wo mir's gut geht, da ist mein Vaterland.	Where I am well off, there is my country.
Er behauptet, es gesehen zu haben.	He pretends to have seen it.
Es kränkt ihn, sich von Andern übertroffen zu sehen.	He grieves to see himself sur- passed by others.
Um sich durch das, was man liest, zu unterrichten, muß man sich's zum Gesez machen, Alles zu verstehen.	In order to profit by what we read, we must determine to understand every thing.
Der Mann muß hinaus In's feindliche Leben, Muß wirken und streben Und pflanzen und schaffen, Erlisten, erraffen, Muß wetten und wagen, Das Glück zu erjagen.—(Schiller).	Man must engage In the struggles of life, Must work and toil, Plant and create, Gain by stratagem or by force, Must hazard and dare To overcome fortune.

*Obs. A.* The infinitive mood with zu, to, preceding it, is separated by a comma from the other members of a phrase, when it is accompanied with words which it governs, as may be seen by the above examples;

but when it stands alone with *zu*, the comma is omitted. Ex.

Ich befahl ihm zu kommen.	I ordered him to come.
Ich bin begierig zu wissen.	I am anxious to know.
Wir gedenken heute spät zu Mittag zu essen.	We think of dining late to-day.
Ich gedenke noch heute Abend zu Ihnen zu kommen.	I intend calling upon you late this evening.

## 2. Before all relative pronouns or relative adverbs.

Der Mensch, welcher denkt.	Man <i>who</i> thinks.
Dein Freund, den ich liebe.	Thy friend, <i>whom</i> I love.
Der Mann, dessen Thaten wir kennen.	The man, with <i>whose</i> deeds we are acquainted.
Derjenige ist wahrhaft großmüthig, welcher seinen Feinden Gutes thut.	He is truly generous <i>who</i> does good to his enemies.
Mein Bruder, der in Dresden ist, hat mir geschrieben.	My brother <i>who</i> is at Dresden has written to me.
Suche zu seyn, was Du wünschest zu scheinen.	Endeavour to be <i>what</i> you desire to appear.
Das, was Du mir sagtest, ist eingetroffen.	That <i>which</i> you told me has happened.
Lesen Sie das Buch, welches ich Ihnen geliehen habe?	Are you reading the book <i>which</i> I have lent you?
Der freundliche Blick gibt der Wohlthat, welche die Hand reicht, ihren Werth.	A kind look gives value to charity.
Kennst Du das Land, wo die Citronen blühen?	Knowest thou the land <i>where</i> the lemon-trees blossom?
In Berlin, wo er sonst wohnte.	In Berlin <i>where</i> he formerly lived.
Ich fand ihn da, wo ich ihn nicht gesucht hatte.	I found him <i>where</i> I had not sought him.

*Obs. B.* When the relative pronoun is governed by a preposition, the comma precedes it. Ex.

Es war mein Vater, mit welchem ich sprach.	It was my father <i>with whom</i> I was speaking
Mein Bruder und meine Schwester, von denen ich sprach.	My brother and sister <i>of whom</i> I spoke.
Ist das der Mann, durch den Sie diese Nachricht erhalten haben?	Is that the man <i>through whom</i> you received this news?

3. Before all relative adverbs compounded of *wo* and a preposition (see p. 186), as: *wodurch*, *wofür*, *womit*, *woran*, *worauf*, *woraus*, *worüber*, *wovon*, u. s. w. Ex.

Notleidenden helfen ist ein Vergnügen, worüber Nichts geht.	The greatest pleasure is to assist the unfortunate.
Ein Vorfall, woran ich mich kaum noch erinnere.	An accident which I scarcely recollect.
Ein Versprechen, worauf ich mich verlasse.	A promise upon which I rely.
Das Haus, worin (better: in welchem) er wohnte, ist eins der schönsten in der Stadt.	The house in which he lived is one of the finest in the town.

4. Before conjunctions commencing a member of a phrase, except before *und* and *oder*, and those before which a semicolon must stand. Ex.

Es ist besser spät, als gar nicht zu lernen.	It is better to learn a thing late than never.
Es ist weit edler zu vergeben, als sich zu rächen.	It is by far nobler to forgive than to revenge one's self.
Wir wissen es, daß wir auch ohne Belohnung tugendhaft seyn müssen.	We know that we must be virtuous even without reward.
Ich überzeugte mich, daß er mir Schaden wollte, ob ich ihn gleich liebte.	I was convinced that he wished to do me harm, though I loved him.
Ich kann Sie nicht bezahlen, da ich mein Geld nicht bekommen habe.	I cannot pay you, not having received my money.
Wenn Sie ihn sehen, so sagen Sie ihm, daß ich ihn heute besuchen werde.	If you see him, tell him that I shall call upon him to-day.
Wenn Du mich liebst, so zeige es durch die That.	If thou lovest me prove it by deed.
Sie schlagen den Hund, weil er Sie gebissen hat.	You beat the dog because he has bitten you.
Er würde es mir sagen, wenn er es wüßte.	He would tell me of it if he knew it.

*Obs. C.* When the antecedent (the first member of the phrase) is of some length or formed of several smaller members of a phrase, *so*, which commences the consequent (the second member of the phrase) ought in German to be preceded by the colon. Ex.

Als Cäsar den Pompejus in der Schlacht bei Pharsalus geschlagen, dessen ganze Partei besiegt hatte, und Cato nur noch allein übrig war: so machte dieser seinem Leben mit dem Schwert ein Ende.

When Cæsar had defeated Pompey at the battle of Pharsalia, and entirely overpowered his party, Cato, the last who had survived, put an end to his own life.

*Obs. D.* When entire propositions are connected by und and oder, they are also divided by the comma. Ex.

Die Wissenschaften schmücken den Geist, und die Tugend veredelt das Herz.

Knowledge adorns the mind, and virtue ennobles the heart.

Eine Spartanerin übergab einst ihrem Sohne einen Schild und sagte zu ihm: „Entweder mit oder auf diesem!“ Denn die Spartaner hielten es für eine Ehre, entweder mit dem Schilde aus der Schlacht zurückzukehren, oder todt auf demselben zur Grabstätte getragen zu werden.

A Spartan woman in giving a buckler to her son said to him: “Return either with it or upon it!” For the Spartans considered it an honour either to return from the field of battle with their shields, or to be carried on them to their grave.

Aber mit der Nacht kam der lang-ersehnte Schlummer und erquickte die Mutter, und das Leben kehrte zu ihr zurück. Und Kornelia saß am Bette und hörte ihren Odem die ganze Nacht, und ihre Seele war ängstlich in Hoffnung.

But with the night the long desired slumber came to refresh her mother, and her life returned to her. And Cornelia sat near the bed, and listened to her breathing during the whole night, for her soul was fearful in expectation.

Sie kniete nieder auf die Blumen des Hügel und neigte ihr Antlitz, und ihre Thränen vereinten sich mit dem Thau des Himmels.

She knelt down on the flowers of the hill, and hung down her head, and her tears mingled with the dew of heaven.

## II. THE GRAMMATICAL FIGURES ARE:

1. *The Ellipsis.* 2. *The Synæresis.* 3. *The syncope.*
4. *The Apocope.*

1. The *Ellipsis* consists in the suppression of one or more words which the mind easily supplies. This suppression usually takes place when we wish to express ourselves with more rapidity. Ex.

Leute, die er nie gesehen (hatte is suppressed) oder mit denen er nie Umgang gehabt hatte.

Wenn wir unhöflich sind, so verdienen wir von jeder Gesellschaft ausgeschlossen (zu werden is omitted) und von allen gebildeten Menschen verachtet zu werden.

Was Kunst und Wiß durch Mühe und Schweiß erbaut (haben is understood), Korinth und Rom mit stolzer Pracht geziert (hat is understood). (Kleist.)

Hier, wo mir Nichts als Du geblieben (bist understood, — hier ist mein letztes Vaterland. (Gallier.)

People whom he had never seen or with whom he had never associated.

When we are unpolite, we deserve to be excluded from all society, and to be despised by all civilised people.

All that art and genius have erected by labour and toil, all the magnificence of Rome and Corinth....

Here where thou alone hast remained to me, here is my last country.

2. *Synæresis* is the contraction of two syllables into one. It serves:

a) To contract a preposition with an article, as: im for in dem; auf's for auf das; in's for in das, &c. (See Lesson XXXI).

b) To suppress the letter e of the neuter pronoun eß, in order to join it to a personal pronoun, to a verb or a conjunction; but the two words must be separated by an apostrophe, as: ich's for ich eß; er's for er eß; gib's for gib eß; wenn's for wenn eß, u. s. w.

3. *Syncope* consists in throwing out a syllable or a letter from the middle of a word. There we can suppress:

a) The letter e of the genitive of masculine and neuter substantives. This suppression is left entirely to be decided by the ear. Ex. Des Briefs, instead of Briefes; des Amtes, instead of Amtes. (See Note 2, Lesson XXXII.).

b) The letter e of the final syllable of all adjectives and pronouns terminated in el, en, er, which are inflected either by the terminations of the cases or by a degree of comparison, as: edler, theurer, goldner, instead

of edeler, theuerer, goldener; unfers, unferm, der, die, das unfrige, instead of unferes, unferem, der, die, das unferige. (See *Obs. C. Lesson XX.* and *Obs. Lesson XXI.*)

c) The letter e of the termination of the past participle, as: geliebt, instead of geliebet, loved; gespielt, instead of gespiellet, played, &c. (Lesson XLIII.)

d) The letter e of the terminations en, est, et, in all the tenses of the conjugation of a verb, as much as the pronunciation admits of it, as: gehn for gehen, to go; Du liebst for Du liebest, thou lovest; er spielt for er spielet, he plays; Ihr lobt for Ihr lobet; you praise, &c. (See *Obs. A. Lesson XXXVI.*)

e) The letter a of the syllable dar, in the formation of certain adverbs. Good authors avoid this kind of suppression. Ex. drauf, instead dараuf; drüber, instead of darüber, u. s. w. (See the Demonstrative Adverbs, p. 185.)

f) The syllable ge of the preposition gegen and the letter i of the termination ig or ich. This last licence is only permitted in poetry. Ex. Sie hoben die Augen gen Himmel, they lifted up their eyes towards heaven, instead of gegen den Himmel; der Ew'ge for der Ewige, the Eternal.

4. The *Apocope* is the cutting off the end of a word, or the non-repetition of a termination which is common to two or more words. Thus we can cut off:

a) The letter e of the dative of masculine and neuter nouns. This suppression is also left to be decided by the ear. Ex. Dem Brief, instead of dem Briefe; dem Amt, instead of dem Amte. (See *Note 2, Lesson XXXII.*)

b) The letter e at the end of a verb, of a substantive, and of the preposition ohne. This suppression is principally made use of in poetry. Ex. Ich lieb' ihn for ich liebe ihn; er hätt' es gethan for er hätte es gethan, he would have done it; die Treu' for die Treue, fidelity; ohn' Ihre Hilfe for ohne Ihre Hilfe, without your assistance.

c) The last syllable of a word, for which a hyphen (=) is substituted. This abbreviation is elegantly made use of when two or more words are connected by the conjunctions *und*, *oder*, *weder*—*noch*; or when two different prepositions enter into the composition of the same verb: Ex. *Geist= und weltlich* for *geistlich und weltlich*, spiritual and temporal; *weder Freund= noch Feindschaft*, neither friendship nor enmity; *ein= und ausgehen*, to enter and to go out; *der Ein= und Ausgang*, the entrance and the exit; *das Karten=, Würfel= und Schachspiel*, the games of cards, of dice and chess. (See *Note 3*, *Lesson LXXI.*)

## EXPLANATION OF THE MOST USUAL ABBREVIATIONS EMPLOYED IN GERMAN.

Absch. Abschnitt, section.	Gr. Groschen, grosh.
Abth. Abtheilung, division.	heil. heilig, sacred, holy.
Ann. Anmerkung, remark.	h. S. heilige Schrift, holy Scripture.
Antw. Antwort, answer.	Gr., Grn. Herr, Herrn, Mr.
Ausl. Auflage, } edition.	S. Sr. Herren, Messrs.
Ausg. Ausgabe, }	i. J. im Jahre, in the year.
A. a. D. am angeführten Orte, at the mentioned place.	ingl. inglichen, likewise.
B. Band, Buch, volume, book.	Jgfr. Jungfer, Miss.
Cent. Centner, quintal.	kais. kaiserlich, imperial.
dergl., dgl. dergleichen, such.	Klf. Klasten, fathom, cord.
d. h. das heißt, that is to say, viz.	königl. königlich, royal.
d. i. das ist, that is, i e	Kr. Kreuzer, kreutzer.
d. J. dieses Jahres, of this year.	l. lies, read.
d. M. dieses Monats, of this month.	Loth. Loth, half an ounce.
Durchl. Durchlaucht, Highness.	M. Magister, master of arts.
d. B. der Verfasser, the author.	Maj. Majestät, majesty.
Ev. Evangelium, gospel.	Ms. or Manuscript, manu-
Eu. Euer, Eure, your.	Msript. } script.
Ewr. Eurer, of your, to your.	N. S. Nachschrift, postscript.
Exc. Excellenz, Excellency.	N. T. Neues Testament, New Testament.
Fl. Florin, Gulden, florin.	Pf. Pfennig, denier.
Fr. Frau, Ma'am.	Pfd. Pfund, pound.
geb. geboren, born.	Rtblr. Reichsthaler, rix-dollar.
gest. gestorben, deceased.	s. siehe, see.
gGr. gute Groschen, good groshes.	S. Seite, page.

sel. selig, deceased, defunct, late.	u. f. f.)	}und so ferner,} et cæ-
Se. Seine, his.	u. f. w.)	
Sr. Seiner, to his.	(&c.)	
Tb. Theil, tome, volume.	Verf. Verfasser, author.	
Tblr. Thaler, dollar.	vergl. vergleiche, compare.	
u. a. m. und andere mehr, and others.	v. R. w. von Rechts wegen, by right.	
u. d. g. m. und dergleichen mehr, and the like.	z. B. zum Beispiel, for example.	
u. e. a. und einige andere, and some others.	z. E. zum Exempel, for instance.	

EXERCISES. 309.

SELF-DENIAL OF ALEXANDER (Alexander's Enthaltſamkeit).

Alexander the Great, on his road to universal conquest, was crossing (kam auf ſeinem Zuge, die Welt zu erobern) in Asia a great sandy desert (durch eine lange Sandwüſte Aſiens), where not a drop of water could be found. At last a ſoldier diſcovered a ſpring (hatte ein Soldat—aufgefunden). He filled his helmet with water and carried it (und brachte es in ſeinem Helm) to the king. But Alexander, ſeeing that his ſoldiers were dying of thirſt, exclaimed: "What, would you have me drink alone (ſoll ich der Einzige ſeyn, der da trinkt)?" and he poured the water on the ground. All the beholders, filled with aſtoniſhment (Alle, voll Verwunderung) at a prince who could thus deny himſelf (über die Enthaltſamkeit des—), exclaimed: March (auf)! onwards (führe uns fort)! we are no longer weary; we are not thirſty; we believe ourſelves more than mortals (wir halten uns nicht für ſterblich) under the guidance of ſuch a king (führt uns ein ſolcher König).

310.

CHARLES XII. OF SWEDEN.

Charles XII., beſieged in (der in—belagert war) Stralſund, was dictating letters to his ſecretary. A bomb fell on the houſe, pierced the roof, and burſt (zerſpringen\*) near the king's own apartment. Half the floor (der Fußboden) was ſhattered (in Stücke zerſtiegen\*); the ſmall room (daß Cabinet) in which the king was dictating,

was partly (zum Theil) separated (getrennt) from this apartment by a thick wall that was not injured by the commotion (die Erschütterung), and fortunately no splinters (das Stück) flew into the room of which the door was open. On hearing the explosion of the bomb, and the crack in the house, that seemed falling (bei dem Knalle der Bombe, die das ganze Haus zu zerschmettern schien), the secretary let the pen drop (Einem aus der Hand fallen\*). "What is the matter?" asked the king with great composure (mit ruhiger Miene), "why do you not go on?" "Ah, Sire (grädiger Herr)," answered the secretary, "the bomb!"—"Well," said the king, "and what has the bomb to do with the letter I am dictating? Go on!" (Pfeffel.)

The king of Prussia, seeing one of his soldiers with a scarred face (mit einer Narbe im Gesichte) said to him: "At which public house (die Schenke) did they treat thee so (Dich so zugerichtet)?"—The soldier answered: "At a public house where you majesty paid the reckoning, at Collin." The king, who had been defeated there (bei Collin), was much amused by (fand vortrefflich) the reply.

Coriolanus was advancing (anrücken) towards Rome, when his mother came (Einem entgegen kommen\*) and threw herself at his feet (auf die Kniee fallen\*) entreatig him to abandon his design (von seinem Vorhaben abzustehen). After a long struggle (der Kampf) between honour and natural affection (der Naturtrieb), Coriolanus raised his mother, and exclaimed: "O mother, thou hast saved Rome, but thou hast lost (stürzen) thy son."

Camillus, in spite of his virtues, was treated with ingratitude (mit Undank belohnt werden\*) and forced to leave Rome; but far from seeking to be revenged (on his enemies), he afterwards saved his country from the invasion (von den Verwüstungen) of the Gauls (der Gallier).

A poor gentleman, who was unable (außer Stande seyn\*) to pay his creditors, said one day, as he got up: "May the devil take (der Henker hole) all the duns (zu Einem

fommen, um Geld von ihm zu fordern) to-day." Hardly had he ended these words, when he heard a knock at the door (an seine Thür klopfen hören). He opened, and found it was four of his creditors who asked him on entering, if he had again forgotten them. "I vow", said the gentleman, that I was thinking of you a minute ago."

A famous actor, having the honour to be present at the supper of Louis XIV. had his eyes fixed (sah unverwandt) on a dish of partridges (eine Schüssel mit Rebhühnern). The king perceived it, and said to one of the persons in waiting (der Hofbediente): "Let this dish be given to Dominique;" such was the actor's name. "What, Sire!" pithily exclaimed the latter, "and the partridges also?" The king who understood (errathen\*) the meaning (die Absicht) of Dominique, replied: "Yes, and the partridges also." By this pithy question the actor obtained, not only the partridges, but what was far more valuable, a beautiful dish of gold plate (die goldene Schüssel).

312.

TRAIT OF BENEFICENCE (ein Zug der Wohlthätigkeit) OF MARIE ANTOINETTE, AFTERWARDS (nachmaliger) QUEEN OF FRANCE.

Every one knows (es ist allgemein bekannt) that this august princess was naturally humane, compassionate, and considerate, and that she never turned a deaf ear to the unfortunate (vergeblich Eines Mitleiden ansprechen\*). A short time before he ascended the throne (vor seiner Thronbesteigung) Louis XVI. was walking with her in the park of Versailles. Here, free from the wearisome pomp (das lästige Gepränge) of the court, they perceived a little girl carrying a bowl (der Napf) and several pewter spoons. "What are you carrying there?" inquired the princess.—"It is some soup for my father and mother that are at work yonder (dort im Felde)."—"And what is it made of?" "Of (aus) water and roots (die Wurzel), Madam."—"What! without meat?"—"Ah, Madam; we are very happy (froh) when we can only get bread."—"Well, take that louis to your father that he

may make (damit er sich—zurichten lasse) better soup . . . . Let us see what will become of the child (wie es mit—gehen wird),” said Marie Antoinette to her husband. They followed her, and saw afar the old father bent under the weight of his labour (den unter der Last seiner Arbeit gedrückten Landmann). As soon as his daughter had given him the lousis he fell on his knees with his wife and children, and lifting his hands to heaven, returned thanks for so unexpected a blessing (die unerwartete Hilfe). “Ah,” exclaimed the princess, “they are praying for us. How delightful it is (wie süß ist es) to do good!”

313.

TOBIAS WITT.

Tobias Witt was born (gebürtig) in a small town and had never been much farther than the villages surrounding it; he knew the world however much better than many others who have spent their fortune at Paris or at Naples. He was fond of relating (er erzählte gern) a number of little anecdotes (das Geschichtchen) that he had picked up here and there, and in which he had been a party concerned (die er sich hier und da aus eigener Erfahrung gesammelt hatte). They possessed little poetical merit, but they were only the more applicable to the different circumstances of life (aber desto mehr praktisches). The most singular part about them was (und was das Besondere an ihnen war), that there were always two that belonged to each other (daß ihrer je zwei und zwei zusammen gehörten).

One day, Mr. Till, a young man of his acquaintance, praised his judgment.—“Am I then so sensible?” said old Witt smiling (und schmunzelte).

“Every body says so; and as I should much like to become sensible also—”

“Well! if you wish to become so, nothing is easier; you need only particularly observe what fools do.”

“How so? observe what fools do?”

“Yes, Sir; and then you can act exactly opposite to what they do.”

“An example!”

“For example, Sir, thus; when I was young (in meiner Jugend), there lived here an old arithmetician (der Arithmetikus), a little dry fellow, always cross (ein dünnes, grämliches Männchen), whose name was Mr. Veit. He was always heard to grumble to himself (der ging immer herum und murmelte vor sich selbst). He never in his life spoke to any one, much less did he ever look any body in the face; for he always looked black and wrapped up in himself (immer guckte er ganz finster in sich hinein). How do you think, Sir, he was called (daß die Leute den hießen)?”

“How - why, may be a thinker (einen tiefsinnigen Kopf).”

“Oh, I dare say (es hat sich wohl)! A fool! Oh! oh (Hui)! thought I to myself—as the name did not please me (denn der Titel stand mir nicht an)—it will never do to be like Mr. Veit. It does not answer (ist nicht fein) to be always wrapped up in one's self; let us look the people full in the face (sieh Du den Leuten dreist in's Gesicht). Talk to one's self! Pooh! let us talk (sprich Du lieber) to other people. Well, what do you think, Sir, was I in the right?”

“Undoubtedly.”

„Ah! I do not know; not quite however.—For there was another person who was always going about here (denn da lief noch ein Anderer herum); Mr. Flink, the dancing master. He looked every body full in the face (in's Gesicht gucken), and was ever gossiping with whomsoever would listen to him (und plauderte mit Allem, was nur ein Ohr hatte, immer die Reihe herum). And pray, Sir, how do you think he was called?”

“A merry fellow (einen lustigen Kopf)?”

“Almost that (beinahe)! But many people also called him a fool (sie hießen ihn auch einen Narren). Oh! oh! thought I again, this is really odd (drollig)! How must I do then (wie mußt Du es denn machen) to be reckoned a sensible man? Not quite like Mr. Veit, not quite either like Mr. Flink. I will first look (erst siehst Du) people full in the face like the one, then I will look grave like the other. First I will speak (erst sprichst Du) out to

every one like Mr. Flink, then I will commence with myself like Mr. Veit.—Do you see, Sir, that is how I have done; that is the whole of my secret.”

Another day a young merchant named Mr. Flau called on him; he complained exceedingly of his ill-luck.—“Well, but (Ei, was!)” exclaimed old Witt, shaking him, “you need only seek fortune; you must run after her (darnach aus seyn).”

“I have done so for a long while; but what good has it done me (was hilft’s)?—I am always unlucky. I had henceforth rather stay at home doing nothing (lege ich die Hände in den Schooß).”

“No, no, Sir, that will never do (nicht doch)! you must always run after fortune; only mind how you hold your head (das Gesicht tragen\*).”

“How so! How I hold my head?”

“Yes, Sir, how you hold your head. To explain: when my left hand neighbour (mein Nachbar zur Linken) built his house, the whole street was encumbered with (lag die ganze Straße voll) beams, stones and rafters. Mr. Trik, our burgomaster, who was then only a young barrister (ein blutjunger Rathsherr), happened to pass by. He was walking in an important way, without looking before him, swinging his arms carelessly, his head high (der rannte, mit von sich geworfenen Armen, in’s Gelag hinein, daß die Nase mit den Wolken so ziemlich gleich war), when, he came plump down (Plump! lag er da); he broke his leg, and is lame (hinken) to this day (biß auf diesen Tag).—What do you think, I mean by that, my dear Sir?”

“The old proverb: Pride goes before a fall (Du sollst die Nase nicht zu hoch tragen).”

“Exactly so! but you must not look too low either. For shortly after, Mr. Schall, the poet of the town (der Stadtpoet), happened to pass. He was undoubtedly engrossed with domestic troubles, or with some composition or other (der mußte entweder Verse oder Hausorgen im Kopfe haben); for he was walking along in a melancholy mood (schlich ganz trübsinnig einher), his eyes turned on the earth (und guckte in den Erdboden), as if he

would willingly have sunk into it (hineinsinken\*).—Suddenly a rope broke (Rach! riß ein Seil), a beam slipped, and fell like lightning at his feet (vor ihm nieder).—The poor devil fainted (in Ohnmacht fallen\*) from sheer fright; he was ill in consequence and kept his room for several weeks (und mußte ganze Wochen lang aushalten).—Do you now guess (merken) my meaning (was ich meine), Sir! How ought you to hold your head?"

"You think moderation is duration (so hübsch in der Mitte)?"

"Precisely so (ja freilich). Do not look too high (weder zu hoch in die Wolken), or grovel to the earth (noch scheu in den Erdboden).—If you look carefully around you (die Augen fein ruhig nach oben und unten und nach beiden Seiten umherwerfen\*) you will find it easy to get on in the world, and you need not be much afraid of the reverses of fortune (und mit dem Unglück hat's so leicht Nichts zu sagen)."

314.

CONTINUATION.

Another time Mr. Witt received the visit of a young man who had just begun business (der junge Anfänger). His name was Mr. Wills; he wished to borrow money from him to enter on a small speculation (zu einer kleinen Speculation).—"I foresee," said he, "that I shall not make any great profit on this, but as this affair falls in my way (aber es rennt mir so von selbst in die Hände), I am willing to undertake it (da will ich's doch mitnehmen)."

The manner of Mr. Wills was any thing but agreeable to Mr. Witt (dieser Ton stand dem Herrn Witt gar nicht an).—"And how much do you think you shall want, my dear Sir?"

"Oh, a mere trifle! only a hundred crowns (ein hundert Thälerchen etwa)."

"If it be only that, I shall willingly give them you, and I will give you into the bargain (obendrein) something (noch Etwas Anderes) which between brother merchants

(unter Brüdern) is well worth a thousand rix-dollars. You may thereby become rich."

"How so, my dear Sir? Into the bargain?"

"It is only a little anecdote (es ist Nichts, es ist ein bloßes Hiftörchen).—When I was young, I had an odd little fellow for my neighbour. He was a wine-merchant and his name was Grell. He was in the habit of always making use of a sentence (die Redensart) which at last obliged him to make the best of his may off (die brachte ihn zum Thore hinaus)."

"How strange! and what was this sentence?"

"When any one said: Well, Mr. Grell how does business go on (wie steht's)? How much did you make by such a speculation? he would answer: a mere trifle, about fifty crowns; what is that?—Or when any one said: Well, Mr. Grell, you are also a loser by such a bankruptcy, he would reply: Pooh, it is not worth mentioning (es ist der Rede nicht werth),—a mere trifle of five hundred crowns.—The man was well to do in the world (er saß in schönen Umständen, der Mann); but as I have already told you (wie gesagt), this sentence alone ruined him (half ihm glatt aus dem Sattel), and forced him to decamp (er mußte damit zum Thore hinaus). But, by the by (doch), Mr. Wills, tell me, how much money did you ask for?"

"I?—I had requested you to advance me the sum of a hundred rix-dollars; my dear Sir."

"Ab! that is right: my memory fails (verlassen) me.—But I had another neighbour. It was Mr. Tomm, a corn-merchant, who by means of another sentence succeeded in building the large house you see with an out-house (das Hintergebäude) and warehouse—What do you think about it?"

"Ah! by heaven (um's Himmels willen), I wish I knew it!—What was the sentence?"

"If people asked him: How is business going on, Mr. Tomm? how much did you make by such a speculation?" he would say: "A good deal of money! a good deal of money" and you saw that his heart rejoiced within him (und da sah man, wie ihm das Herz im Leibe lachte);—I

made a large sum of money: a hundred rix-dollars!—Or if any one said to him: Why, Mr. Tomm, how grave (mürrisch) you are, what is the matter (was ist Ihnen)?—Alas! he would reply, I have lost a good deal of money: fifty rix-dollars!—That man, as I have told you before, began the world with very little (er hatte flein angefangen, der Mann) and ended by building that large house with the outhouse and warehouse. Well, Mr. Wills, which of these sentences do you prefer (gefällt Ihnen am besten)?

“The last, of course (das versteht sich).

“But—this Mr. Tomm was not altogether after my heart (so ganz recht war er mir doch nicht). For when he gave to the poor or paid his share towards the public revenue (oder der Obrigkeit), he used always to say: A great deal of money!—Now, in this case he ought to have spoken (und da hätte er nur immer sprechen mögen) like my other neighbour, Mr. Grell. —For my part, Mr. Wills, being in a manner placed between these two modes of expression (der ich zwischen den beiden—mitten inne wohnte), I have remembered and remarked them both (ich habe mir beide gemerkt); and according to time and circumstance (nach Zeit und Gelegenheit), I either speak like Mr. Grell or like Mr. Tomm.”

“No, on my soul! I am of Mr. Tomm’s opinion (ich halt’s mit H. T.) The house and warehouse please me (exceedingly).”

“You would then?”—

“Have much money! much money! my dear Sir! a large sum, a hundred rix-dollars!”

„Well! Sir, all in good time (es wird schon werden). It was quite right. When you borrow from a friend, you ought to speak like Mr. Tomm, and when you help a friend out of trouble (die Noth), you ought to speak like Mr. Grell.”

(Engel.)

---

## HUNDRED AND FOURTEENTH LESSON.—Hundert und vierzehnte Section.

### DIALOGUES.

#### I. Usual Civilities.

Good morning, good day.  
 Good evening, good night.  
 Good evening dear father, my son.  
 " " dear brother, my daughter.  
 " " dear nephew, dear cousin.  
 " " dear mother, dear aunt.  
 " " dear sister, my dear friend.

Good night, mother.  
 Farewell till we meet again.  
 I wish you a good morning.

" " " " Sir.

I wish you a good morning, madam.

How d'ye do? or, how do you do?

### Gespräche.

#### I. Gewöhnliche Höflichkeits-Ausdrücke.

Guten Morgen, guten Tag<sup>1</sup>.  
 Guten Abend, gute Nacht<sup>2</sup>.  
 Guten Abend, lieber Vater, mein Sohn.  
 " " lieber Bruder, meine Tochter.  
 " " lieber Nefse, lieber Vetter.  
 " " liebe Mutter, liebe Tante.  
 " " liebe Schwester, lieber Freund.

Gute Nacht, liebe Mutter.

Auf Wiedersehen.

Ich habe die Ehre, Ihnen einen guten Morgen zu wünschen.

Ich habe die Ehre, Ihnen einen guten Morgen zu wünschen, mein Herr.

Ich habe die Ehre, Ihnen einen guten Morgen zu wünschen, gnädige Frau, Madam.

Ich habe die Ehre, Ihnen einen guten Morgen zu wünschen, gnädiges Fräulein, mein Fräulein, Mademoiselle<sup>3</sup>.

Wie befinden Sie sich, gnädige Frau?

" " " " mein Fräulein?

<sup>1</sup> We say guten Morgen in the morning, and guten Tag in the afternoon and in the morning.

<sup>2</sup> We say guten Abend, on arriving in the evening, and gute Nacht, good night, on leaving.

<sup>3</sup> Gnädige Frau is only used in speaking to a married lady of rank, and Fräulein or gnädiges Fräulein, in addressing a young lady of noble birth, whilst Madam and Mademoiselle are used in speaking to any one, the former for a married lady, the latter for a young lady (See the titles p. 54.).

How d'ye do, little girl?	Wie befinden Sie sich, meine Kleine?
How did you sleep?	Wie haben Sie geschlafen?
Did you sleep well?	Haben Sie gut geschlafen?
What sort of night have you passed?	Wie haben Sie diese Nacht zugebracht?
Thanks for your kind inquiries —rather better than yesterday.	Sehr verbunden für Ihre Aufmerksamkeit — etwas besser als gestern.
I slept well, thank God.	Ich habe, Gott sey Dank, gut geschlafen.
And you, little girl?	Und Sie, meine Kleine?
Pretty well, very well, extremely well.	Ziemlich gut, sehr gut, überaus gut.
Remember me (present my compliments) to Mr., Mrs., Miss, Messrs., &c.	Empfehlen Sie mich dem Herrn, der Frau, dem Fräulein, den Herren u. s. w.
Assure him (her, them) of my regard.	Versichern Sie ihn (sie) meiner Ehrfurcht.
"    "    of my esteem.	"    "    "    meiner Hochachtung.
"    "    "    respect.	"    "    "    meiner besondern Achtung.
"    "    "    friendship.	"    "    "    meiner Freundschaft.
I beg your pardon!	Verzeihung, mein Herr!
Pray tell me.	Sagen Sie mir gefälligst.
Would you be so kind...?	Wollten Sie wohl...?
Might I request you to...?	Dürfte ich Sie bitten...?
Will you allow me...?	Würden Sie wohl erlauben...?
I entreat you to listen to me.	Haben Sie die Gewogenheit, mich anzuhören.
Do not deny me your good will.	Versagen Sie mir Ihr Wohlwollen nicht.
Believe me.	Ich bitte Sie, mir zu glauben.
Pray come in.	{ Bemühen Sie sich herein. { Treten Sie gefälligst herein.
Pass on, Sir, I am in my own house.	Gehen Sie voran, ich bin hier zu Hause.
If you desire it.	Wenn Sie befehlen.
Forgive me, if I disturb you.	Verzeihung, wenn ich störe.
Not at all, I am at your command.	Keinesweges, ich bin zu Ihrem Befehle.
How can I serve you?	Womit kann ich Ihnen dienen?
I am come to request your interest.	Ich bitte um Ihren Schutz.

I wish it may prove of service to you.	} Ich wünsche Ihnen dadurch nützen zu können. Es soll mich freuen, wenn ich Ihnen dadurch nützlich werden kann.
Pray reckon on my gratitude.	
You will infinitely oblige me.	} Rechnen Sie auf meine lebhafteste Erkenntlichkeit. Rechnen Sie auf meine Dankbarkeit.
Pray dispose of me on all occasions.	
You are very kind.	Sie werden mich unendlich verbinden.
You do me honour.	Befügen Sie bei jeder Gelegenheit über mich.
I can refuse you nothing.	Sie sind sehr gütig.
You are very kind.	Sie erweisen mir viel Ehre.
I shall most willingly undertake it.	Ich kann Ihnen Nichts abschlagen.
A thousand thanks....	Das ist ein Beweis Ihrer Güte.
I shall be infinitely obliged to you.	Ich übernehme es mit Vergnügen.
You are very kind.	Tausend Dank....
You flatter me extremely.	Ich werde Ihnen unendlich dafür verbunden seyn.
Your kindness is extreme.	Sie sind sehr gütig.
I cannot thank you sufficiently.	Sie schmeicheln mir sehr.
	Ihr Benehmen ist sehr edel.
	Ich kann Ihnen nicht genug dafür danken.

II. *Introductions.*

II. *Vorstellen und Einführen.*

I have not the honour, Sir, of your acquaintance; I am the brother of your friend, Mr. S. of Padua.	Ich habe nicht die Ehre, mich Ihrer Bekanntschaft zu erfreuen; ich bin der Bruder Ihres Freundes, des Herrn S. von Padua.
That is sufficient; you may command my services.	Das ist mir hinreichend; ich bin ganz zu Ihren Diensten.
You may be assured that I shall not impose on your kindness.	Seyen Sie versichert, ich werde Ihre Gefälligkeit nicht mißbrauchen.
I shall anxiously await the opportunity of being of use to you.	Ich erwarte mit Ungeduld die Gelegenheit, Ihnen dienen zu können.
Might I trouble you to conduct me to Mr. C's?	Würde es Sie nicht belästigen, wenn ich Sie bäte, mich zu dem Herrn von C. zu führen?
Certainly! You thereby enable me to confer an obligation on Mr. C.	Weit entfernt! dadurch geben Sie mir Gelegenheit, dem Herrn v. C. ein großes Vergnügen zu machen.

- Are you inclined to go there at once.  
 I shall be most happy to do so.  
 Is Mr. C. at home?  
 Yes, Sir; please to walk in.  
 I have called on you, my dear Sir, to introduce this gentleman to you. He was so anxious to see you that he would not defer his visit till to-morrow.  
 This is most flattering. You will prize it still more when you know Mr.—better.  
 I am delighted to have become acquainted with you: for I am under the greatest obligations to your brother, and shall endeavour to show my sense of them, at any rate in part, by my attentions to you.  
 It is quite sufficient for my friend to have introduced you to me, for me to be happy in having made your acquaintance.  
 I will present you to Mrs. C.
- Wollen wir sogleich zu ihm gehen?  
 Sie kommen meinem Wunsche zuvor.  
 Ist der Herr von C. zu Hause?  
 Ja, mein Herr, bemühen Sie sich nur herein.  
 Lieber Freund, ich komme, um Ihnen diesen Herrn vorzustellen. Er wünscht so sehr Ihre Bekanntschaft zu machen, daß er es nicht bis morgen aufschieben wollte.  
 Diese Geste ehrt mich ungemein. Und wird Ihnen auch viel Freude machen, wenn Sie den Herrn genauer kennen werden.  
 Ich bin sehr erfreut, Sie kennen zu lernen; denn ich habe gegen Ihren Herrn Bruder unendliche Verbindlichkeiten, und will meine Dankbarkeit wenigstens zum Theil dadurch zu beweisen suchen, daß ich Ihnen meine eifrigsten Dienste anbiete.  
 Schon um deßwillen, weil Sie mir durch diesen Freund empfohlen worden sind, werde ich mich jederzeit glücklich schätzen, Ihre Bekanntschaft gemacht zu haben.  
 Ich will Sie der Frau von C. vorstellen.

- Allow me, Ma'am, to introduce Mr. S. to you as an old friend of the family.  
 He is the younger brother of Mr. S. to whom your son Gustavus is indebted for his fortune (success).  
 I am most happy to see you; I have often heard of you, and I have long wished for an opportunity of meeting you.
- Erlauben Sie, gnädige Frau, daß ich Ihnen den Herrn S. als einen alten Freund meines Hauses vorstelle.  
 Er ist der jüngere Bruder des Herrn S., dem Ihr Sohn Gustav sein Glück zu verdanken hat.  
 Ich freue mich sehr, mein Herr, Ihre Bekanntschaft zu machen. Man hat mir viel Gutes von Ihnen gesagt, und ich wünschte schon lange, Sie in einer Gesellschaft, die ich besuche, zu treffen.

- You are very kind. I hope I shall always be worthy of your good opinion. Ich bin Ihnen sehr verbunden für Ihre Güte, gnädige Frau. Ich wünsche, die gute Meinung, die man Ihnen von mir beigebracht hat, stets zu verdienen.
- I shall endeavour to prove myself worthy of your kindness. Ich werde alles Mögliche thun, um mich Ihrer Gewogenheit würdig zu machen.
- I will introduce you immediately to the ladies. Ich will Sie sogleich mit unsern Damen bekannt machen.
- Please to walk in; you will find the ladies in the second room. Bemühen Sie sich hier herein; Sie werden die Damen im zweiten Zimmer finden.

---

Allow me to introduce Mr. S. to you; it is his brother at Padua who was so good to your cousin Gustavus. Erlauben Sie, meine Damen, daß ich Ihnen den Herrn S. vorstelle, dessen Bruder Ihrem Vetter Gustav so große Dienste in Padua geleistet hat.

We are delighted to see you here. Wir sind sehr erfreut, Sie bei uns zu sehen.

I am much more so, I assure you, to have the pleasure of becoming acquainted with you, and hope to be considered as a friend by you. Ich bin es unendlich mehr, meine Damen, und bitte Sie, mich als Ihren Freund zu betrachten; ich werde diesen ehrenvollen Titel zu verdienen suchen.

Pray sit down, and let us talk a little. Belieben Sie sich zu setzen. Lassen Sie uns ein wenig plaudern, wenn ich bitten darf.

You have not been long in this country? Sie sind wohl noch nicht lange hier?

I am but just arrived. Ich komme soeben an.

And you come from Munich? Und kommen von München?

Yes, I only left it yesterday. Ja, meine Damen, gestern früh war ich noch dort.

You have also doubtless passed through Stuttgart? Sie sind ohne Zweifel auch durch Stuttgart gereist?

I remained there several weeks. Ich habe mich sogar mehrere Wochen dort aufgehalten.

It is already three months since I left Italy. Schon vor drei Monaten verließ ich Italien.

---

I much regret, not having had the honour of your acquaintance sooner, Es thut mir sehr leid, mein Herr, daß ich nicht früher die Ehre Ihrer Bekanntschaft gehabt habe,

I also regret it exceedingly, I assure you, Ma'am.

I know several most delightful persons whose society, I am sure, will please you.

I will introduce you to them.

May I request you to fix an early day for this?

It will entirely depend on your lady to whom I am now going to propose it.

She will be honoured by it, and will, I am sure, gladly agree to it.

### III. At Dinner.

I beg your pardon:—I have kept you waiting.

It does not signify; we have had several people, but they had dined, and only waited that they might have the pleasure of seeing you.

Ladies and gentlemen, let us sit down to dinner, and you, cousin, sit by Mr. D.

Pray send for a plate, and eat a piece of this roast-meat, it is excellent.

Come near the table with your son.

Thank you, cousin, but we have just dined.

Never mind, a tiny bit of roast-meat and a glass of good wine will do you no harm.

Here, my little man! At your age people are always hungry. Will you have some salad?

Auch ich bedauere es ungemein, gnädige Frau.

Ich kenne einige achtenswerthe Personen, deren Umgang Ihnen gewiß sehr angenehm seyn wird.

Ich will Sie bei ihnen einführen.

Ich erlaube mir die Bitte, gnädige Frau, mir den Tag bald zu bestimmen.

Es wird ganz von Ihrer Frau Gemahlin abhängen, und ich werde ihr auf der Stelle meine Einladung machen.

Sie wird sich dadurch sehr geehrt finden, und sie mit Vergnügen annehmen.

### III. Bei Tische.

Verzeihen Sie, wenn ich habe warten lassen.

Es hat Nichts zu sagen; es sind seitdem noch einige Personen gekommen. Sie haben aber schon gespeiset, und sind nur geblieben, um Ihre Bekanntschaft zu machen.

Meine Herren und Damen, wir wollen uns zu Tische setzen. Sie, Consine, setzen sich neben Herrn D.

Run, liebe Base (liebes Mähdchen), lassen Sie sich einen Teller geben, und essen Sie ein Paar Bissen Braten mit. Er ist köstlich.

Rücken Sie doch näher an den Tisch mit Ihrem Sohne.

Sie sind sehr gütig, lieber Vetter, wir haben aber eben gespeist.

Was thut das? Ein Stückchen Braten und ein Glas guter Wein wird Ihnen den Magen nicht beschweren.

Lange zu, Kleiner! In Deinen Jahren hat man immer Appetit. Willst Du ein wenig Salat dazu?

- If you please, uncle. Wenn Sie die Güte haben wollen, lieber Oheim.
- Ask for a glass, you shall drink my health. Laß Dir ein Glas geben; Du sollst meine Gesundheit trinken.
- Pray, cousin, only half a glass, at most. Lieber Vetter, ich bitte, ein halbes Glas höchstens.
- He never drinks wine, it might disagree with him. Er trinkt nie Wein; es möchte ihm schaden.
- Will nobody take any more salad? Will Niemand mehr Salat?
- I should like a little more, if you please. Ich bitte mir noch ein wenig aus, wenn es Ihnen gefällig ist.
- Take what is left. It is very well dressed, it will not hurt you. Nehmen Sie, was da ist. Er ist sehr gut gemacht; er wird Ihnen nicht schaden.
- Thank you. Sehr verbunden.
- Bring the dessert and wine-glasses. Bringt das Dessert und kleine Gläser.
- 
- Here, little fellow, take this drop. Dip your biscuit in it. Afterwards we will have coffee. Hier, Kleiner, hast Du auch noch ein Paar Tropfen. Tunkte dieß Zuckerbrod hinein. Alsdann wollen wir eine Tasse Kaffee trinken.
- Will you not have it brought in here? Soll er nicht gleich hierher gebracht werden?
- I think we had better have it in the next room. Ich glaube, wir thun besser, wir trinken ihn im Nebenzimmer.
- You do not take cream to your coffee, Mr. L.? Herr L., Sie trinken den Kaffee also nicht mit Rahm?
- No, Ma'am, never after dinner. Nein, gnädige Frau (Madam), unmittelbar nach dem Essen niemals.
- Then pray give your cup to your neighbour; I will pour you out another cup. So geben Sie Ihre Tasse Ihrer Nachbarin; ich werde Ihnen eine andere einschenken.
- I will save you that trouble, for we have already exchanged cups. Bemühen Sie sich nicht, Madam, wir haben schon mit den Tassen getauscht.
- I beg your pardon, I had not perceived it. Verzeihen Sie, ich hatte es nicht gesehen.
- Come children, when you have had coffee we will take a turn in the garden. Nun, Kinder, sobald Ihr Guern Kaffee getrunken habt, wollen wir hinunter in den Garten.
- Well! let us all go. Nun, so wollen wir Alle hinunter.
- Another time: if you have leisure, we will take a little walk. Ein anderes Mal; wenn Sie noch Zeit haben, wollen wir ein wenig ausgehen.

Willingly.

I want to make a few purchases for my dress; it would be very kind of you to go with me.

Recht gern.

Ich habe Lust, einiges Putzwerk zu kaufen; Sie wären sehr gütig, wenn Sie mich einen Augenblick begleiten wollten.

IV. *In a Shop.*

Here is a shop.

Let us go in.

Show me your wollen cloth.

I shall perhaps want some linen and cambric also.

It will depend on the price.

I assure you, you will be satisfied with my goods.

Pray examine first this piece of black cloth; I will warrant its being dyed in the wool.

I see it by the selvage.

What is the exact price?

Eight crowns and a half.

It is dear; but as it suits me, cut it, and then show me some linen and cambric.

Here are both, Sir, you can choose amongst the different pieces.

If you wish it very fine, I should recommend your taking these two pieces.

I shall only take half a piece of cambric; but I shall keep the whole piece of linen, and should like a piece of wide cloth for sheeting.

I sell velvet, satins, taffety, knit articles, cotton velvet, twilled cottons, indian cloths, holland, muslin, dimity, chintzes, and various other articles specified on my cards, one of which I

IV. *In einem Kaufmanns-*  
*laden.*

Hier sind wir eben an einem Laden.

So wollen wir hineingehen.

Zeigen Sie mir Ihre Tücher.

Vielleicht brauche ich auch Leinwand und Batist.

Je nachdem ich Ihre Preise finden werde.

Sie werden mit meiner Waare zufrieden seyn, ich verspreche es Ihnen.

Befehen Sie vorerst dieses Stück schwarzes Tuch; ich stehe dafür, daß es in der Wolle gefärbt ist.

Das sehe ich an der Sahleiste.

Was ist das Genaueste?

Acht und ein halber Thaler.

Das finde ich theuer; weil es mir aber gefällt, so schneiden Sie ab, und zeigen Sie mir Ihre holländische Leinwand und Ihren Batist.

Hier haben Sie von beiden, mein Herr. Sie haben die Wahl.

Wenn Sie etwas ganz Feines haben wollen, so rathe ich Ihnen zu diesen zwei Stücken.

Ich brauche nur ein halbes Stück Batist; aber das Stück Leinwand werde ich ganz behalten und Sie noch um ein Stück ganz breite zu Betttüchern bitten.

Ich habe Sammet, Atlas, Taffet, Trikot, Manchester, Baumwollenzeuge, ostindische Zeuge, holländische Leinwand, Musselin, feinen Barchent (Canevas), Zig und eine Menge anderer Artikel, welche

will give you and request you will keep.

Make out my bill, that I may know what I have to pay. Here is some gold.

No, Sir, I can receive nothing until you have had time to look over your goods and to see that all is set down right. You may take all with you. I perceive that I have to deal with a gentleman.

You are not mistaken. Good morning. I shall expect you to-morrow morning at ten.

V. *At a Mantua-maker's.*

I sent you the day before yesterday different articles, and am come to give you my orders concerning them.

I have expected you since yesterday, Ma'am.

You found a remnant of pink satin, did you not?

Yes, Ma'am, it is a beautiful satin.

Do you think there would be enough to make me a court dress?

Mind that the waist be neither too long nor too short.

If the waist of the last dress I made you was right, I have the same measure, and will make this like it.

Sie hier auf meinem Preis-Curant verzeichnet finden. Belieben Sie diesen mitzunehmen.

So machen Sie denn meine Rechnung, damit ich weiß, was ich Ihnen zu zahlen habe. Hier ist Gold.

Nein, mein Herr, ich nehme keinen Pfennig eher an, als bis Sie Zeit gehabt haben, Ihre Waaren zu untersuchen und die Rechnung zu vergleichen. Lassen Sie nur Alles nach Hause tragen. Ich sehe sehr wohl, daß ich mit einem Mann von Ehre zu thun habe.

Sie irren sich nicht. Leben Sie wohl! Morgen um zehn Uhr erwarte ich Sie.

V. *Bei einer Kleidermacherin.*

Ich habe Ihnen vorgestern verschiedene Stoffe zugesandt, und komme jetzt, um Ihnen zu sagen, was Sie mir daraus machen sollen.

Ich erwartete Sie schon gestern, gnädige Frau.

Sie müssen einen Rest rosa Atlas gefunden haben?

Ja, gnädige Frau, es ist ein sehr schöner Atlas.

Glauben Sie, daß es zu einem Hoffleide für mich genug seyn wird?

Sehen Sie darauf, daß der Leib weder zu lang noch zu kurz ist.

Wenn der Leib von dem letzten Kleide, das ich die Ehre hatte, Ihnen zu machen, recht ist, so habe ich das Maas noch.

1 It will not be amiss to remark that in most parts of Germany the mantua-maker's profession is filled by tailors. The learners will however, not find it difficult to substitute occasionally the word *Schneider* to the word *Kleidermacherin*.

It is about right; but mind the sleeves sit tight.

You may depend upon it, Ma'am; it would be very awkward in me to fail in that.

Then you must have been so; for the sleeves of the very dress you mention sit very ill.

I thought you were so perfectly satisfied with it.

It was because I had not at first remarked the bad set of the sleeves.

That can easily be altered.

When will you have done all this?

Before the holydays, if you particularly desire it.

I should be glad of it, for I have many alterations to make in my wardrobe.

Well! cousin! you have been there all this while without uttering a word! I thought you wanted to ask the mantua-maker something?

I changed my mind. I wanted to ask her how much dimity would be wanted to make me two dressing gowns; but as summer is coming on, I shall prefer cambric muslin.

Let us be off. Good morning.

Good morning, ladies.

VI. *With a Milliner.*

Good morning! Mademoiselle F. Have you brought my cap?

No, Ma'am, but I have one with me which I made on purpose for you last night; I should

II.

Das ist nicht übel; aber sorgen Sie nur, daß die Ärmel keine Falten werfen.

Fürchten Sie nichts, gnädige Frau. Ich müßte sehr ungeschickt seyn.

So sind Sie es gewesen. Denn gerade die Ärmel in dem Hofkleide, von dem Sie sprachen, werfen Falten.

Sie schienen aber doch zufrieden damit zu seyn.

Weil ich den Fehler nicht gleich bemerkt hatte.

Dem kann leicht abgeholfen werden. Wann wird Alles fertig seyn?

Noch vor den Feiertagen, wenn Sie befehlen.

Sie würden mir einen Gefallen erzeigen; denn ich habe noch eine Menge Veränderungen in meiner Garderobe vorzunehmen.

Nun, liebes Mühmchen! Sie haben ja die ganze Zeit dagestanden, ohne ein Wort zu sagen, und doch wollten Sie einige Fragen an die Kleidermacherin thun?

Ich habe mich anders besonnen. Ich wollte sie fragen, wie viel Canevas ich zu zwei Hauskleidern brauche. Allein der Sommer ist nahe; ich werde lieber Calico nehmen.

So wollen wir denn gehen. Leben Sie wohl.

Ich habe die Ehre, mich zu empfehlen, meine Damen.

VI. *Mit einer Puzhändlerin.*

Guten Morgen, Mademoiselle F. Bringen Sie mir meine Haube?

Nein, gnädige Frau; ich habe aber eine hier, die ich diese Nacht für Sie erfunden habe. Ich

20

be obliged if you would allow me to try it on you; I think it will be most becoming to you.

How very pretty is it!

I have named it on that account le Séducteur.

I always succeed when I work for you Ma'am, for every thing suits you.

I dare say! but I recollect having heard you lately pay the same compliment to Mrs. N. who is more than fifty.

If you were there, Ma'am, I could only mean you when I spoke thus.

It would be something too absurd to speak thus to Mrs. N.

Ring for my maid.

See, Lisette! I am told this cap is so very becoming to me?

Far from it, Ma'am, it strikes me as hideous.

I shall keep it, however, since Madlle. F. made it on purpose for me.

It certainly is not for the value of the cap that I wish you to buy it, Ma'am.

We will say no more about it. What is the price of this cap? I will buy it for one of my daughters.

Pray examine it; you will perceive that the blonde is such as you seldom see.

There is even a great deal of work in it, the gauze of the crown is also very good; however I will only charge you sixteen crowns twelve groshes for it.

It is really not dear! but I am

wünschte Sie Ihnen aufzubereiten; ich glaube, sie wird Ihnen herrlich stehen.

O, wie niedlich!

Ich habe sie auch die Verföhrerin genannt.

Wenn ich für die gnädige Frau arbeite, gelingt es mir vortreflich. Es steht Ihnen Alles so gut!

Sie belieben zu scherzen. Ich erinnere mich gehört zu haben, wie Sie der Frau von N. neulich dieselbe Schmeichelei sagten, und diese hat doch ihre volle fünfzig Jahre.

Wenn Guer Gnaden dabei waren, so verstand ich zuverlässig Sie darunter.

Denn der Frau N. so Etwas zu sagen, das hieße gar zu unverschämt lügen.

Klingeln Sie doch meinem Kammermädchen.

Sieh her, Lieschen! Diese Haube soll mir gut stehen?

Behüte, gnädige Frau! Ich finde sie abcheulich — häßlich.

Weil aber Mademoiselle F. sie für mich erfunden hat, will ich sie doch behalten.

Gewiß nicht um des Werthes der Haube willen wünsche ich, daß Guer Gnaden sie kaufen.

Nichts mehr davon! Wie viel soll der Aufsatz kosten? Ich will ihn für eine meiner Töchter kaufen.

Belieben Sie ihn genau zu betrachten. Sie werden Blonden finden, wie man wenige sieht.

Es ist recht viel Arbeit daran. Der Grund ist auch recht schön. Bei alle dem verlange ich nicht mehr als sechszehn Thaler zwölf Groschen.

Wahrhaftig, das ist nicht theuer!

not inclined to spend so much for my daughter.

I think it extremely pretty; but it does not suit my age, and it is too dear for my daughter.

By the bye! when do you intend bringing me back the cap you have had so long?

I shall let you have it to-morrow, Ma'am.

You must come then before eleven, for you would not otherwise find me at home.

I shall not fail.

If you have any pretty collars, I should like to see them.

I have several very handsome ones, even in point d'Alençon.

These would be too expensive, but I should like to see them. Good morning.

Your servant, Ma'am.

VII. *Amongst well educated persons.*

How do you intend spending your evening, my dear Dorothy?

Shall you go out walking, or shall you use your box at the opera to-night to see the new piece which is performed in honour of the foreign prince who is here?

The weather is not fine enough for a walk my dear Fontange, and the opera bores me.

But you must do something with yourself.

I shall go to my aunt's.

Will she have any body?

Aber ich habe keine Lust, für meine Tochter so viel auszugeben.

Ich finde ihn wirklich sehr niedlich; aber er paßt nicht für mein Alter, und für meine Tochter ist er zu theuer.

Aber hören Sie! Wann bringen Sie mir denn die Haube wieder, die Sie schon so lange von mir haben?

Morgen werde ich die Ehre haben.

So kommen Sie denn gegen elf Uhr, sonst möchten Sie mich den ganzen Tag nicht finden.

Ich werde nicht ermangeln.

Wenn Sie hübsche Halstücher haben, so zeigen Sie mir dieselben.

Ich habe wunderschöne, sogar von Alençon-Spitzen.

Die möchten mir zu theuer seyn; aber Sie mögen sie mir doch zeigen. Leben Sie wohl.

Ihre unterthänige Dienerin, gnädige Frau.

VII. *Unter Gebildeten.*

Wie werden Sie den Abend zubringen, meine liebste Dorothea?

Werden Sie spazieren gehen, oder in Ihrer Loge die neue Oper sehen, die diesen Abend dem anwesenden fremden Fürsten zu Ehren gegeben wird?

Das Wetter ist mir zum Spazierengehen nicht schön genug, meine liebe Fontange, und in der Oper habe ich Langeweile.

Etwas aber müssen Sie doch thun.

Ich werde zu meiner Tante gehen.

Wird Gesellschaft zu ihr kommen?

She is never alone, and there is always something to amuse one sensibly at her house.	Sie ist nie allein, und man unterhält sich recht gut bei ihr, wenigstens auf eine vernünftige Weise.
I have a great esteem for your aunt, but I never could summon resolution to be introduced to her.	Ich schätze Ihre Tante sehr hoch; aber ich habe mich nie entschließen können, mich ihr vorstellen zu lassen.
You were wrong, she is the best creature in the world.	Sie haben Unrecht gethan; sie ist die beste Frau von der Welt.
There is no <i>gêne</i> with her.	Man ist ganz ohne Zwang bei ihr.
I am going there in half an hour.	Ich gehe in einer halben Stunde hin. Soll ich Sie vorstellen?
Shall I introduce you?	Kann ich in diesem Anzuge zu ihr gehen?
Can I go in this dress?	O Gott, ja! Sie sind sehr gut gekleidet.
Certainly, you look very nice.	Wir wollen gehen; wir möchten sonst zu spät kommen.
Let us go, or we shall be too late.	Ich habe die Ehre, mich Ihnen zu empfehlen, meine Damen.—Ich habe das Vergnügen, Sie wieder zu sehen.
Good bye, ladies.—Till we meet again.	Leben Sie wohl, meine Liebe. Viel Vergnügen, und empfehlen Sie mich Ihrer lebenswürdigen Tante zu Gnaden.
Farewell, dear.	Ich werde es nicht unterlassen.
A pleasant evening to you! Pray remember me to your aunt.	Johann! laß vorfahren.
I will not forget.	
John! call the carriage.	

*A party.*

I have brought my friend Miss de Fontange, my dear aunt, whom I beg to introduce to you.

I am delighted to see you.

Pray sit down.

Dear Dorothy, you are wanted in the next room.

Will you, my dear Dorothy, order the refreshments.

If there is any pine-apple ice,

Gesellschaft.

Meine liebe Tante, ich bringe Fräulein von Fontange, meine gute Freundin, mit, und habe die Ehre, sie Ihnen vorzustellen.

Ich weiß die Ehre, die Sie mir erzeigen, zu schätzen.

Belieben Sie sich niederzulassen.

Liebe Dorothea, man fragt nach Ihnen, dort im anstoßenden Zimmer.

Liebe Dorothea, laß Erfrischungen reichen.

Wenn Ananas-Gefrorenes da ist,

desire them to keep some for me. I will eat it after supper. Very well.

so hebt mir etwas davon auf; ich will es nach Tische essen. Sehr wohl, liebe Tante.

VIII. *To go to the Play and return from it.*

VIII. *Ins Theater und wieder zurück.*

You are going to leave us already?

Sie verlassen uns schon?

Yes; it is so dreadfully hot.

Ja, es ist eine Hitze zum Sterben.

And where are you going?

Und Sie gehen?

To the play.

In's Theater.

So late? Why it is already ten.

So spät? Es ist ja schon zehn Uhr.

I have no box to-day.

Ich habe heute keine Loge.

Are you coming with us to the play?

Kommen Sie mit uns in's Schauspiel?

I was going there.

Ich war auf dem Wege dahin.

Well, come in my box. It will easily hold five.

So kommen Sie denn auch mit in meine Loge; es ist bequem Platz darin für fünf.

Thank you, I shall be most happy.

Sie sind sehr gütig, ich nehme es mit Dank an.

Madam Dolban acts very well the part of Sylvia.

Madam Dolban spielt die Rolle der Sylvia sehr gut.

They all perform their parts well.

Alle geben ihre Rollen sehr gut.

You are doubtless returning from the play?

Sie kommen ohne Zweifel aus dem Theater?

There was a very full house, I suppose?

Das Schauspielhaus war wohl sehr voll?

Very. All the first and second tiers of boxes were filled with well-dressed ladies.

Unbeschreiblich. Alle Logen im ersten und zweiten Range waren mit Damen in vollem Staate besetzt.

IX. *A Concert.*

IX. *Concert.*

Is there a concert this evening at Mad. de Gerves?

Ist diesen Abend Concert bei der Frau von Gerves?

No, Ma'am.

Nein, gnädige Frau.

If any amateur comes this evening we will have a little music; perhaps my cousin may sing; but otherwise there is no decided plan for a musical evening.

Kommt irgend ein Musikliebhaber zu uns, so machen wir ein wenig Musik; vielleicht singt auch meine Base; übrigens aber nichts Verabredetes.

- I will make myself useful in any way you please; I will sing, I will play on the piano, or on the guitar. Ich thue Alles, was Sie verlangen. Ich singe, ich spiele Fortepiano oder Guitarre.
- I do not know, gentlemen, if you are fond of music. Ich weiß nicht, meine Herren, ob Sie Musik lieben.
- We are very fond of music, Ma'am. Allerdings sind wir große Freunde von Musik.
- Then pray walk in here; my cousin will sing some songs and a duet with a gentleman, of your acquaintance, I think, Colonel de T. Alsdann bemühen Sie sich hier herein. Meine Base wird einige Arien und ein Duett mit einem Officier singen, der Ihnen ohne Zweifel bekannt seyn wird, mit dem Obersten von T.
- What! Is Mr. de T. here? We shall be delighted to see him. Wie? Herr von T. ist hier? Es wird uns sehr angenehm seyn, ihn zu sehen.
- Good evening, gentlemen; I little expected the pleasure of seeing you here. Ei! guten Abend, meine Herren Ich vermuthete nicht, daß ich die Ehre haben würde, Sie hier zu treffen.
- You will be witnesses of my failure. Sie werden Zeuge meiner Niederlage seyn.
- I am going to attempt singing a duet of Spontini with this fair lady who is sitting at the instrument; and I really do not know how I shall get through it. Ich wage es, mit dieser schönen Dame, die hier am Flügel sitzt, ein Duett von Spontini zu singen, und ich weiß in der That nicht, wie ich damit zu Stande kommen werde.
- You are an excellent musician. You will acquit yourself to your credit. Sie sind Meister in der Musik. Sie werden Ehre einlegen.
- Colonel, Mrs.—waits for you. Herr Oberst, die gnädige Frau erwartet Sie.
- I am at her command. Ich stehe zu Befehl.
- Let us sit down and listen. Wir wollen uns setzen und zuhören.
- It is really delightful! In der That zum Entzücken!
- What compass of voice, and how flexible it is! Welch ein Umfang, welche Biegsamkeit der Stimmen!
- Pray listen! He really has surpassed himself to-day. Aber hören sie doch nur, wie er sich heute selbst übertrifft.
- He sings very well. Er singt sehr gut.
- Ah! we are all enchanted! O, mein Fräulein, wir sind alle bezaubert!
- That lady sings beautifully. Diese Dame singt göttlich schön.
- I agree to it; but this gentleman accompanies her with the most delightful accuracy. Ich gebe es zu; aber dieser Herr unterstützt sie auch mit bewundernswürdiger Genauigkeit.

X. *At the Ball.*

Here is Mr. de B.  
 Good evening to you. Are you  
 not coming to the ball?  
 At this hour?  
 But, my dear fellow, it is close  
 upon eleven.  
 Will you wait a moment for  
 me? I only want ten minutes.

Well! gentlemen! Here I am.  
 Have I not been quick?

Well! let us be off.  
 The carriage is waiting.  
 Let us go into the ball-room.  
 How gay it is?  
 The ball will be opened by a  
 Polonaise, I suppose.

It is customary to do so.  
 You will there be able to review  
 almost all the ladies without  
 seeming impertinent.

I know no dance so convenient  
 for that purpose.

Let us stand near this window.  
 They are already taking their  
 places, we shall see perfectly here.

The band is good, and the music  
 lively, as it ought to be at a ball.

Oh! you may be sure that nothing  
 is ever wanting at Madame  
 de Celles' parties.

She is always most particular in  
 having the best of every thing.

To begin with, this is one of  
 the finest rooms I ever saw.

They are beginning.

Who is that first lady who leads  
 off the Polonaise with that  
 foreign general?

It is Princess W.  
 What delightful music!

I have been looking for you  
 every where, Mr. R. Where  
 have you been hiding yourself?

Princess, here is the gentleman  
 you were seeking.

A word, Sir, if you please.

X. *Auf dem Balle.*

Hier kommt der Herr von B.  
 Guten Abend, Freund. Kommen  
 Sie nicht auf den Ball?  
 Schon jetzt?  
 Aber es wird gleich elf Uhr seyn.

Wollen Sie einen Augenblick war-  
 ten? Ich brauche nur zehn  
 Minuten.

Da bin ich, meine Herren. Bin  
 ich nicht bald fertig geworden?

Nun, so lassen Sie uns gehen.  
 Der Wagen erwartet Sie.

Kommen Sie in den Ballsaal.  
 Alles athmet hier Freude.

Der Ball wird ohne Zweifel mit  
 einer Polonaise eröffnet.

Das geschieht gewöhnlich.  
 Dabei können Sie ohne Unschicklich-  
 keit den größten Theil der Da-  
 men mustern.

Ich kenne keinen schicklicheren Tanz  
 dafür.

Wir wollen uns an dieses Fenster  
 stellen. Sie treten schon an, und  
 wir werden hier recht gut sehen.

Die Musik ist schön und rauschend,  
 wie es bei einem Ball seyn muß.

O! Sie können darauf rechnen, daß  
 bei einem Feste, das Frau von  
 Celles gibt, nie Etwas mangelt.

Sie sorgt ganz vorzüglich, daß  
 immer Alles unverbessert sey.

Dieser Saal z. B. ist einer der  
 schönsten, die man nur sehen kann.

Jetzt fängt man an zu tanzen.

Wer ist die erste Dame, welche  
 die Polonaise mit dem fremden  
 General anführt?

Es ist die Prinzessin W.  
 Allerliebste Musik!

Ich suche Sie überall, Herr R.  
 Wo stecken Sie denn?

Prinzessin, hier ist der Herr, den  
 Sie suchten.

Mein Herr, auf ein Wort, ich bitte!

My father wishes me to dance a quadrille before supper; may I request you to dance it with me?

Madam, you confer much honour on me. I am at your orders.

I should wish us not to be the only dancers. I tried to persuade the young Countess de G. to stand by us, and she has consented; but she has no partner.

I will introduce one to her instantly.

Allow me, fair countess, to introduce to you a young gentleman who is anxious for the honour of dancing the next quadrille with you.

I shall be most happy. When it begins you will find me near the second arch by my mother, to whom I will introduce you.

I shall not fail to ask her permission to dance with you.

Since I had the happiness of being proposed as a partner to you, Madam, would it be too much if I requested one reel after supper?

With pleasure.

Countess, have you a partner?

Yes, princess, this gentleman whom I will introduce to you, Mr. de B.

I am glad to find you have joined our party. We are going to begin immediately; my father is going before supper, and wishes to see me dance this quadrille.

We must lose no time, for I believe supper is ready.

Mein Vater wünscht, daß ich noch vor der Tafel einen Contretanz tanze; wollen Sie mir wohl das Vergnügen machen, ihn mit mir zu tanzen?

Es wird mir viel Ehre seyn; ich stehe zu Befehl.

Ich wünschte, wir wären nicht die Einzigen. Ich habe der jungen Gräfin von G. zugeredet, auch zu tanzen; sie will auch, aber sie findet keinen Tänzer.

Ich will ihr sogleich einen vorschlagen.

Schöne Gräfin, erlauben Sie, daß ich Ihnen einen jungen Herrn vorstelle, der die Ehre zu haben wünscht, einen Contretanz mit Ihnen zu tanzen.

Das wird mir sehr schmeichelhaft seyn. Wenn die Zeit da ist, so finden Sie mich hier in der zweiten Nische bei meiner Mutter, der ich Sie mit Vergnügen vorstellen werde.

Ich werde nicht ermangeln, Frau Gräfin, sie um die gnädige Erlaubniß zu bitten, mit Ihnen tanzen zu dürfen.

Da ich so glücklich gewesen bin, daß man mich Ihnen vorgeschlagen hat, dürfte ich es wagen, Sie um eine einzige Cossaise nach der Tafel zu ersuchen?

Mit großem Vergnügen.

Liebe Gräfin, haben Sie einen Tänzer?

Ja, Prinzessin, diesen jungen Herrn. Ich habe die Ehre, Ihnen denselben vorzustellen—Hr. v. B.

Ich bin sehr erfreut, daß Sie sich an uns anschließen. Wir wollen sogleich anfangen. Mein Vater verläßt den Ball noch vor Tische und wünscht, uns den Contretanz tanzen zu sehen.

Wir haben also keine Zeit zu verlieren; denn ich glaube, es wird schon aufgetragen.

THE  
**GERMAN DEGLIENSIIONS**  
ON  
ESTABLISHED RULES.

---

ADAPTED TO THE  
USE OF ENGLISH

BY  
**P. GANDS.**

---

---

THE  
GEOLOGICAL SURVEY  
OF  
INDIA

---

REPORT  
ON THE  
GEOLOGY OF  
INDIA

---

## T A B L E

### FOR THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
SINGULAR.	NOM.	no change	NOM.
	GEN.		GEN.    ♂ or e♂
	DAT.		DAT.
	ACC.		ACC.
PLURAL.	NOM.	en or n	NOM.
	GEN.		GEN.    ♂ or e♂
	DAT.		DAT.
	ACC.		ACC.

### INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

1) All substantives, without exception, add an n in the Dative Plural, if they do not terminate with that letter in the Nominative Singular.

2) Masculine and neuter nouns ending in eí, en, er, and the diminutives in d̄en and lein do not change in the Plural, excepting that those in eí, er take an n in the Dative.

3) Feminine nouns do not change their terminations in the Singular.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS MASCULINE.

Nouns masculine add in the Genitive Singular *s*, and if they terminate in *s*, *ß*, *z* or *ß* — they add *es*; their terminations in Nom., Gen. and Accus. Plural is *e*, in the Dative *en*. — They modify their radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*. Examples:

### SINGULAR.

N. Der König, the king.  
G. Des Königs, of the king.  
D. Dem König or e, to the king.  
A. Den König, the king.

### PLURAL.

N. Die Könige, the kings.  
G. Der Könige, of the kings.  
D. Den Königen, to the kings.  
A. Die Könige, the kings.

### II. Nouns in *s* modifying the radical vowel *a* in *ä*.

N. Der Platz, the place.  
G. Des Platzes, of the place.  
D. Dem Platze, to the place.  
A. Den Platz, the place.

N. Die Plätze, the places.  
G. Der Plätze, of the places.  
D. Den Plätzen, to the places.  
A. Die Plätze, the places.

III. Nouns in *el* (see 2 of the introd. remarks) changing the radical vowel *o* into *ö*.

N. Der Vogel, the bird.  
G. Des Vogels, of the bird.  
D. Dem Vogel, to the bird.  
A. Den Vogel, the bird.

N. Die Vögel, the birds.  
G. Der Vögel, of the birds.  
D. Den Vögeln, to the birds.  
A. Die Vögel, the birds.

IV. Nouns in *ß* (see 2 of the subsequent observations) modifying their radical vowel *u* into *ü*.

N. Der Fluß, the river.  
G. Des Flusses, of the river.  
D. Dem Fluß or Flusse, to the river.  
A. Den Fluß, the river.

N. Die Flüsse, the rivers.  
G. Der Flüsse, of the rivers.  
D. Den Flüssen, to the rivers.  
A. Die Flüsse, the rivers.

---

### OBSERVATIONS.

1) The Genitive Singular of masculine and neuter nouns takes sometimes *s* and sometimes *es* (excepting those terminating in *el*, *en*, *er*, *den* and *lein* which invariably take *s* in the Genitive Singular). Both these terminations are equally correct; but the former is more usual for con-

versational language, the other (eß) in elevated style. The same distinction may be observed in regard to the Dative Singular of masculine and neuter nouns which take e, when the Genitive takes eß.

2) Substantives terminating in ß, change ß in ff, when the word receives an addition in being declined, as: der Fluß, gen. des Flusses, plur. die Flüsse &c.—The ß is, however, preserved when the preceding vowel is long, as: der Fuß, gen. des Fußes, plur. die Füße; and after diphthongs as: der Strauß, gen. des Straußes, plur. die Sträuße.

3) Of compound words the radical vowel of the last in the composition, only, is modified. Examples: Der Hausvater, the father of a family; Plur. die Hausväter. Of the Diphthong au, the a is modified, as: der Baum, the tree; Plur. die Bäume. Of the Diphthong eu the u is not modified, as: der Freund, the friend; Plur. die Freunde. When double vowels occur, one is modified in the Plural, and the other suppressed, as: der Saal, the saloon; Plur. die Säle. Nouns masculine, derived from feminine nouns, from regular verbs, or the name of a town, do not modify the radical vowel in the Plural. Examples: der Kutscher, the coachman, derived from die Kutsche, the coach; der Einwohner, the inhabitant, derived from wohnen, to dwell: Plur. die Einwohner; der Pariser, the Parisian: Plur. die Pariser.

---

## MASCULINE SUBSTANTIVES.

To serve as examples to the foregoing rules.

Der Abt, the abbot.	Der Brief, the letter.
" Acker, the ploughed field.	" Bruder, the brother.
" Apfel, the apple.	" Damu, the dam, dyke.
" Ast, the branch.	" Degen, the sword.
" Bach, the rivulet.	" Dieb, the thief, robber.
" Bart, the beard.	" Dunst, the vapour.
" Baum, the tree.	" Engel, the angel.
" Blick, the glance.	" Faden, the thread.
" Boden, the ground.	" Fall, the case, fall, accident.
" Bogen, the arch.	

Der Federkiel <sup>1</sup> , the quill.	Der Schlag, the blow.
" Fehler, the fault.	" Schlitten, the sledge.
" Feind, the enemy.	" Schlund, the throat, gullet.
" Fisch, the fish.	" Schnabel, the beak, bill.
" Freund, the friend.	" Schuß, the shot, report of a gun.
" Fuchs, the fox.	" Schwager, the brother-in-law.
" Fuß, the foot.	" Schwan, the swan.
" Gang, the walk.	" Sieg, the victory.
" Garten, the garden.	" Sohn, the son.
" Gebrauch, the use.	" Spiegel, the mirror.
" Genuß, the enjoyment.	" Sprung, the spring, jump.
" Gesang, the song, air, lay.	" Stall, the stable, stall.
" Graben, the ditch.	" Stamm, the stem, trunk.
" Gruß, the salute, greeting.	" Stand, the stand, rank.
" Hahn, the cock.	" Stein, the stone.
" Hals, the neck, throat.	" Stern, the star.
" Hieb, the blow, slash.	" Stiel <sup>1</sup> , the handle, stalk.
" Himmel, the heaven.	" Stock, the stick.
" Hof, the court, yard.	" Storch, the stork.
" Hut, the hat.	" Strauch, the bush, shrub.
" Kamm, the comb.	" Strumpf, the stocking.
" Knecht, the menial, serving-man.	" Stuhl, the chair.
" Knopf, the button.	" Thurm, the tower, steeple.
" Koch, the cook.	" Tisch, the table.
" Kopf, the head.	" Ton, the tone.
" Korb, the basket.	" Topf, the pot.
" Krug, the pitcher, stone-bottle.	" Traum, the dream.
" Kuß, the kiss.	" Vater, the father.
" Laden, the shop.	" Wagen, the carriage, wagon.
" Mangel, the want.	" Wall, the rampart.
" Mantel, the cloak.	" Wein, the wine.
" Markt, the market.	" Wind, the wind.
" Nagel, the nail.	" Wolf, the wolf.
" Ofen, the stove, oven.	" Wurm, the worm.
" Papst, the pope.	" Zahn, the tooth.
" Palast, the palace.	" Zaum, the bridle.
" Regenschirm, the umbrella.	" Zaun, the fence, hedge.
" Ring, the ring.	" Zeug, the stuff.
" Rock, the coat.	" Zug, the train, draft, procession, pull.
" Sack, the sack, bag.	
" Satz, the proposition, phrase.	
" Schatz, the treasure.	

<sup>1</sup> Words terminating in iel or ier, where the e serves only to prolong the sound of the i which precedes it, are not affected by the rule respecting words ending in el, en, er.

EXCEPTIONS.

1) The following substantives do not modify the radical vowel in the Plural:—

Der Aal, the eel.	Der Kranich, the crane.
" Abend, the evening.	" Kuchen, the cake.
" Adler, the eagle.	" Lachs, the salmon.
" Admiral, the admiral.	" Marder, the marten.
" Arm, the arm,	" Monat, the month.
" Brunnen, the fountain, pump, well.	" Onkel, the uncle.
" Dolch, the dagger.	" Pfad, the path.
" Draht, the wire.	" Pfropf or Pfropfen, the cork, stopper.
" Gemahl, the spouse, hus- band.	" Plan, the plan.
" General, the general.	" Pudel, the poodle.
" Grad, the degree.	" Puls, the pulse.
" Groschen, the grosh (a coin).	" Punkt, the point.
" Gulden, the florin.	" Salat, the salad.
" Habicht, the hawk.	" Schatten, the shadow.
" Halm, the halm, stalk.	" Schuh, the shoe.
" Hamster, the hamster.	" Staar, the starling.
" Herzog, the duke.	" Stoff, the stuff.
" Hund, the dog.	" Strauß, the ostrich.
" Kapaun, the capon.	" Tag, the day.
" Koffer, the trunk, chest.	" Thaler, the dollar.
	" Zobel, the sable.

II. Masculine nouns which take en or n<sup>1</sup> in the Genitive Singular and retain this termination in all the cases both Singular and Plural.—They do not modify the radical vowel in the Plural.

a) All masculine nouns ending in e<sup>2</sup>; to these belong the names of nations that have this termination. Ex.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

N. Der Löwe, the lion.	N. Die Löwen, the lions.
G. Des Löwen, of the lion.	G. Der Löwen, of the lions.
D. Dem Löwen, to the lion.	D. Den Löwen, to the lions.
A. Den Löwen, the lion.	A. Die Löwen, the lions.

<sup>1</sup> Such as terminate in e take only n, the others en, except the following: Der Baier, the Bavarian; der Gevatter, the godfather; der Nachbar, the neighbour; der Bauer, the peasant; der Ungar, the Hungarian

<sup>2</sup> Except der Käse, the cheese; Gen. Sing. des Käses; Plur. die Käse.

The samo with :

Der Affe, the ape.	Der Neffe, the nephew.
" Barde, the bard, scald.	" Ochse, the ox.
" Bote, the messenger.	" Pathe, the sponsor.
" Bube, the boy, lad (term of contempt, knave).	" Pfaffe, the priest.
" Buchstabe, the letter (type).	" Rabe, the raven.
" Buble, the paramour, lover.	" Riese, the giant.
" Bürge, the surety.	" Schulze, the village-magistrate.
" Drache, the dragon.	" Schurke, the scoundrel.
" Erbe, the heir.	" Schütze, the shooter, archer.
" Falke, the falcon, hawk.	" Sklave, the slave.
" Fink, the finch.	" Zeuge, the witness.
" Gatte, the husband, spouse.	" Böhme, the Bohemian.
" Gefährte, the companion, associate, fellow.	" Britte, the Briton.
" Gehilfe, the assistant.	" Däne, the Dane.
" Genosse, the partner, comrade.	" Deutsche, the German.
" Gespieler, the playmate.	" Franzose, the Frenchman.
" Göze, the idol.	" Germane, the German.
" Hase, the hare.	" Grieche, the Greek.
" Heide, the heathen.	" Hesse, the Hessian.
" Hirte, the herdsman, hind.	" Jude, the Jew.
" Junge, the boy, lad, youth.	" Pole, the Pole.
" Knabe, the boy, lad.	" Preuße, the Prussian.
" Knappe, the squire, attendant.	" Russe, the Russian.
" Laie, the layman.	" Sachse, the Saxon.
" Nachkomme, the descendant.	" Schwabe, the Swabian.
	" Schwede, the Swede.
	" Türke, the Turk, &c.

b) Words adopted from foreign languages, and ending in ant, arch, at, et, ent, ist, it, log, as :

Der Adjutant, the adjutant.	Der Planet, the planet.
" Consonant, the consonant.	" Poet, the poet.
" Comödiant, the comedian.	" Prophet, the prophet.
" Monarch, the monarch.	" Präsident, the president.
" Advocat, the advocate, counsel.	" Student, the student.
" Candidat, the candidate.	" Christ, the christian.
" Soldat, the soldier.	" Pietist, the devotee.
" Komet, the comet.	" Eremit, the hermit.
	" Theolog, the theologian.

Obs. Der Magistrat, has in the Gen. des Magistrats, in the Plur. die Magistrate.

c) And the following words :

Der Bär, the bear.	Der Kosack, the cossac.
" Bayer, the Bavarian.	" Leopard, the leopard.
" Barbar, the barbarian.	" Mensch, the man (mankind).
" Bauer, the peasant.	" Mohr, the negro.
" Fasan, the pheasant.	" Nachbar <sup>3</sup> , the neighbour.
" Fels, the rock.	" Narr, the fool.
" Fürst, the prince, the head of a princely house.	" Patriot, the patriot.
" Geck, the fop.	" Pfau, the peacock.
" Gesell, the fellow, journey- man.	" Philosoph, the philosopher.
" Gevatter <sup>1</sup> , the godfather.	" Präfect, the prefect.
" Graf, the count.	" Prinz, the prince.
" Held, the hero.	" Tartar, the Tartar.
" Herr <sup>2</sup> , the master.	" Thor, the simpleton, fool.
" Husar, the hussar.	" Tyrann, tyrant.
" Katholik, the catholic.	" Ungar, the Hungarian.
	" Unterthan, the subject.
	" Vorfahr, the ancestor.

### OBSERVATION.

A number of words will be found variously declined in German books; as for instance:

Der Balken, the beam, balk.	Der Haufen, the heap, crowd.
" Frieden, the peace.	" Namen, the name.
" Funken, the spark.	" Samen, the seed.
" Gedanken, thought.	" Schaden, damage, injury.
" Gefallen, the pleasure, fa- vour.	" Schatten, the shadow.
" Glauben, faith, belief, creed.	" Schlitten, the sledge.
	" Willen, the will.

These words were formerly written without the final *n*, so that the Germans were undecided whether to say in the Gen. Balken for Balke in the Nom., or Balkens for Balken, &c., after the preceding rules upon the declension of masc. nouns; this difficulty is, however, removed; for if we

1 The word *der Gevatter* may also be declined as a noun ending in *er*, but then it does not modify the radical vowel in the Plural.

2 It is better to say *Herrn* in the Gen., Dat. and Acc. Sing., but the Plur. is *Herren* through all the cases.

3 The Gen. Sing. of *Nachbar* is better *Nachbars*, and the Dat. and Acc. *Nachbar*, without any addition; but the Plur. takes it through all the cases.

write after the present orthography, Nom. Sing. der Bal-  
fen, an *ß* will have to be added in the Gen. Sing., and no  
change to be made in any of the other cases Sing. or  
Plur. (Gen. des Balfens, Dat. dem, Acc. den Balfen); if,  
on the contrary, we write der Balfe etc., then these  
words must be classed with substantives ending in *e*, and  
add *n* throughout the remaining three cases in the Sing.  
and all the cases Plural (Gen. des Balfen, Dat., Acc.  
Sing. Balfen; Plur. Balfen).

The same observation applies to the substantive  
Schrecken, fright, terror, which some write Schreck; if the  
former orthography be adopted, it takes *ß* in the Gen.  
Sing. and remains unchanged in all the other cases, both  
Sing. and Plur., agreeably to No. 2 of the introductory  
remarks on nouns ending in *el*, *en*, *er* &c.; if, on the  
contary, we write Schreck, the Gen. Sing. takes an *ß* and  
the Plur. *e* (Dat. *en*). The declension of Schrecken, how-  
ever, is most usual.

III. Nouns masculine which take *en* in all the cases of  
the Plural, although in the Singular they follow the ge-  
neral rule on the declensions of masculine substantives  
they do not modify the radical vowel in the Plural.

a) All words derived from the Latin and ending in  
*or*, and have not the accent on the final syllable, as:

Der Cantor,	}	the English terms for which are literally the same.
" Doctor, der Professor,		
" Inspector, der Rector,		

Except, however, those whose final syllable *or* has  
the accent, as:

Der Castor, der Humor, der Matador, etc. which are  
declined as other mascul. nouns, taking *ß* in the Gen.  
Sing. and *e* (Dat. *en*) throughout the Plural, but do not  
modify the radical vowel.

b) The ten following substantives, of which the first  
five take *en*, the latter *n*:

Der Mast, the mast.	Der Staat, the state.
" Schmerz, the pain.	" Strahl, the ray, beam.
" Sporn, the spur.	

Sporn makes Sporen in the Plural.

Der See, the lake.	Der Stiefel, the boot.
" Pantoffel, the slipper.	" Better, the cousin.
" Stachel, the sting, prickle.	

The Plural of See, Seen, pronounce as if written See-en.

IV. Masculine nouns taking er in all cases in the Plural (Dat. ern), modifying the radical vowel.

a) The following :

Gott, God.	Der Mann, the man.
Der Bösewicht, the reprobate, miscreant.	" Ort, the spot, place.
" Geist, the spirit.	" Rand, the rim.
" Leib, the body.	" Vormund, the guardian.
	" Wald, the forest.

b) Masculine nouns in thum, as :

Sing. Der Irrthum, the error.	Plur. Die Irrthümer,
" " Reichthum, wealth, riches.	" " Reichthümer.

### OBSERVATION.

Words composed with and terminating in mann, change in the Plural mann into leute, as :

Sing. Der Hauptmann, the captain.	Plur. Die Hauptleute.
" " Edelmann, the noble- man.	" " Edelleute.
" " Fuhrmann, the wag- goner.	" " Fuhrleute.

### DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES OF THE FEMININE GENDER.

Feminine nouns and all foreign words of the feminine gender, adopted in German, as: die Form, the form; die Linie, the line, are not altered in the Singular number (see No. 3 of the Introductory Remarks). They add

en or n in all cases of the Plural (those ending in e, eī, er, take n, the others en), and do not soften the radical vowel.

### I. Noun ending in e.

N. Die Blume, the flower.	N. Die Blumen, the flowers.
G. Der Blume, of the flower.	G. Der Blumen, of the flowers.
D. Der Blume, to the flower.	D. Den Blumen, to the flowers.
A. Die Blume, the flower.	A. Die Blumen, the flowers.

### II. Noun ending in eī.

N. Die Gabel, the fork.	N. Die Gabeln, the forks.
G. Der Gabel, of the fork.	G. Der Gabeln, of the forks.
D. Der Gabel, to the fork.	D. Den Gabeln, to the forks.
A. Die Gabel, the fork.	A. Die Gabeln, the forks.

### III. Noun ending in er.

N. Die Feder, the pen.	N. Die Federn, the pens.
G. Der Feder, of the pen.	G. Der Federn, of the pens.
D. Der Feder, to the pen.	D. Den Federn, to the pens.
A. Die Feder, the pen.	A. Die Federn, the pens.

### IV. Noun terminating otherwise than in eī, er, or e.

N. Die Antwort, the answer.	N. Die Antworten, the answers.
G. Der Antwort, of the answer.	G. Der Antworten, of the answers.
D. Der Antwort, to the answer.	D. Den Antworten, to the answers.
A. Die Antwort, the answer.	A. Die Antworten, the answers.

### V. Noun Feminine, of foreign origin.

N. Die Person, the person.	N. Die Personen, the persons.
G. Der Person, of the person.	G. Der Personen, of the persons.
D. Der Person, to the person.	D. Den Personen, to the persons.
A. Die Person, the person.	A. Die Personen, the persons.

---

## FEMININE SUBSTANTIVES.

To serve as examples for the foregoing rules.

Die Absicht, the intention, design.	Die Arbeit, the labour, work.
" Ader, the vein.	" Arie, the air, song.
" Ahnung, the foreboding.	" Arznei, the medicine.
" Anstalt, the preparation,	" Beleidigung, the insult.
institution.	" Bibliothek, the library.

Die Ente, the duck.	Die Leiter, the ladder.
" Erbschaft, the inheritance.	" Linie, the line, row.
" Essenz, the essence.	" Lustbarkeit, the merriment.
" Fabrik, the manufactory.	" Nachricht, the news, tidings.
" Fähigkeit, the capability.	" Nachtigall, the nightingale.
" Formel, the formule.	" Nation, the nation.
" Form, the form, shape.	" Natur, the nature, disposition.
" Freundin, the (female) friend.	" Ohnmacht, the weakness, a fainting fit.
" Freundschaft, the friendship.	" Pflicht, the duty, obligation.
" Frist, the delay, respite.	" Poesie, the poetry.
" Gabe, the gift, offering.	" Predigt, the sermon.
" Geburt, the birth.	" Provinz, the province.
" Gefahr, the danger.	" Redlichkeit, the probity, uprightness.
" Gegend, the country, neighbourhood.	" Rose, the rose.
" Gesellschaft, the society, company.	" Religion, the religion.
" Gestalt, the shape, form.	" Schicht, the layer, stratum.
" Glückseligkeit, the felicity.	" Schrift, the writing, writ.
" Handlung, the action, trade, commerce.	" Schulter, the shoulder.
" Heirath, the marriage.	" Schüssel, the dish, plate.
" Jugend, the youth.	" Schwester, the sister.
" Jungfer, the maiden.	" Stirn, the front, forehead, brow.
" Kaiserin, the empress.	" Taube, the pigeon, dove.
" Kinderei, child's play, frivolity, childishness.	" Thür, the door.
" Klasse, the class.	" Tugend, the virtue.
" Königin, the queen.	" Tyrannei, the tyranny.
" Krankheit, the illness, sickness.	" Universität, the university.
" Kugel, the ball, globe.	" Vollmacht, the power of attorney, authority.
" Lächerlichkeit, the ridiculousness, absurdity.	" Welt, the world.
" Leidenschaft, the passion.	" Zeit, the time.
	" Zunge, the tongue.

### EXCEPTIONS.

I. The two substantives: die Mutter, the mother; die Tochter, the daughter. They modify the radical vowel in the Plural, without making any addition (except Dat. n); as:

Sing. Die Mutter.  
 " Die Tochter.

Plur. Die Mütter.  
 " Die Töchter.

II. Feminine nouns which add e through all the cases in the Plural (Dat. en), and modify the radical vowel.

a) Monosyllables containing an a or u; Example:

SINGULAR.

- N. Die Hand, the hand.  
G. Der Hand, of the hand.  
D. Der Hand, to the hand.  
A. Die Hand, the hand.

PLURAL.

- N. Die Hände, the hands.  
G. Der Hände, of the hands.  
D. Den Händen, to the hands.  
A. Die Hände, the hands.

The same with:

- Die Axt, the axe.  
" Bank, the bench.  
" Braut, the bride, betrothed.  
" Brust, the breast.  
" Faust, the fist.  
" Frucht, the fruit.  
" Gans, the goose.  
" Gruft, the grave, vault.  
" Haut, the skin.  
" Kluft, the chasm.  
" Kraft, the power, strength.  
" Kuh, the cow.  
" Kunst, the art.  
" Laus, the louse.  
" Luft, the air.

- Die Lust, the desire, pleasure,  
joy.  
" Macht, the power, might.  
" Magd, the maid-servant.  
" Maus, the mouse.  
" Nacht, the night.  
" Naht, seam, hem.  
" Nuß, nut.  
" Sau, sow.  
" Schnur, the cord, string.  
" Schwulst, the swelling.  
" Stadt, the town.  
" Wand, the wall, partition.  
" Wurst, the sausage.  
" Zunft, the guild, corporation,  
etc.

b) Feminine nouns ending in niß; words of this class take an e in the Plural, but do not soften the radical vowel, as:

- Die Besorgniß, the apprehension, Die Finsterniß, darkness, ob-  
scurity.  
" Betrübniß, the affliction. " Kenntniß, the knowledge,  
skill, information.  
" Erlaubniß, the permission.

---

OBSERVATION.

The following monosyllable feminine nouns, although containing an a or u, are still declined as other feminine nouns, that is to say, they take en in all the cases of the Plural, and do not soften the radical vowel.

Die Art, the kind, sort.	Die Last, the burden.
" Bahn, the path, way, course.	" Null, the cipher, zero.
" Burg, the burgh, castle.	" Qual, the torment, plague.
" Fahrt, the passage, voyage.	" Saat, the seed, young corn.
" Flur, the plain.	" Schlacht, the battle.
" Frau, the woman, wife.	" Spur, the trace.
" Fluth, the flood, high-tide.	" That, the deed, action.
" Jagd, the chase.	" Zahl, the number.

---

## DECLENSION OF NEUTER NOUNS.

1. Neuter nouns are declined in the Singular the same as masculine substantives; they take *er* in all cases of the Plural (Dative *ern*), and modify the radical vowels *a*, *o*, *u*. Neuter nouns ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, however, do not modify the radical vowel, except the word *das Kloster*, the convent, Plur. *die Klöster*.

It will be remembered that neuter nouns ending in *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen* and *lein* add nothing in the Plural, but an *n* in the Dative to those words ending in *el*, *er*.  
Examples.

### SINGULAR.

- N. Das Kind, the child.  
 G. Des Kindes, of the child.  
 D. Dem Kind or Kinde, to the child.  
 A. Das Kind, the child.

### PLURAL.

- N. Die Kinder, the children.  
 G. Der Kinder, of the children.  
 D. Den Kindern, to the children.  
 A. Die Kinder, the children.

## II. Noun ending in *ß* changing the radical vowel *o* in *ö*.

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| N. Das Schloß, the castle.       | N. Die Schlösser, the castles.     |
| G. Des Schlosses, of the castle. | G. Der Schlösser, of the castles.  |
| D. Dem Schlosse, to the castle.  | D. Den Schlössern, to the castles. |
| A. Das Schloß, the castle.       | A. Die Schlösser, the castles.     |

## III. Noun in *r*.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| N. Das Laster, the vice.     | N. Die Laster, the vices.     |
| G. Des Lasters, of the vice. | G. Der Laster, of the vices.  |
| D. Dem Laster, to the vice.  | D. Den Lastern, to the vices. |
| A. Das Laster, the vice.     | A. Die Laster, the vices.     |
-

## NEUTER SUBSTANTIVES.

To serve as examples to the foregoing rules.

Das Almosen, the alms.	Das Glas, the glass.
" Alterthum, the antiquity.	" Glied, the member.
" Amt, the office, employment.	" Gut, the good, estate; fortune; valuable possession.
" Bad, the bath.	" Haupt, the head.
" Band, the ribbon.	" Haus, the house.
" Bauer, the cage.	" Herzogthum, the duchy.
" Biethum, the bishopric.	" Holz, the wood.
" Blatt, the leaf.	" Horn, the horn.
" Brett, the board, plank.	" Huhn, the hen.
" Buch, the book.	" Kalb, the calf.
" Bündel, the bundle, parcel.	" Kapitel, the chapter.
" Dach, the roof.	" Kindlein, little child.
" Denkmal, the monument.	" Kleid, the coat, dress, gown, clothing.
" Dorf, the village.	" Korn, the grain, corn.
" Ei, the egg.	" Kraut, the herb.
" Eisen, the iron.	" Kupfer, the copper.
" Exempel, the example.	" Kissen, the pillow, cushion.
" Fach, the compartment, partition; branch, line.	" Lamm, the lamb.
" Faß, the cask, barrel.	" Land, the land, country.
" Feld, the field.	" Leder, the leather.
" Fenster, the window.	" Licht, the light, candle.
" Feuer, the fire.	" Lied, the tune, lay, song.
" Fräulein, the young lady.	" Loch, the hole.
" Füllen, the foal, colt.	" Mädchen, the girl.
" Fürstenthum, the principality.	" Mahl, Mal, the mark, spot, sign.
" Gebrechen, infirmity; need, want.	" Maul, the mouth, muzzle.
" Geländer, the railing, rail; balustrade.	" Messer, the knife.
" Geld, the money.	" Mittel, the means.
" Gemach, the apartment, room.	" Muster, the model, pattern.
" Gemüth, the disposition, mind.	" Nest, the nest.
" Geschlecht, the gender; race, generation.	" Opfer, the sacrifice, victim.
" Gesicht, the face; sight, vision.	" Orakel, the oracle.
" Gespenst, the ghost, spectre.	" Parlament, the parliament.
" Gewand, the drapery, vestment.	" Pfand, the pledge.
" Gewissen, the conscience.	" Pulver, the powder.
" Gewitter, the thunderstorm.	" Rad, the wheel.
" Gewölbe, the vault, arch.	" Räthsel, the enigma, riddle.
	" Regiment, the regiment, government.
	" Reis, the twig, sprig, rod.
	" Rind, the horned cattle.

Das Ruder, the oar, rudder, helm.	Das Uebel, the evil, ill.
" Schild, the shield, sign; plate.	" Ufer, the shore, bank.
" Schwert, the sword.	" Volk, the people.
" Segel, the sail.	" Wappen, the coat of arms.
" Siegel, the seal.	" Weib, the wife, woman, female.
" Spital, the hospital.	" Wort, the word.
" Stift, the charitable foun- dation; monastery.	" Wunder, the wonder, mir- acle.
" Thal, valley.	" Zeichen, the sign, mark.
" Theater, the theatre; stage.	" Zelt, the tent.
" Tuch, the cloth.	" Zimmer, the chamber.

### EXCEPTIONS.

Neuter nouns which take e in Plural, without modifying the radical vowel.

a) All neuter nouns derived from verbs and beginning with the syllable Ge; Example:

N. Das Gebet (from beten), the prayer.	N. Die Gebete, the prayers.
G. Des Gebets, of the prayer.	G. Der Gebete, &c.
D. Dem Gebet or e, to the prayer.	D. Den Gebeten, "
A. Das Gebet, the prayer.	A. Die Gebete, "

The same with:

Das Gelenk, the joint.	Das Gespräch, the conversation, dialogue.
" Gemälde, the painting.	" Gesuch, the request.
" Gericht, the court of justice.	" Getränk, the beverage.
" Geschenk, the present, gift.	" Gewebe, the tissue, web.
" Geschäft (from schaffen), busi- ness.	" Gewehr, the weapon, fire or side arm.
" Geschütz, the artillery.	" Gewürz, spice.
" Gesicht, the vision.	" Gezänk, the quarreling.

b) All neuter nouns ending in niß, as:

Das Aergerniß, the scandal, vexation.	Das Gedächtniß, the memory.
" Bedürfniß, the want, ne- cessity.	" Geheimniß, the secret.
	" Gleichniß, the simile.
	" Zeugniß, the testimonial.

c) Neuter nouns adopted from foreign languages and ending in *ent*, as:

N. Das Argument, the argument.	N. Die Argumente, the arguments.
G. Des Arguments, etc.	G. Der Argumente, etc.
D. Dem Argumente, "	D. Den Argumenten, "
A. Das Argument, "	A. Die Argumente, "

The same with:

Das Compliment, the compliment.	Das Instrument, the instrument.
" Element, the element.	" Testament, the testament, etc.
" Experiment, the experiment.	

*Obs.* From this last rule ought to be excepted the word *das Regiment*, which, like other neuter nouns, has *er* in the Plural.

d) And the following Neuter nouns:

Das Band <sup>1</sup> , the bonds, the tie.	Das Kreuz, the cross.
" Bein, the leg.	" Loos, the lot, fate.
" Bier, the beer.	" Meer, the sea.
" Brod, the loaf.	" Metall, the metall.
" Ding, the thing, object.	" Netz, the net.
" Fell, the skin, fur.	" Paar, the pair, couple.
" Garn, the yarn, thread.	" Papier, the paper.
" Gebiet, the territory.	" Pferd, the horse.
" Gefäß, the vessel.	" Pfund, the pound.
" Gehirn, the brain.	" Recht, the right.
" Geräth, the furniture, implement.	" Reich, the empire.
" Gericht, the dish, meat.	" Rohr, the cane, reed.
" Geschirr, the vessels, tool.	" Ross, the steed, horse.
" Geschwür, the ulcer, sore.	" Schaf, the sheep.
" Gesetz, the law.	" Salz, the salt.
" Geweih, the horns, antlers.	" Schiff, the ship.
" Gift, the poison, venom.	" Schwein, the pig, swine.
" Haar, the hair.	" Seil, the cord, cable.
" Heer, the army, host.	" Spiel, the game, play.
" Jahr, the year.	" Thier, the animal.
" Joch, the yoke.	" Thor, the gate.
" Kabinet, the cabinet.	" Verdienst, the merit.
" Kameel, the camel.	" Werk, the work, performance.
" Knie, the knee.	" Wort, the word.
	" Ziel, the aim, end, goal.

<sup>1</sup> Band, ribbon, is regular.

## OBSERVATION.

1) The word *Boot*, bark, boat, has in the Plural *Boote*.

2) Nine neuter nouns take *en* (or *n* if they terminate in *e*) in the Plural; they are:

Das <i>Auge</i> , the eye.	Das <i>Insect</i> , the insect.
" <i>Bett</i> , the bed.	" <i>Ohr</i> , the ear.
" <i>Ende</i> , the end.	" <i>Weh</i> , the woe, pain, pang.
" <i>Gliedmaß</i> , the member, limb.	" <i>Weh</i> , if used in the Plural,
" <i>hemd</i> , the shirt, shift.	signifies the pangs of child-
" <i>Herz</i> , (Gen. Sing. <i>ens</i> , Dat.	birth, or, figuratively, in
<i>en</i> ), the heart, core.	giving birth generally.

3) Das *Kleinod*, the jewel, trinket, has *Kleinodien* in the Plural, likewise das *Princip*, the principle, *Principien*.

---

## OBSERVATIONS

on the declension of words adopted from foreign languages.

It has been shown above that

1) Masculine nouns of foreign origin and terminating in *ant*, *arch*, *at*, *ent*, *et*, *ist*, *it*, *og* (excepting *Magistrat* II. b) take *en* in all the cases of both Singular and Plural.

2) That those ending in *or* (except *Cantor*, *Doctor*, *Inspector*, III. a) take *en* in all the cases of the Plural.

3) That all Feminine nouns taken from foreign languages, take *n* or *en* in the Plural.

4) That neuter nouns of foreign origin, ending in *ent* (except *Regiment* I. c. obs.) have *e* in all the cases of the Plural.

To which the following remarks ought to be added:

1) The declension of all words derived from foreign languages, is like that of masculine substantives; they do not modify the radical vowel (except: das *Chor*, the chorus, choir, Plur. die *Chöre*), and take Gen. Sing. *s*, Plur. *e*, Dat. Plur. *en*.

a) Masculine and neuter nouns ending in al, an, in, on, ar, em, om, am, amm, and Neuters in at, as:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. } Das Original, the original.	A. }	N. } Die Originale.	A. }
G. Des Originals, of the original.		G. Der Originale.	
D. Dem Originale, to the original.		D. Den Originalen.	

Likewise :

Das Lineal, the ruler.	Das Exemplar, the copy.
Der Ocean, the ocean.	"    Diadem, the diadem.
"    Altan, the balcony.	"    Diplom, the diploma.
Das Kamin, the chimney.	Der Balsam, the balsam.
Der Rubin, the ruby.	Das Epigramm, the epigram.
"    Postillon, the postillion.	etc.
"    Canton, the canton, department.	

Exceptions from this rule are the following nouns.

Sing. Das Kapital, the capital, principal.	Plur. Die Kapitalien.
"    Das Kapital, the capital, (archit. term.)	"    Die Kapitälcr.
"    Das Mineral, the mineral.	"    Die Mineralien.
"    Das Regal, the regal.	"    Die Regalien.

b) Masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, er, (invariable in the Plural, as stated in No. 2 of the introductory remarks), as:

Das Exempel, the example.	Der Kalender, the calendar, almanac.
"    Kapitel, the chapter.	"    Italiener, the Italian.
Der Araber, the Arabian.	Das Register, the register, record, etc. etc.
"    Engländer, the Englishman.	
"    Spanier, the Spaniard.	
"    Historiker, the historian.	

The word Charakter, character, disposition, has in the Plural Charaktere.

c) Words adopted from the French, if pronounced as German; Example:

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
N. Der Officier, the officer!		N. Die Officiere, the officers.	
G. Des Officiers, of the officer.		G. Der Officiere, of the officers.	
D. Dem Officier, to the officer.		D. Den Officieren, to the officers.	
A. Den Officier, the officer.		A. Die Officiere, the officers.	

Likewise:

Der Accord, the agreement, the accord (mus. term).	Der Fourier, the quartermaster.
" Banquet, the bankruptcy.	" Füsiliér, the fusilier.
" Bisset, the note.	" Grenadier, the grenadier.
" Concert, the concert.	Das Portrait, the portrait, etc.
" Courier, the courier.	

2) French words with the French pronunciation, take an s in the Genitive Singular and in all the cases of the plur.

N. Der Acteur, the player, actor.	N. Die Acteurs, the actors.
G. Des Acteurs, of the actor.	G. Der Acteurs, " "
D. Dem Acteur, to the actor.	D. Den Acteurs, " "
A. Den Acteur, the actor.	A. Die Acteurs, " "

Likewise:

Der Auditeur, the auditor, judicial-officer.	Der Souverain, the sovereign.
" Balkon, the balcony.	" Friseur, the hairdresser.
" Chef, the chief, leader, principal.	Das Gouvernement, the government.
" Gordon, the line of troops.	Der Ingenieur, the engineer.
Das Detail, the detail, minutiae.	Das Manöver, the manoeuvre.
Das Corps, the body of troops, is invariable.	Der Mineur, the miner.
	" Portier, the doorkeeper.
	" Tambour, the drummer.

3) The German declension is, in general applicable to all foreign words which have obtained a German termination, or which, at least, have lost their foreign aspect; but to such as appear still in their original form, as: der Musikus, the musician; der Casus, the case; das Carmen, the poem; das Factum, the fact; das Thema, the theme, etc., no rules of German declension can be adapted. They can, at most, be declined in German in the Sing. number; Examples.

SINGULAR.

N. Der Musikus.
G. Des Musikus.
D. Dem Musikus.
A. Den Musikus.

SINGULAR.

N. Das Carmen.
G. Des Carmen.
D. Dem Carmen.
A. Das Carmen.

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
N. Das Gymnasium.	N. Das Thema.
G. Des Gymnasiums.	G. Des Themas.
D. Dem Gymnasium.	D. Dem Thema.
A. Das Gymnasium.	A. Das Thema.

If these explanations be found insufficient, the words might be declined after the manner of the language to which they appertain, or, at least, the Nominative Plur. should be known, which remains without change through all the cases in the Plural; as: *Musici, Medici, Casus, Carmina, Facta, Themata*, etc. Many foreign words in nm, however, now form their Plural in en; as:

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Das Individuum, the individual.	Die Individuen.
" Evangelium, the Gospel.	" Evangelien.
" Gymnasium, the Gymnasium.	" Gymnasien.
" Principium, the principle.	" Principien.
" Verbum, the verb.	" Verben.
" Adverbium, the adverb.	" Adverbien.
" Seminarium, the seminary.	" Seminarien.
" Studium, the study.	" Studien.

### SUPPLEMENTARY OBSERVATIONS.

1) There is a number of substantives, which have various significations, but differ in gender or in the Plural. The following is a list of them.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Der Band, the volume, the binding.	Die Bände.
Das Band, the bond, the tie.	" Bände.
" Band, the ribbon, tape.	" Bänder.
Die Bank, the bench, seat.	" Bänke.
" Bank, the bank.	" Banken.
Der Bauer, the peasant.	" Bauern.
Das Bauer, the cage.	" Bauer.
Der Buckel, the hunchback.	" Buckel.
Die Buckel, the stud, buckle.	" Buckeln.
Der Geißel, the hostage.	" Geißeln.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Die Geißel, the scourge, whip.	Die Geißeln,
Die Gift, the gift.	" Giften.
Das Gift, the poison.	" Gifte.
" Gesicht, the vision.	" Gesichte.
" Gesicht, the face.	" Gesichter.
Der Handel, the trade.	no Plural.
" Handel, the quarrel.	" Händel.
" Heide, the heathen, pagan.	" Heiden.
Die Heide, the heath.	" Heiden.
Der Hut, the hat.	" Hüte.
Die Hut, the posturage; heed, guard.	" Hutten.
Der Kiefer, the jaw, jawbone.	" Kiefer.
Die Kiefer, the pine, fir-tree.	" Kiefern.
Der Kunde, the customer.	" Kunden.
Die Kunde, the news, tidings.	" Kunden.
Der Leiter, the leader.	" Leiter.
Die Leiter, the ladder.	" Leitern.
Der Laden, the shop, shutter.	" Läden.
Die Lade, the chest.	" Läden.
Das Land, the country.	" Lände.
" Land, the land.	" Länder.
" Licht, the candle.	" Lichte.
" Licht, the light (flame).	" Lichter.
Die Mandel, the almond.	" Mandeln.
Das Mandel, the fifteen.	" Mandel.
Die Mark, the march, mark.	" Marken.
Das Mark, the marrow.	no Plural.
Der Mast, the mast.	" Maste.
Die Mast, the food for fattening.	" Mastarten.
Der Ort, the place, town.	" Orte.
" Ort, the spot.	" Orter.
" Schild, the shield.	" Schilde.
Das Schild, the sign, signboard.	" Schilder.
Der See, the lake.	" Seen.
Die See, the sea.	" Seen.
Der Sprosse, the sprig, shoot.	" Sprossen.
Die Sprosse, the step (of a lad- der).	" Sprossen.
Der Stift, the tack, pencil, stile.	" Stifte.
Das Stift, the monastery; chap- ter.	" Stifter.
Der Strauß, the nosegay.	" Sträuße.
" Strauß, the ostrich.!	" Strauße.
" Thor, the fool.	" Thoren.
Das Thor, the gate.	" Thore.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Das Wort, the word, as part of a sentence.	Die Worte.
„ Wort, the term.	„ Wörter.
Der Zoll, the inch.	„ Zölle.
„ Zoll, the toll.	„ Zölle.

2) Abstract nouns have no Plural in German, as:

Die Güte, the goodness.	Der Haß, the hatred.
„ Liebe, the love.	Die Schande, the shame.

3) Collectives form their Plural by adding the word *Arten*, kinds, species, to the Singular.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Das Getreide, the grain.	Die Getreidearten.
„ Obst, the fruit.	„ Obstarten.
Der Frieden, peace, has in the Plural <i>die Friedensschlüsse</i> .	
Das Vergnügen, pleasure „ „ „ „ „	die Vergnügungen.

## ON THE GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

It is extremely difficult to give fixed rules on this part of the grammar, and the best grammarians, in determining the genders, have proceeded on very arbitrary data and after very obscure analogies. What, however, has been stated in the following rules will be found established and easy to comprehend.

The gender of substantives may, then, be known 1) by their signification, 2) by their termination.

As regards the signification, the following rules may be established.

### I. Masculines are :

1) All substantives representing males. This class comprises likewise the Supreme Being and the names of subordinate Spirits.

Der Mann, the man.	Der Bruder, the brother.
„ Vater, the father.	„ König, the king.

2) The names of the winds, seasons, months and days.

Der Süd, the south.	Der März, March.
" Nord, the north.	" Januar, January.
" Sommer, the summer.	" Sonntag, Sunday.
" Winter, the winter.	" Montag, Monday.

II. Of the Feminine gender are:

1) All nouns designating a female being. This class comprises the names of Goddesses. Ex.

Die Frau, the woman.	Die Dichterin, the poetess.
" Mutter, the mother.	" Venus, the Venus.
" Schwester, the sister.	

Except:

Das Weib, the female.	Das Mädchen (being properly a diminutive), the girl.
-----------------------	--

2) The names of flowers, as:

Die Rose, the rose.	Die Narciſſe, the narcissus, dafodil.
" Nelke, the pink.	
" Tulpe, the tulip.	

III. Of the Neuter gender are:

1) All the letters of the alphabet, as:

Das A, das B, etc.

2) The names of metals, as:

Das Eisen, the iron.	Das Kupfer, the copper.
" Gold, the gold.	" Zinn, the tin.

Except the following:

Der Kobalt, the cobalt.	Der Zinnbeck, the pinchbeck.
" Stahl, the steel.	" Zink, the zink.
Die or { Platina, the platina.	" Wißmuth, the bismuth.
Das {	

3) The names of countries and towns; Ex.

Frankreich, France.	Paris, Paris.
Deutschland, Germany.	Berlin, Berlin.

Except:

Die Krimm, the Crimea.	Die Moldau, the Moldavia.
" Laußig, the Lausatia.	" Pfalz, the Palatinate.
" Mark, the Mark.	" Schweiz, Switzerland.

And those whose names terminate in *ei*, as:

Die Türkei, Turkey. Die Walachei, Wallachia.

4) Substantives beginning with the syllable *ge*, as:

Das Gefühl, the sensation.	Das Gezänk, the quarrelling.
„ Gewühl, the tumult.	„ Gespräch, the conversation,
„ Gemurmel, the murmuring.	etc.
„ Gewölk, clouds (collectively).	

Of which the following words make an exception:

Die Geberde, the gesture.	Die Gegenwart, the presence.
Der Gebrauch, the use; custom.	Der Gehorsam, the obedience.
Die Gebühr, the duty; decorum.	„ Genuß, the enjoyment.
„ Geburt, the birth.	„ Geruch, the smell.
Der Gedanke, the thought.	„ Gesang, the singing.
Die Geduld, the patience.	„ Geschwulst, the swelling,
„ Gefahr, the danger.	tumour.
Der Gefallen, the pleasure; favour.	Die Gestalt, the shape.
Die Gegend, the country, environs.	„ Gewalt, the power; violence.
	Der Gewinn, the gain, profit.

5) Words expressing abstract ideas; as:

Das Schöne, the beautiful. Das Angenehme, the agreeable.

6) Names of species or kinds, without regard to sex, as:

Das Kind, the child. Das Thier, the animal.

In order to determine the gender of substantives by their termination, the following rules may be established:

### I. Of the Masculine gender are

1) Nouns terminating in *el*, as:

Der Apfel, the apple.	Der Mantel, the cloak.
„ Hebel, the lever.	„ Riegel, the bolt.
„ Nagel, the nail.	„ Spiegel, the mirror.

Except the following:

a) Feminine nouns.

Die Achsel, the shoulder.	Die Amsel, the blackbird.
„ Ampel, the lamp (corrupted from Lampe.	„ Angel, door-hinge; angle, hook.

Die Affel, woodlouse.	Die Nadel, the pin, needle.
" Bibel, the bible.	" Nessel, the nettle.
" Brezel, the cracknel.	" Rudel, the pellet of paste, vermicelly.
" Deichsel, the pole, shaft (of a carriage).	" Orgel, the organ.
" Distel, the thistle.	" Primel, the cowslip, prim- rose.
" Droffel, the throstle.	" Raspel, the rasp.
" Eichel, the acorn.	" Rassel, the rattle.
" Fackel, the torch.	" Rohrdommel, the bittern.
" Kessel, the chain, fetter.	" Schachtel, the deal-box.
" Kibel, the horn-book, primer.	" Schaufel, the spade, shovel.
" Kiedel, the fiddle, violin.	" Schaufel, the swing.
" Gabel, the fork.	" Schindel, the shingle; splint.
" Geißel, the scourge.	" Sichel, the sickle.
" Gurgel, the gorge, throat.	" Schüssel, the dish, plate.
" Hechel, the hatchel, flax- comb.	" Semmel, the roll, wheat bread.
" Hummel, the humble-bee, drone.	" Spindel, the spindle.
" Kachel, the tile, earthen pane.	" Staffel, the step of a lad- der; easel.
" Kanzel, the pulpit.	" Stoppel, the stubble.
" Kartoffel, the potatoe.	" Striegel, the curry-comb.
" Kugel, the ball, globe.	" Tafel, the plate, table.
" Kurbel, the crank (in me- chanics).	" Trommel, the drum.
" Mandel, the almond.	" Trüffel, the truffle, earth- nut.
" Mangel, the mangle, ca- lender.	" Wachtel, the quail.
" Mispel, the medlar.	" Waffel, the wafer.
" Mistel, the mistletoe.	" Wundel, the swaddling-cloth.
" Morchel, the moril.	" Wurzel, the root.
" Muschel, the shell-fish, cockle.	" Zwiebel, the onion.

b) The names of rivers with that termination, as:

Die Mosel, the Moselle.

Die Weichsel, the Vistula.

c) The following Neuter nouns:

Das Bündel, the bundle, parcel.	Das Orakel, the oracle.
" Dunkel, the obscurity.	" Rudel, the herd, pack, flock.
" Ferkel, the sucking-pig.	" Scharmügel, the skirmish.
" Frettwiesel, the ferret.	" Segel, the sail.
" Kapitel, the chapter.	" Siegel, the seal.
" Mandel, the fifteen.	" Uebel, the evil.
" Mittel, the means.	" Wiesel, the weasel.
" Rössel, the pint, measure.	

d) Substantives formed from numbers and ending in tel, as:

Das Drittel, the third.                      Das Viertel, the fourth (quarter).

e) All those in sel, as:

Das Anhängsel, the appendix,      Das Räthsel, the riddle, enigma.  
appendage, appendance.              etc.

2) Derived words ending in er. Examples:

Der Bohrer, the borer, gimlet,      Der Hammer, the hammer.  
auger.                                      „ Trichter, the funnel, tun-  
„ Thaler, the dollar.                      dish.

Exceptions from this rule are

a) The following Feminine nouns:

Die Ader, the vein.	Die Lauer, the lurking, lurking- place.
„ Auster, the oyster.	„ Leber, the liver.
„ Blatter, the blister.	„ Leier, the lyre.
„ Dauer, the duration.	„ Leiter, the ladder.
„ Ecker, the acorn.	„ Marter, the torment.
„ Eister, the pie.	„ Mauer, the wall.
„ Faser, the fibre, filament.	„ Natter, the adder, asp. etc.
„ Feder, the feather, pen.	„ Nummer, the number.
„ Feier, the rest, cessation from labour.	„ Otter, the viper.
„ Folter, the torture.	„ Rüster, the elm, maple.
„ Halfter, the halter.	„ Scheuer, the grange, barn.
„ Kelter, the press for grapes etc.	„ Schleuder, the sling.
„ Kicher, the chick-pea.	„ Schulter, the shoulder.
„ Kiefer, the pine.	„ Steuer, the contribution, tax, impost.
„ (or das) Klasten, the cord, fathom.	„ Trauer, the mourning.
„ Klammer, the cramp-iron, brace.	„ Trümmer, the ruins, wreck.
„ Klapper, the rattle, clapper.	„ Wimper, the eye-lash.
„ Kufummer, the cucumber.	„ Ziffer, the cipher.
	„ Zither, the guitar.

b) Names of rivers having that termination, as:

Die Oder, the Oder.                      Die Weser, the Weser, etc.

c) The following Neuter nouns:

Das Alter, the age.	Das Futter, the feed, food; lin- ing.
„ Bauer, the cage.	„ Gitter, the trellis, lattice, grate.
„ Euter, the udder.	„ Lager, the couch; camp.
„ Fenster, the window.	„ Lasten, the vice.
„ Feuer, the fire.	„ Leder, the leather.
„ Fieber, the fever.	
„ Fuder, the cart-load.	

Das Luder, the carrion.	Das Pulver, the powder.
" Messer, the knife.	" Register, the register.
" Nieder, the corset, boddice.	" Ruder, the oar; helm.
" Muster, the model, pattern.	" Steuer, the helm.
" Opfer, the sacrifice, victim.	" Ufer, the shore.
" Pflaster, the plaister; pavement.	" Wasser, the water.
" Polster, the cushion, bolster.	" Wetter, the weather.
	" Wunder, the miracle.
	" Zimmer, the chamber.

d) The words beginning with the syllable *Ge* and having that termination, as:

Das Gefänder, the balustrade.	Das Gewitter, the thunderstorm, etc.
-------------------------------	--------------------------------------

e) The names of two metals, viz.

Das Kupfer, the copper.	Das Silber, the silver.
-------------------------	-------------------------

3) Derived substantives ending in *en*, *ing*, *ling*, and primitive words in *all*, as:

Der Boden, the bottom; ground.	Der Zwilling, the twin.
" Laden, the shop; shutter.	" Stall, the stable.
" Schlitten, the sledge.	" Knall, the report, clap, crack.
" Haring, the herring.	" Fall, the case; fall.
" Frühling, the spring.	" Schall, the sound, etc.
" Jüngling, the youth.	

From this latter rule are to be excepted:

a) The following Neuter nouns:

Das Almosen, the alms.	Das Wappen, the coat of arms.
" Becken, the basin.	" Zeichen, the sign; mark.
" Füllen, the foal.	" Eisen, the iron.
" Gewissen, the conscience.	" Laken, the cloth.
" Gebrechen, the disease; defect.	" Kissen, the cushion; pillow.
	" All, Weltall, the universe.
	" Metall, metal.

b) Infinitives used substantively, as:

Das Schreiben, the writing.	Das Fasten, the fasting, etc.
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

c) One word in *ing*, das Messing, brass; latten.

Of the Feminine gender are:

1) All Substantives ending in *ei*, *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *in*, *ath*. Ex.

Die Kinderei, the childishness.	Die Freiheit, the liberty.
" Ländelei, the trifling; toying.	" Einigkeit, the union, concord,

Die Lustbarkeit, the merrimaking. Die Heimath, the home, native  
 " Freundschaft, the friendship. country.  
 " Freundin, the (female) friend. " Heirath, the marriage.  
 " Königin, the queen.

The following words make an exception from this rule:  
 Das Petschaft, the seal, stamp. Der Vorrath, the provision, store.  
 Der Rath, the council.

2) Nouns formed of verbs, and terminating in ung; Ex.  
 Die Hoffnung, the hope. Die Achtung, the esteem.

3) Nouns formed of adjectives and terminating in e; as:  
 Die Größe, the greatness. Die Liebe, the love.  
 " Güte, the goodness. " Milde, the clemency; mild-  
 ness.

Except from this rule words expressive of abstract ideas and not belonging to either sex of the animal kingdom, as:  
 Das Große, that which is great, Das Schöne, that which is beau-  
 grand. tiful,  
 " Gute, " " " good. etc.

4) All other nouns in e, as:  
 Die Gabe, the gift. Die Quelle, the source.  
 " Ente, the duck. " Taube, the pigeon.

From this rule are excepted:

a) Names of nations, terminating in e; Examples:  
 Der Däne, the Dane. Der Franzose, the Frenchman.  
 " Deutsche, the German. " Sächse, the Saxon.

b) All masculine nouns terminating in e, enumerated in the 2d exception to the declension of masculine nouns, as:  
 Der Affe, the ape. Der Bote, the messenger.  
 " Barde, the bard, scald. " Bube, the boy, lad.

c) Words beginning with the syllable Ge and having that termination, as:  
 Das Gemälde, the painting. Das Gewebe, the tissue.

d) The following words:  
 Das Ende, the end. Das Auge, the eye.  
 " Erbe, inheritance.

### III. Of the Neuter gender are:

1) All diminutives in chen and lein; Examples:  
 Das Mädchen, the girl. Das Fräulein, the young lady, etc.

2) All Infinitives, and, generally, all words which, without being substantives, are used as such; Ex.  
 Das Essen, the eating. Das Gehen, the walking.  
 " Trinken, the drinking. " Aber, the but.

Das liebe Ich, the dear I, self.	Das Ja, the yes,
„ Rein, the no.	etc.
3) Nouns ending in thum, niß, sal-and sel; as:	
Das Alterthum, the antiquity.	Das Hinderniß, the obstacle.
„ Bisthum, the bishopric.	„ Zeugniß, the testimonial.
„ Erkenntniß, the decree.	„ Schicksal, the destiny.
„ Heiligthum, the sanctuary.	„ Räthsel, the enigma.
„ Bildniß, the image.	

Exceptions from this latter rule are:

a) The following two words in thum:

Der Irrthum, the error.	Der Reichthum, the riches; wealth.
-------------------------	------------------------------------

b) The following words in niß:

Die Bedrängniß, the embarrass- ment, affliction.	Die Erkenntniß, the knowledge.
„ Bekümmerniß, the grief, sor- row.	„ Erlaubniß, the permission.
„ Bewandniß, the circum- stance, condition.	„ Ersparniß, the saving.
„ Empfängniß, the conception.	„ Fäulniß, the putrifaction.
„ Besorgniß, the apprehension.	„ Finsterniß, the darkness.
	„ Kenntniß, knowledge.
	„ Verdammniß, the damnation.
	„ Wildniß, the wilderness.

c) And one word in sel: der Stöpsel, the stopper; cork.

## ON THE GENDER OF COMPOUND WORDS.

The gender of compound substantives is determined by that part of the word which, in the composition, represents the idea, and which is generally the last. It is likewise this latter word in the composition that is subject to the various inflections in the declension. (*See Obs. 3, of the Declension of masculine nouns.*) Examples:

Der Hausrath, the furniture.	Der Kirchhof, the church-yard.
Das Rathhaus, the town-hall.	Die Hofkirche, the court-church, or chapel.
Der Hausvater, the father of a family,	Der Jagdhund, the sporting-dog.
Das Vaterhaus, the parental house.	Die Windmühle, the windmill.

Exceptions to this rule are:

a) Several substantives composed with Muth, as:

Die Armuth, the gracefulness.	Die Sanftmuth, the meekness, mildness.
„ Armuth, the poverty.	
„ Demuth, the humility.	„ Schwermuth, the melan- choly, sadness.
„ Großmuth, the generosity.	
„ Langmuth, the forbearance.	„ Wehmuth, the woefulness, sadness.

b) Likewise the following:

Der Abscheu, the detestation. Die Neunauge, the lamprey.  
Die Antwort, the reply, answer. Der Verhaft, the imprisonment.

---

ON THE GENDER OF FOREIGN WORDS.

Words of foreign extraction preserve in German the gender which they had in the language from which they have been borrowed; Examples:

Der Kanal, the canal.	Die Syntax, the syntax.
Das Capital, the capital; prin- cipal.	etc.

Exceptions to the foregoing rule, however, are the following words:

Der Altar, the altar.	Die Vocabel, the word.
„ Katheder, the pulpit, (pro- perly professors' chair).	Das Almoſen, the alms.
„ Körper, the body.	„ Chor, the choir.
„ Punkt, the point.	„ Echo, the echo.
„ Tempel, the temple.	„ Fenster, the window.
Die Kanzel, the pulpit.	„ Fieber, the fever.
„ Narcisse, the narcissus.	„ Labyrinth, the labyrinth.
	„ Pulver, the powder.

To which may be added some words derived from Latin and ending in at; they are Neuter, as:

Das Conſulat, the consulship. Das Triumvirat, the triumvirate.

All such words have, however, been given as, being taken from foreign languages, both ancient and modern have, in course of time, lost their original form, although they have preserved the gender they had in the language they were borrowed from. It would be asking too much of learners to discover the analogy that exists between Achſel and *axilla*; Leyer and *lyra*; Zeichen and *signum*, etc., but such words have been omitted where the analogy is too evident as to escape the attention of the pupils; as (die) Kammer, camera; (das) Kloster, claustrum; (das) Exempel, exemplum etc.

Several homonymous substantives are of one gender or another, according to their signification; for these see Supplementary Observations at the end of the declension of substantives.

---

## I N D E X.

---

### A.

Abbreviations, those most usually employed in German, 286.

About, various ways of translating that preposition. 219. 220.

According to, various ways of translating that preposition, 220.

Accusative, or direct object.

What is accusative, or direct object, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 138.

Addresses of German letters, 58.

Adjective, the, *das Bei-* oder *Eigenschaftswort*, 27. The participle employed as an adjective, *ibid.* The formation of adjectives, *ibid.* Primitive and derivative adjectives, *ibid.* Compounded adjectives, 31. The government of adjectives, 32. Adjectives which govern the genitive, *ibid.* Adjectives which govern the dative, 34. Adjectives which govern a preposition, *Obs. A.* 36. Par-

ticiples, when employed as adjectives, govern the same case as the verbs to which they belong, *Obs. B.* 36. Adjectives which require the accusative, 36. The adjective with the infinitive, *ibid.* The adjective serves to determine the signification of the noun, by adding to it an idea of number, 37. Adjectives employed adverbially, 177. Adjectives which cannot be employed as adverbs, *Obs. B.* 191.

Adverb, the, *das Umständs-* oder *Rebenwort*, 177. Derivative adverbs, *ibid.* Adverbs ending in *enß*, 178. Compound adverbs, *ibid.* Adverbs of time, *Rebenwörter der Zeit*, 180. Adverbs of place, *Rebenwörter des Orts*, 182. Adverbs of motion, *Rebenwörter der Bewegung*, 184. Demonstrative adverbs, *zeitigende Rebenwörter*, 185. Interrogative adverbs, *fragende Rebenwörter*, 186. Relative adverbs, *beziehende Rebenwörter*,

ibid. Adverbs of quantity. Nebenwörter der Menge, 187. Adverbs of quality and manner, Nebenwörter der Eigenschaft, der Art und Weise, ibid. Adverbs of comparison, Nebenwörter der Vergleichung, 188. Adverbs of order and number, Nebenwörter der Ordnung und der Zahl, 189. Adverbs of affirmation, negation, and doubt, Nebenwörter der Bejahung, der Verneinung und der Ungewißheit, 190. Adverbs which form one signification with the verb, and are placed exactly like the separable particles, 111. Adverbs which serve to form adjectives by changing their termination for *ig*, 191; for *r*, 192; by rejecting their termination, ibid. Observations on the use of some adverbs which differ in their signification and application from their corresponding words in English, 192 et seqq.

Affixes or after-syllables, 68. 73. 74. See Syllables.

Against, various ways of translating this preposition, 220.

Amongst, how to translate that preposition, 221.

Anecdotes [in Exercises. Answer of Louis XII. king of France, 168. The courtier and the archbishop, ibid. The two stammerers, 169. An easy reckoning, 170. Charles XII. and the grenadier, ibid. Lord N., 171. The two niggards, ibid. Life of Peloni, 172 et seqq. Columbus, 196. The poet and the nobleman, 197. Turenne, 198. Louis XI. ibid. Answer of a cacique, 199. Ptolemy, 262. The priestess Theano, ibid. Alexander and

the pirate, ibid. Socrates, ibid. Pericles, 263. The wife of Grotius, ibid. The women of Weinsberg, 265. Charlemagne in his school, ibid. L. Q. Cincinnatus, 267. A good joke approved by Louis XIV., 268. Answer of Aristippus, 271. Filial love rewarded, ibid. Generous behaviour of the English, 272. Generosity of Louis XIV., 273. The barbarous refusal, 274. Selfdenial of Alexander, 287. Charles XII. of Sweden, ibid. Trait of beneficence of Marie Antoinette, 289. Tobias Witt, 290 et seqq.

Apocope, see Suppression.

Article, the, das Geschlechtswort, 1.

At, various ways of translating that preposition, 221.

## B.

Besides, how to translate this preposition, 222.

By, various ways of translating this preposition, ibid.

## C.

Caress, to, liebkosen. Government of that verb, 152.

Coffee, an exercise, 234.

Comma, the, its use in German, 280; to separate the infinitive mood with *zu*, *to*, from the preceding member of the phrase, ibid.; before all relative pronouns or relative adverbs, 281; before all relative adverbs compounded of *wo* and a preposition, 282; before conjunctions commencing a member of a phrase, except before *und* and *oder*, and those before which a semi-

colon must stand, *ibid.* Cases in which the comma can be substituted by the colon, Obs. C. *ibid.* Cases in which the comma divides entire propositions connected by *und* and *oder*, Obs. D. 283.

Conjunction, the, *das* Bindewort, 242. Classification, *ibid.* Seventeen sorts of conjunctions, *ibid.* et seqq. List of Conjunctions, in which their use is determined by examples, 245 et seqq. Conjunctions which make the nominative, or subject, go after its verb—examples thereof, Obs. B. 259 et seqq. Cases in which the conjunction *that* may be omitted in German, 261. Various ways of translating the conjunction *that* into German, *ibid.* When it is expressed in German and not in English, *ibid.* When it is rendered in English by *since*, *ibid.*

Contraction (synæresis) of two syllables into one: its use, *a*) to join a preposition with an article: *b*) to suppress the letter *e* of the neuter pronoun *eſ*, 284.

#### D.

Dative or indirect object. What is dative or indirect object, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 138.

Declension of Substantives, 315. Table for the declension of Subst., *ibid.* Introductory Remarks, *ibid.* Nouns masculine declined, 316. Observations, 316. 317. List of Mascul. Substantives, Note 1. 317. 318. Exceptions, 3. 9. Mascul. nouns

which take *en* or *n* in the Singular, Notes 1, 2. 319. Words adopted from foreign languages 320. Observation, Notes 1, 2, 3. 321. Mascul. nouns which take *en* in all the cases of the Plur., 322. Obs. 323. — Declension of Subst. of the feminine gender, 323. List of Feminine Substantives, 324. 325. Exceptions, 325. 326. Observation, 326, 327. — Declension of neuter nouns, 327. List of Neuter Substantives, 328. 329. Exceptions, 329. 330. Observation, 331. Observations on the declension of words adopted from foreign languages, *ibid.* et seqq. Supplementary Observations, 334. 335. 336.

Dialogues. Usual civilities, 296. Introductions, 298. At dinner, 301. In a shop, 303. At a mantua-maker's, 304. With a milliner, 305. Amongst well-educated persons, 307. A party, 308. To go to the play, and return from it, 309. A concert, *ibid.* At a ball, 311.

#### E.

Ellipsis, illustrating examples of the use of that grammatical figure, 283. 284.

#### F.

Figures, grammatical, 283.

For, how to translate that preposition into German, 223.

Forms, polite, see Titles.

Formulas of submission in the German epistolary style, see Subscription.

From, how to render this preposition into German, 224.

G.

Gender of Substantives, 336; determined by their signification, *ibid.* et seqq.; determined by their termination, 338 et seqq. Gender of Compound Words, 343; of Foreign Words, 344.

Genitive or indirect object. What is genitive or indirect object, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs, 138.

Get, to, lassen\*, government of that verb, Obs. 151. 152.

Government of Adjectives. Adjectives governing the genitive, 32;—the dative, and answering to the question *wem?* to whom? 34. 35. Adjectives with a preposition, 36; — with the accusative, *ibid.*; — with the infinitive, *ibid.*

Government of Verbs. 138. Verbs governing the nominative, 139; governing the genitive, 139 et seqq.; governing either the accusative or the genitive, 142; governing the dative, 144 et seqq.; governing the accusative, 149; governing two accusative cases, 151; governing prepositions, 152; governing the preposition *an* with the dative, 164; with the accusative, 165; governing the preposition *auf* with the dative, *ibid.*; with the accusative, 166; governing the preposition *für* with the accusative, 159; governing the preposition *in* with the dative, 167; with the accusative, *ibid.*; governing the preposition *mit* with the dative, 153; governing the preposition *nach* with the dative, 156; governing the preposition *über* with the accusative, 160.

Obs. A. B. 161; governing the preposition *um* with the accusative, 162; governing the preposition *von* with the dative, 156; governing the preposition *vor* with the dative, 162. Obs. 163; governing the preposition *wegen*, on account of, with the genitive, 152; governing the preposition *zu* with the dative, 158.

H.

haben\*, to have, its conjugation, 76.

I.

In, various ways of translating this preposition into German, 224. 225.

In spite of, how this preposition is rendered in German, 225.

Inscription in German letters, 55. 56. Obs. B. C. 57.

Instead of, *anstatt*. This preposition requires in German *zu* before the infinitive, Obs. A. 168.

Interjection, the, *das Empfindungswort*, 275. Various sorts of interjections, *ibid.* et seqq. Interjections with the nominative, 278; with the genitive, *ibid.*; with the dative, *ibid.*; with the accusative, *ibid.*

L.

lassen\*, to let, to get, to order; government of that verb, Obs. 151. 152.

Let, to, lassen\*; government of that verb, Obs. 151. 152.

Letters, in exercises, 62 et seqq., 236 et seqq. A letter from Solomon Gessner to his son, 238. Models of finishing letters in German, 61. 62.

Liebföfen, to caress, government of that verb, 152.

M.

Moods, the, 74. 75.

N.

Names. A table of the principal proper names of men and women, which are spelt differently in the two languages, 14 et seqq. A table of the principal countries, towns, nations, rivers, &c., which follow a different orthography in the two languages, 18 et seqq.

Nominative or Subject, what is the nominative or subject, and when is it used? See the Government of Verbs. 138.

Noun, the, or Substantive, 1. 2. see Substantive. See Names.

Notes, in exercises, 65.

Number, the, das Zahlwort, 37. Cardinal numbers, *ibid.* Ordinal numbers, 40. Distributive numbers, 41. Augmentative numbers. *ibid.* Fractional numbers, 42. Collective numbers, 43.

O.

Of, various ways of translation this preposition, 226.

On or upon, various ways of translating these prepositions, 227.

Order, to, lassen\*; Government of that verb, Obs. 151. 152.

P.

Participle, the, das Mittelwort, 27. Past participles, when employed as adjectives, govern the same case as the verbs to which they belong, 35.

Particles, determining, *ant*, *aber*, *after*, *erz*, *ge*, *miß*, *un*, *ur*, which precede the substantives to form other substantives, 9. Particles which are placed before the primitive verb to form a derivative, 68 et seqq.

Parts of speech, recapitulation of the different, 1.

Pearl-fishery, the, an exercise, 235.

Portrait of Wallenstein, an exercise, 240 et seqq.

Prefixes or fore-syllables, 68 et seqq.

Preposition, the, das *Ver-* oder *Verhältnißwort*, 200. Classification. *ibid.* Prepositions which always govern the genitive, *ib.*; prepositions which govern only the dative, 203. Prepositions which govern only the accusative, 206. Prepositions governing various cases, 208. Prepositions governing the genitive and the dative, *ibid.* Prepositions governing the dative & accusative, illustrated by numerous examples, 211 et seqq. Compound prepositions, 215. Respective place of prepositions in English and in German, Obs. A. and B. 216. Corresponding prepositions in

English and in German, 217. How to translate certain English prepositions by others in German, 219 et seqq. Expressions requiring a preposition in German, and not in English, 231. 232. Expressions requiring a preposition in English, and not in German, 232. 233. Various ways of translating the English prepositions: about, according to, against, amongst, at, beside, by, for, from, in, in spite of, of, on or upon, till, to, under, with. See these words.

Pronoun, the, *das* Fürwort, 47. Substantive-pronouns, 47 et seqq. Adjective-pronouns, *ibid.* Substantive- and adjective-pronouns, 49, 50. Personal pronouns, 48. Possessive pronouns, *ibid.* Demonstrative pronouns, 49. Relative, interrogative, indefinite pronouns, *ibid.* Observations on the difference in the use of English and German pronouns, 50 et seqq.

Punctuation, on, 280.

S.

*Seyn*\*, to be, its conjugation, 79.

Subscription in the German epistolary style, 57. 58. A few models of finishing a letter in German, 61. 62.

Substantive; the, *das* Hauptwort, 2. Formation of substantives, *ibid.* Primitive substantives, *ibid.* Derivative substantives, *ibid.* et seqq. The composition of substantives, 10. Substantives employed adverbially, 178. Substantives which form one signification with the verb,

and are placed exactly like the separable particles, 111.

Suppression of a syllable or of a letter from the middle of a word (syncope), 284; of the letter *e* of the genitive of masculine and neuter substantives, *ibid.*; of the letter *e* of the final syllable of all adjectives and pronouns terminated in *el*, *en*, *er*, *ibid.*; of the letter *e* of the termination of the past participle, 285; of the letter *e* of the terminations *en*, *est*, *et*, in all the tenses of the conjugation of a verb, *ibid.*; of the letter *a* of the syllable *dar*, in the formation of certain adverbs, e. g. *drauf* instead of *darauf*, *ibid.*; of the end of a word, or the non-repetition of a termination which is common to two or more words (Apocope), *ibid.*; of the letter *e* of the dative of masculine and neuter nouns, *ibid.*; of the letter *e* at the end of a verb, of a substantive, and of the preposition *ohne*, *ibid.*; of the last syllable of a word, for which a hyphen (*z*) is substituted, *Obs. E. 13.* 286.

Syllables, or terminations: *el*, *en*, *er*, *chen*, *lein*, *icht*, *ling*, *ei*, *in*, *heit*, *feit*, *schaft*, *ung*, *niß*, *sal*, *sel*, *thum*, added to primitive words, in order to form substantives, 3 et seqq. Syllables, or determinating particles, *ant*, *aber*, *after*, *erz*, *ge*, *niß*, *un*, *ur*, which precede the substantives, to form other substantives, 9. Syllables or terminations: *bar*, *en*, *ern*, *haft*, *icht*, *ig*, *isch*, *lich*, *sam*, *selig*, serving to form derivative adjectives, 28 et seqq. Syllables or

particles, *un*, *miß*, *erz*, *ur*, *aber*, which precede other words to form derivative adjectives, 30. 31. Fore-syllables, or prefixes, *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *miß*, *ver*, *zer*, modifying the signification of the primitive verbs to form derivative verbs, 68 et seqq. After-syllables, or Affixes, *den*, *en*, *eln*, *ern*, *igen*, *iren*, *zen*, serving to form with primitive words derivative verbs, 73 et seqq.

Synaeresis, see Contraction.  
Syncope, see Suppression.

T.

Tea, an exercise, 233.

Tenses, the, 75. Formation of the perfect, Obs. A. 76; of the pluperfect, Obs. B. 77; of the future, Obs. C. *ibid.*; of the future past, Obs. D. *ibid.* of the conditionals present and past, Obs. E. F. and G. 78.

Terminations serving to form derivative substantives, 3 et seqq.

Terminations serving to form derivative adjectives, 28 et seqq. Terminations or affixes serving to form derivative verbs, 73 et seqq.

Through, how translated into German, 228.

Till (for to), how translated into German, 228.

Titles, of, and polite forms, which the Germans observe, in their conversation, and particularly in their epistolary style, 54 and Obs. A. *ibid.*

To, various ways of translating that preposition, 228. 229.

U.

Under, how to translate this preposition into German, 230.

Upon, way of translating this preposition into German, 227. 228.

V.

Verb, the, *das Zeitwort*, 66. Formation of verbs, 68. Primitive and derivative verbs, *ibid.* Compound verbs, *ibid.* 104. et seqq. Auxiliary verbs, 67. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *haben*\*, to have, 76. Obs. A. Note 1. *ibid.* Obs. B. C. D. 77. Obs. E. F. G. Notes 2, 3, 4, 78. Note 5. 79. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *seyn*\*, to be. Note 6. 79. Note 7. 80. Notes 8. 9. 10. 81. Conjugation of the auxiliary verb *haben*\* negatively, Remark, 81. 82. 83; of the auxiliaries *haben*\* and *seyn*\* interrogatively, 83; interrogatively and negatively, 83. 84. Active verbs, Note 1. 67. Model of the conjugation of an active regular verb, 84. Passive verbs, 67. Model of the conjugation of a passive verb, Obs. A. Note 1. 86. Notes 2. 3. 4. 87. Neuter verbs, 67. Model of the conjugation of a neuter verb, 89. A Table of neuter verbs which are conjugated with *seyn*\*, 93. Observations of neuter verbs taking *seyn*\* for their auxiliary, 91. 92. 93. Neuter verbs governing the dative, 145. 146. 147. Reflective, reciprocal, or pronominal verbs, Note 2. 67. Model of the conjugation of a reflective verb governing the accusative, 95;

of a reflexive verb governing the dative, 97. Reflexive verbs governing the accusative, 99. Obs. C. D. 100. 151. Reflexive verbs requiring the reflexive pronouns in the accusative and the object in the genitive, 141. 142. Reflexive verbs governing the dative, 99. 148. Impersonal verbs, Note 3. 67. Model of the conjugation of an impersonal verb, 100. Verbs which are impersonal from their nature, 101. 102. Verbs which are only employed impersonally in certain expressions, 102. Impersonal verbs which govern the accusative, 103. 151. Impersonal verbs governing the dative, 103. 104. 148. Compound verbs, inseparable, 104. 105; separable, 105. Model of the conjugation of a separable compound verb, Note 2. 106. Obs. C. 106. Verbs which are inseparable under certain significations and separable under others, 107. When are the verbs compounded with the particle *miß* inseparable and when separable? 109. Expressions forming one signification with the verbs, which are placed exactly like the separable verbs, 111. Verbs which we call circumscribing auxiliaries, because they serve to circumscribe the moods; they are, *dürfen*, *fönnen*, *lassen*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*,

*wollen*, 112 et seqq. Irregular verbs, 117. Essential observations on the irregular verbs, 118 et seqq. First class of the irregular verbs, containing the sixteen verbs which have *t* in the past participle, and *te* in the imperfect, 125. A Table of classification of irregular verbs, 123. Explanatory observations, 124. General list and conjugation of the irregular verbs, 126 et seqq. In German the verb always agrees with the nouns in number, Obs. 117. The government of verbs, See Government.

## W.

Who? *wer*? The nominative or subject always follows this question. See the government of verbs, 138.

Whom? *wem*? The accusative or direct object always follows this question. See the Government of Verbs, 138. To whom? *wem*? The dative or indirect object always follows this question, *ibid.*

Whose? *wessen*? The genitive or indirect object always follows this question. See the Government of Verbs, 138.

With, various ways of translating this preposition, 230. 231.

Without, *ohne*. This preposition requires in German *zu* before the infinitive, Obs. A. 168.







